

لله وحده

صدقه جاريه عن امي وابي واختي ونفسي واولادي ويونس وابوه وكل المسلمين والمسلمات
والمؤمنين والمؤمنات الاحياء منهم والاموات وكل من له حق عندي مادي او معنوي .

(لا تدخل نفسك النار بأن تنسب المذكره لنفسك او تعيد
كتابتها وبيعها للناس لان ذلك ليس من حقل (اتقي الله)

Contents

Unit one	page (2)
	Grammar (22)
	The Novel (41)
Unit two	page (45)
	Grammar (65)
	The Novel (86)
Unit three	page (90)
	Grammar (112)
	The Novel (124 ``)
Unit four	page (127)
	Grammar (144)
	The Novel (159)
Unit five	page (163)
	Grammar (180)
	The Novel (194)
Unit six	page (198)
	Grammar (216)
	The Novel (224)
Skills	
The essay	page (228)
Punctuation	(239)

Key vocabulary

broadsheet	صحيفة علي ورق كبير	tabloid	صحيفة شعبية	cheat	غش - غشاش
bias	التحيز - التعصب	mislead (misled)	يضل	occur	يحدث
biased	متحيز	balanced	متوازن	nosy	متطفل
piracy	قرصنة	balance	توازن	summarise (summary)	يلخص - ملخص
pirate	قرصان	incident	حادثة - حدث	shock	صدمة - يصد
pirated	مقرصن - مسروق	crime (do- commit)	يرتكب جريمة	shocked	مصدوم
claim	يدعي - يزعم	criminal	مجرم - جنائي	ruin	يدمر - ي تلف - حطام
casualties	ضحايا - خسائر	omission (omit)	حذف - يحذف	demand	يطلب - طلب
inaccurate	غير دقيق	violate	ينتهك	compensate	يعوض
grumpy	غاضب	investigator	محقق	announce	يعلن
convict	مذنب - مجرم	investigate	يحقق في	violate	ينتهك
point of view	وجه نظر	investigation	تحقيقات	illegal	غير قانوني
wait with bated breath	ينتظر بفارغ الصبر	spin (spun)	تلفيق الحقائق - يدور حول نفسه		
highlight(s)	اهم الاحداث - يبرز - يوضح	jump out of skin	يفزع - يخاف بشده		
long-awaited	الذي طال انتظاره	due to be done	متوقع القيام به		

Definitions

piracy	the crime of illegally copying and selling books, tapes, videos, computer programs	قرصنة
claim	to say something is true , although it has not been proved	يدعي - يزعم
broadsheet	a newspaper printed in large sheets of paper .It is serious	جريدة رسمية كبيرة
tabloid	a newspaper that has small pages , a lot of paragraphs or stories , mainly about famous people, funny things	جريدة شعبية صغيرة
investigator	someone who investigates things, especially crimes	محقق
stunning	attractive , fantastic	مدهش
bias	discrimination unfairly influence attitudes رأي , choises or decisions اتجاه -	انحياز
inaccurate	not completely correct	غير متقن
omission	when you don't include or do something .	حذف
spin	to turn around and around very quickly.	يلف حول نفسه
spin	to describe a situation or information in a way that is intended to influence the way people think about it .	خلط الامور - تلفيق الحقائق
point of view	a particular way of thinking about or judging a situation.	وجه نظر
highlights	the most important, interesting, or enjoyable part of something such as a holiday, performance , or sports competition.	اهم الاحداث
grumpy	bad-tempered / easily annoyed	حاد الطبع - سيء المزاج
court	a place where a trial is held, or the judges examining the evidence and decide if someone is guilty or not.	محكمة - ملعب تنس

cheat	to behave in a dishonest way to win or to get an advantage in a competition, game, or examination. It is dishonest or unfair someone who is dishonest and cheats.	يغش - غش
casualty	someone or something that suffers as a result of a particular event or situation	مصاب - ضحية
balanced	to give equal attention to all sides or opinions (fair)	متوازن
prison	a place where people are kept as a punishment for a crime	سجن
law	a system of rules that people must obey	قانون
criminal	someone who is involved in illegal activities or has been proved guilty	مجرم
citizen journalism	is based upon public citizens "playing an active role in the process of collecting, reporting, analyzing, and publishing news and information."	صحافه مدنيه - المواطن
scene	a single piece of action happening in one place in a film, book etc	مشهد

Remember well

1. Bias **انحياز** by placement

• Position of the article on the page – the stories at the top of the page are the ones which the editor **رئيس التحرير** thinks are the most important.

2. Bias **انحياز** by omission

• Leaving out **يحذف** certain stories
• Leaving out facts or certain information which does not agree with the writer's point of view. **وجهه نظر**

3. Bias **انحياز** by 'spin'

• Choosing examples or data which support one side.
• Presenting an opinion as a fact.
• Using emotional language to persuade the reader.

4. Spin is a type of media bias.

Some journalists use words and phrases to support or oppose **يعارض** a service, product or even an idea.

Bias

♠ Tarek loves a football team called the Greens. He writes reports on their matches, online, but the reports do not give a balanced point of view ! He always puts the Greens' report at the top of the page when they win, but not when they lose!

♠ **This is bias by placement.** He always puts a spin on his stories, too. For example, when the Greens lose, it is because they did not have their best players. However, he does not report the fact that the other team did not have their best players when the Greens win!

♠ **This is bias by omission.** Nevertheless, Tarek's reports are not inaccurate: he does not want to mislead you and the reports tell you what really happened in the match. After all, he cannot change the result!

5. Broadsheet is a newspaper **printed** in large **sheets** of paper . It is a **serious** newspaper. It is **formal**. It has international news. **Articles** are **factual**. It uses long sentences and paragraphs

6. Tabloid is a newspaper that has **small** pages, a lot of paragraphs or short stories, mainly about famous people (**celebrities**), funny things. It uses **simple language** and **large headlines**. It may include funny rhymes and jokes.

Quickly – Quickly- Quickly Test yourself

Choose the right answers:

1- Publishing companies suffer a lot from; it's really a crime.

a) piracy b) privacy c) safety d) security

2. Tabloid newspapers often focus on sensational or stories as well as general news.

a. necessity b. celebrity c. obesity d. public

3. A newspaper has small pages and large photos.

a. broadcast b. poster c. tabloid d. blog

4. It is that some people were typing up copies of the book from the photos to share on social media, which is illegal.

a. comfortable b. appeared c. climbed d. claimed

5. A successful journalist must be He should be curious and inquisitive.

a. noisy b. trivial c. nosy d. helpful

6. The accident despite the carefulness of the driver as there was thick fog.

a. claimed b. caused c. occurred d. excused

7. I was to hear that my car had been stolen.

a. cheered b. shocked c. shared d. checked

8. is a type of media bias in which a journalist uses words and phrases to support or oppose a service, or even an idea.

a. Placement b. Spin c. Omission d. Commission

9. The factory had collapsed, so the lawyers that the insurance company pay the legal compensation.

a. protested b. disappeared c. rejected d. demanded

10. He wasn't allowed to join the competition as he was a; he used someone else's name.

a. charity b. check c. cheat d. chat

Lesson one and two

digital	رقمي	afford	يتحمل تكاليف	upset	مرعج - يزعج
print	يطبع	version	إصدار - نسخة	placement	وضع - تحديد
printed	مطبوع	guess	يخمن	emotional	عاطفي
printing	طباعة	warning	تحذير	effect (impact) on	تأثير
role	دور	lawyer	محامي	match	يطابق - مباراه
society	مجتمع	law	قانون	volunteer	متطوع
compare	يقارن	article	مقاله - اداه	objectives	اهداف
style	اسلوب	passengers	مسافرين	excitement	دهشه
persuasive	مقنع	copy	نسخه - ينسخ	prove (proof)	يثبت - برهان
affairs	شئون	copyrights	حقوق الطبع	exist	يوجد
quote	يقتبس	rescue	ينقذ	phrase	عبارة
points	نقاط	security	امن	verb	فعل
lecture	محاضره	booksellers	بائعي الكتب	mean	يعني - يقصد - بخيل
event	حدث	extreme	شديد - متطرف	contents	محتويات
pages	صفحات	common	عام - شامل	imagine	يتخيل
identify	يتعرف علي	fact = truth	حقيقه	review	مقاله نقديه - مراجعه
authority	سلطه	factual	حقيقي	interview	مقابله شخصيه
skills	مهارات	fans	معجبون	interviewer	المحاور
exaggeration	مبالغه - اسراف	source	مصدر	interviewee	المتقدم للمقابله
financially	ماليا	qualities	صفات	eyewitness	شاهد عيان
products	منتجات	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	headline	عنوان
publish	ينشر كتاب	reporter	مراسل	nervousness	عصبية
publisher	ناشر - دار نشر	report (on)	تقرير - يبلغ	route	خط سير
publication	نشر	rescuer	منقذ	site	موقع
come out	يُصدر (كتاب)	snowstorm	عاصفه ثلجيه	strict	حازم
rhymes	قوافي	accurate	دقيق	annoying	مضايق
square	مربع	celebrity	شخص مشهور	journalism	الصحافه
bus lane	خط اتوبيس	amazing	مذهل	journalist	صحفي
particular	خاص	obviously	بوضوح	apprenticeship	فتره تدريب

Lesson 3 & 4 and 5

description	وصف	scene	مشهد	occasion (on..)	مناسبه
type	نوع - يكتب	surprise	مفاجاه	summary (make..)	ملخص
secret	سر	share	يشارك	member	عضو

commuity	مجتمع	free	حر - فاضي	similarity	تشابه
fortunately	لحسن الحظ	character	شخصيه	difference (make..)	اختلاف
websites	مواقع علي النت	ending	نهايه	breath	نفس
up-to-date	حديث	news	الاخبار	clear	واضح- بيريء
remove	يزيل	terrible	فطيع	firefighter	رجل المطافيء
include	يتضمن	damage (do-cause)	تلف - خساره	fire	نار - يفصل
due	كاف - مناسب- حق	thankful	شاكر	formal (in...)	رسمي(غير...)
due to + v-ing or n	بسبب	pay for	يدفع	download	ينزل من علي النت
local	محلي	serious	جاد - خطير	require	يتطلب
break	فسحه	current	حالي	acquire	يكتسب
repeat	يكرر - يعيد	prison	السجن	inquire	يسأل
feelings	مشاعر	behave	يتصرف	Media Course	دوره اعلاميه
habits	عادات	spoil	يتلف	editor	محرر
weigh	يزن	certain	مؤكد	data	بيانات
support	يؤيد- يساند	accident	حادثه	persuade	يقنع
citizen	مواطن	punish	يعاقب	positives	ايجابيات
negatives	سلبيات	trap	فخ- مصيده	spade	جاروف
permission	اذن	dig out	يحفر - ينقب	consequently	وبالتالي
cost	تكلفه	sum	مبلغ - مسأله	whilst	بالرغم من
refer to	يشير الي	sum up	يلخص	constant	مستمر
conclusion	خاتمه	personally	شخصيا	appear	يظهر- يبدو
conclude	يختم- يستنتج	state	يحدد- حاله	cycle	يركب عجله
recent	حديث	result	نتيجه	recycle	يعيد استخدام
add (to)	بضيف - يجمع	in my view	من وجهه نظري	anxious	قلق
former	السابق	bitter	لاذع - مر	in turn	و بالتالي
Danish	دنمراكي	trustful	موثوق به	public	عام
wind	الرياح	traffic	المرور	available	متاح
business	شركه - عمل	rights	حقوق	staff	هيئه عاملين
captain	قائد السفينه	obtain	يحصل علي	stunning	مدهش
exclusive	حصري	priceless	لا يقدر بثمن	exhibitions	معارض
display (on....)	يعرض(معروض)	mention	يذكر	exhibits	معروضات
recommend	يوصي - يشرح	discuss	يناقش	experience	خبره - تجربه
opinion	رأي	leave out	يفغل - يترك	actor	ممثل
progress (make..)	تقدم	block	يسد - حطر	train	يتدرب - قطار
sequence	تسلسل- سياق	action(take....)	فعل - حدث	trainer	مدرب
survey (do...)	دراسه	access to	مدخل - سبيل	trainee	متدرب
grab	يجذب	set off	ينطلق	handcuffs	كليشات
marsh	مستنقع	scare	يخيف	guilty	مذنب
graveyard	مقابر	file	ملف - مبرد	leg irons	كليشات
orphan	يتيم	impression	انطباع	mention	يذكر - يقول

Expressions

at a lower price	بثمن منخفض	news agency	وكاله انباء
apply for	يتقدم بطلب	give up	يتخلي عن
argue with	يجادل	on business	في مهمه عمل
argue for	يدافع عن	terrible for business	سيء للعمل
a double-edged weapon	سلاح ذو حدين	complain to	يشتكى ل
take /have\bear responsibility	يتحمل المسئوليه	complain about	يشتكى بخصوص
expert on / in / at	خبير في	complain of	يشتكى من مرض
a ten-minute break	استراحة لمدة ١٠ دقائق	a large sum of money	مبلغ كبير من المال
on social media	في وسائل التواصل	illegally copy	نسخه غير شرعيه
much more common	اكثر شيوعا جدا من	digital version	نسخه رقميه
keen on = interested in	مهتم ب	get into journalism	يدخل مجال الصحافه

make a note
make a difference
make a profit
make a choice
make fun of
make a good novelist

يحدث تغيير - فرق
يحقق ربح
يختار
يستعزأ ب

make a fire
make an effort
make friends
make the beds
make a plan

يشعل نار
يقوم بمجهود
يصادق
يرتب السرير
يخطط

- He's going to **make a speech**.

- نستخدم (do) عندما نتحدث القيام بتنفيذ عمل أو مهمة أو نشاط ما.

do homework
do well
do a survey
do an operation
do a favour
do a hobby
do a report
do research
do something
do an experiment
do shopping
do washing
do a crossword
do an exam - a test

يعمل الواجب المنزلي
يؤدي أداء جيداً
يجري استطلاع
يجري عملية جراحية
يقدم خدمة أو معروف
يمارس هواية
يعد تقرير
يجري بحثاً
يقوم بعمل شيء
يقوم بتجربه
يقوم بالتسوق
يقوم بالغسيل
يقوم بحل الكلمات المتقاطعة
يحل امتحان

do washing up
do a job
do housework
do business
do exercise
do repairs
do a quiz
do his best
do a project on
do the ironing
do cooking
do the laundry
do an activity
do judo

يغسل الأطباق
يقوم بوظيفة
يؤدي الأعمال المنزلية
يقوم بعمل تجاري
يقوم بتدريب
يجري إصلاحات
يقوم بعمل مسابقة
يبذل قصارى جهده
يعمل مشروع
يقوم بالكوي
يقوم بالطهي
يقوم بغسل الملابس
يقوم بنشاط
يلعب جودو

- I always **do my homework**.

- We **did a class** survey today.

2. and = In addition إلى ذلك + جملة

- We went shopping **and visited** some friends.
- We went shopping. **In addition, we** visited some friends.

بالإضافة إلى **Besides = As well as + v-ing** إلى **In addition to + v-ing**

- **Besides going shopping**, we visited some friends.
- **In addition to going shopping**, we visited some friends.
- **As well as going shopping**, we visited some friends.

لاحظ أن الفاعل واحد في الجملتين في المثال السابق •

• إذا استخدمت **as well as** في ربط جملتين يختلف فيهما الفاعل ، فإن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الأول:

- I am very keen on politics. My brother is very keen on politics.
I as well as my brother **am** very keen on politics.

Test yourself :

- 1-playing well, our team scored three goals.
a. In addition b. As well as c. And d. Because of
2. In addition to.....the best player, he got a fine cup.
a. choosing b. being chosen c. chosen d. choose
3.Luxor, I visited Aswan.
a. In addition b. As well as c. And d. Because of
- 4.....his cleverness , Mo Salah is very fast
a. In addition to b. As soon as c. And d. Because of
5. Alihis sisters are very clever.
a. in addition to b. as well as c. and d. since

3- (Although - though - even though - even if- but)

١ - تستخدم الروابط الآتية للتعبير عن التناقض:

- هذه الروابط يأتي بعدها جملة (فاعل ثم فعل) و تعني بالرغم من
- تأتي هذه الروابط في أول أو وسط الجملة
- تأتي **but** في وسط الجملة ويأتي بعدها جملة كاملة

1- He was poor **but** (however+ yet) he was happy.

2- **Although** he was poor, he was happy.

He was happy **although/ even if /even though/though** he was poor.

٢- هذه الروابط يأتي بعدها شبه جملة و تعني بالرغم من

Despite,

In spite of,

3- **Regardless of,** + اسم (**V. ing**) + الجملة الثانية

With all,

For all

⇒ **In spite of being** poor, he was happy.

⇒ **Despite his poverty,** he was happy.

⇒ **Despite being clever,** he got low marks in exams.

4- **However** + فعل + فاعل + صفه او حال

However **well** he **studied**, he didn't get high marks.

5- **as** + فعل + فاعل + صفه او حال

6. **Whatever** + فعل + فاعل + اسم

I am willing to pay **whatever price** you ask

7. **Whatever** + فعل + فاعل ضمير

Wherever **you do** , I won't forgive you.

Test yourself:

1. He played well ,he lost the game.

a. although b. However c. because d. but

2.....his cleverness, he failed to achieve his goals.

a. Although b. However c. Despite d. in spite

3.....playing tennis is very funny , it is tiring

a. Although b. However c. because d. Despite

4.....cooking the food well, we didn't enjoy it.

a. Although b. However c. because d. Despite

5.....quickly he ran , he didn't win the race.

a. Although b. However c. because d. Despite

4 - Stop to + infinitive

يتوقف لكي يفعل شيئا

•He **stopped to buy** his newspaper to know the news.

♦ **Stop + gerund (v+ing)** يتوقف عن عمل شيء

• He stopped reading his newspaper and went out

Test yourself:

1. on my way home , I stopped.....about Ola as she was absent today.

a. ask b. asking c. to ask d. asks

2. Ali stopped.....to the news to open the door.

a. listen b. listening c. to listen d. listens

5- accident

حادثة

-incident

حادثة مفاجئة

-event حدث مميز

He was **killed** in a car **accident**.

-Today's news is full of **incidents**.

January Revolution is **a great event**.

Test yourself

1. My neighbour was killed in a train.....(accident -incident -event)

2. The player's leg was broken in a violent(accident -incident -event)

3. Qualifying to the finals of the world cup was a wonderful..... (accident -incident -event)

4. The player died after he was injured in an (accident -incident -event) in front of his house.

6 - experience

تجربة حياتية

- experience (v.)

experiment - يعاني من

تجربة علمية

- I had some **interesting experiences** while my travels.
- She **experienced** the worst time of her life in the hospital.
- Teachers **carry out simple experiments** in the laboratory.

Test yourself:

1. Scientists need to do a lot of (experiences- experiments-experience) to prove their theories.
2. A lot of youth don't have the necessary (experiences- experiments-experience) to get a good job.
3. When our youth join our army, they (experiences- experiments-experience) a new different life.

- | | | |
|----------------------------|--|---------------------------|
| 7 - affect يؤثر علي | - have an effect on له تأثير علي | - effective مؤثر |
| influence | - have an influence on له تأثير علي | - influential مؤثر |
| impact | - have an impact on له تأثير علي | |

Test yourself:

1. Egypt has a great (affection- effect- affect) among the countries of the Middle East.
2. My family is very (influence- affection- influential) in the world of banks.
3. Parents should have good (influence- affection- influential) on their children.
4. El Araby is very important in the world of business. It is very (effect – influential- affectionate).

8 – He took a ten (minutes – minute's – minutes' – minute) break for coffee.

- He is a **20- year-old student**.

The astronauts usually do **two-hour space walks**.

- I spent **a (one) year's time** in bed after that accident.
- She spent **four months' time** in bed after that accident.
- I usually have **a ten-minute break** between my study sessions.
- **a three-day conference / three day conferences / a two-hour drive / ten years' time.**

يمكن التعامل مع الاسم علي انه معدود مثل المثال الاول التالي ويمكن يكون غير معدود مثل المثال الثاني

- * We went on **a three-year mission** in space. * We went on **three years' mission** in space.

- | | | |
|--|--|-----------------------|
| 9. queue طابور رأسى يقف فى طابور | - row صف أفقى / يجدف | - line خط يصطف |
| -There was a long queue outside the cinema. | -I always sit in the first row in class. | |
| -Can you draw a straight line without a ruler? | | |

- | | | |
|---|--|-------------------------|
| 10. frequent متكرر - متدد | - frequently مرارا و تكرارا | - frequency تردد |
| - John is a frequent tourist to Egypt. | -They frequently visit their grandparents. | |
| -Do you know the frequency of the Sports channel? | | |

- | | | |
|---|--|--|
| 12. Mention يذكر | - remind يجعل شخص يتذكر | - remember يتذكر بنفسه - يرسل تحيات |
| -Mention the causes of the population growth? Please remind me of the time of the meeting. | | |
| -She reminded me that we had to pay the telephone bill. | -Please remember to pay the telephone bill. | |
| -I remember visiting Port Said when I was young. Remember me to your kind father. | | |

- | | | |
|--|--|---|
| 13. Come out ينشر/يصدر مبنى للمعلوم | Publish ينشر طباعة مبنى للمجهول | Spread ينشر/يجعله يعم أو يسود |
| -Egypt always tries to spread peace in the Middle East. | | |
| -His last story was published in 2019. | | - His last story came out in 2019. |

Test yourself

1. The writer's new novel will be (washed-come out- spread-published) in Cairo.
2. The writer's new novel (came out- spread-published) in Cairo.
3. Mice and rats (come out- spread-publish-print) dangerous diseases.
4. In the threate, I sat in the 4th (queue – row –line-floor)
5. There is a long (queue – row –line) in front of the cinema to book tickets.

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 14. Spin يدور حول نفسه | - orbit يدور حول شي |
| -The earth spins around its axis. | -The earth orbits the sun. |

15. Omit يحذف- **emit** ينبعث - ينطلق-The book **omitted** any mention of the king's illness.-Cars **emit** harmful gases**16.location**

موقع محدد

- destination

مقصد - جهة وصول

-Do you know the location of the new branch of the bank?

Do you know the destination of these tourists?

17. Contain (يحتوي علي شيء بداخله)**include** (متضمنا - شاملا) & **including** (يشتمل علي يتضمن - من الصعب فصله)- **consist of** (يتكون من)& **enclose** (يحيط ب - يرفق شيء بشيء)The museum **contains a number of original artworks.**The price for the hotel **includes breakfast.**His job **includes looking after the animals in the garden.**The football team should **consist of eleven people.**They stole everything in my purse, **including my credit cards.**The swimming pool was **enclosed by a high fence.****Test yourself**

1. The list of our team (consists- includes- encloses- contains) the best players.
2. There are five injured people, (consisting- including- enclosing - containing) two women.
3. My school bag (consists- includes- encloses- contains) five books , some pens and a pencil.
4. Our house (consists- includes- encloses - contains) of three bedrooms, a big hall , a bathroom and a wide kitchen.
5. When we apply for a job, we should(consist- include- enclose- contain) our qualifications in the CV.

18. cause (يسبب)& **cause** المصدر to مفعول (يجعل)**cause of** + (سبب (يؤدي الي نتيجته))& **reason for + v ing** / سبب - مبرر**reason why** + جملة كاملةScientists are trying to find out **what causes the disease.**The cold weather **caused me to sleep** earlyWhat was **the cause of the fire?**Can you give the **reason for leaving** ?I don't know the **reason why he came late.****Test yourself**

- 1- We don't know the real (cause- reason) for his failure.
- 2- We don't know the real (cause- reason) why he failed.
3. The (cause- reason) of his death isn't known.
4. The wind (caused - reasoned) the trees to fall.

19. do wrong (يعمل خطأ)**go wrong** (يتعطل)**make a mistake****20-breathe**(يتنفس) **breath**

(التنفس الي الرئتين)

breathing

(عملية التنفس)

breeze(النسيم)**21. require**

يتطلب - يستلزم

acquire

يكتسب

inquire

يسأل

-The college **acquired a reputation** for very high standards.The project **requires considerable investment.**We rang the hospital again **to inquire** how the old man was.**Test yourself**

1. I have (required -acquired -inquired) a knowledge of the language by using a lot of educational sites.
2. The job you applied for, (required -acquired -inquired) a good qualification.
3. Ali (required -acquired -inquired) why I got up late.
4. The patient couldn't (breath- breathe- breeze) as there was a lot of smoke.
- 5-If you are on a journey ,there's always the chance that something will (do-go-turn-give)wrong

22-win: (a medal ميدالية / a cup كأس / a race سباق / a competition مسابقة / a match / an award / a prize)**beat:** (someone شخص / a team فريق)

gain: experience خبرة/information معلومات/Knowledge معرفة /weight وزن/ height طول/ speed سرعة يزداد
earn: money / his living يكسب المال / عيشه (من العمل الجاد)

Test yourself

1. Brazil (won- beat- earned- gained) the World Cup many times.
2. Zamalik (won- beat- earned- gained) Al Ahly 2 \ 1 .
3. My father was a simple man . He worked hard to (win- beat- earn- gain) our living.
4. He (won- beat- earned- gained) a good experience as he travelled to many countries.

~~~~~

## LESSON ONE AND TWO

### LISTENING TEXT

#### 1. A student reporter is interviewing a journalist

**S. Reporter:** How did you get into **journalism**?

**Journalist :** I started as a **trainee on a local newspaper** and after two weeks was chosen for a **three-year apprenticeship**.

**S. Reporter:** **What advice** can you give a **student reporter** like me?

**Journalist :** When you're **doing an interview** don't ask too many questions, **let the person talk and always listen** very carefully, give both sides of the story and make sure any **facts** or **quotes** are accurate. If you're writing a news story try to be **objective** and not to show your own feelings or opinions.

**S. Reporter:** Have you ever interviewed anyone famous?

**Journalist :** I've interviewed **lots of celebrities including Amr Diab, Carmen Suleiman** and **Sandy**.

**S. Reporter:** Who was the most **annoying** person you've interviewed?

**Journalist :** There have been quite a few; one was a very **grumpy well-known actor**.

**S. Reporter:** Is it a hard job?

**Journalist :** It can be sometimes but **journalists** usually love what they do.

**S. Reporter:** What kind of person does a good journalist have to be?

**Journalist :** You obviously have to be good at writing, but you also have to be a **naturally nosy person** and you really need to be interested in people.

**S. Reporter:** What advice would you give to young people listening who want to become journalists?

**Journalist :** Get some **experience** on the school newspaper or work for a local newspaper for free and don't **give up**, keep trying until someone gives you a chance. I **did many voluntary jobs** while I was at university and I **applied for 18 jobs** before I **got my first paid job** 12 years later. I'm still here.

~~~~~

READING

New Harry Potter Book shown on line

Photographs of all 784 **pages** of Harry Potter and the Deathly Hallows have **appeared on the internet** four days before J. K. Rowling's final book is due **to be published**. **It is not known** who took the photographs of **the book, whose contents** have been **kept a secret** before the book **is published** at 12.01 am Saturday. Some **websites** have **removed** the photos **after receiving warnings** from **the publisher's lawyers**, but photos of the book can still be read **on other sites**. **It is also claimed** that some people were **typng up** the photos to share **on social media**. This all **occured despite the careful security** which has been put in a place before the book is published. This **included asking** the **booksellers** not to tell in the media when or if they had copies of the book. **The incident highlights** the problems of online book **piracy**, which is becoming much more common.

~~~~~

### Internet cheat ruins Potter surprise

Just four days before J.K. Rowling's final book about Harry Potter is published, **an internet cheat** has **shared** every page of the book online. This has **ruined** the surprise for millions of readers, who have been **waiting with bated breath** to **find out** what happens to the famous **character**. Several websites show photographs of every page of Harry Potter and the Deathly Hallows, which means that you can read the whole book online, **including the long-awaited ending**. Lawyers have **demande**d that the websites **stop showing** the illegal photos and, **fortunately**, some websites have agreed. **However**, other people have typed up the text from the photos and likely to share the story on other websites. Fans of Harry Potter were shocked by the news. "It's **terrible**" says Kate Strong from Cambridge, who plans to buy the new book for her children. "The person who has done this **should be put in prison**."

~~~~~

Ever Given blocks Suez Canal

Rescuers have finally moved **a huge ship which blocked traffic going through the Suez Canal**. The ship, called the Ever Given, is 400 meters long and **weighs** 200,000 tonnes. It is one of the largest of this **type** of ship in the world.

The ship was travelling through the Suez Canal **on 23 March** when there was a **sand storm**. The ship's **captain** said that **a strong wind spun** the ship so that both its front and back hit the sides of the canal. The **result** was that no ships could travel past the ship for nearly a week. Yesterday, more than 380 ships were **waiting** to pass through the canal. Many ship companies wanted to know if there was **another route**. A few of the ships' captains **decided to go** around the south of Africa instead, but this **added** about eight days to their journeys. At the same time, some countries **announced** that they would **send products by air**, but this is about three times more expensive as sending it by ship. The **accident** was **terrible** for **businesses** around the world. That is because around 12% of the world's business products pass through the canal each day so the accident cost both Egypt and the other countries millions of dollars. Luckily, smaller Egyptian boats finally were able to move the Ever Given yesterday. They **did an amazing job**. They moved around 30,000 **square** meters of sand under the ship before they took the ship to **the Great Bitter Lake**, in the middle of the canal. The canal authorities told us that they won't know the true cause of the accident until they **investigate**. Although the canal is open for ships again today, traffic through the canal won't return to normal for many days. **Experts** are **investigating** the possible **casualties** for all sides. They are also studying the accident carefully to see how Egypt can be **compensated financially**.

WB

WB

WB

WB

WB

WB

(A) Piracy is a crime

In **recent**, a **new former Danish student** in her late 20s was **punished for selling pirated digital copies of textbooks**. The **criminal lawyer stated** that the **convict** has now received a punishment for violating copyright law when asked to give a reason why she sold books that she does not **own the rights** to, the student said she was helping students **obtain** books **at a lower price**. It was **made clear** to her that copying e-books that one does not own the rights to is **illegal**. **In addition to being** punished by law, she is also **required** by law. She is also **required to pay a large sum of money for the crime of piracy**.

(B) Punished for stealing books:

An **International Crime Court** in Denmark punished a 20-year-old student for selling **pirated digital copies of textbooks**. The student said she was only trying to help others buy cheap books. The student was punished and required to pay a large sum of money for her crime. The **criminal lawyer** made it clear that **copying e-books without the permission of the author is a crime**.

(C) Manal: Mom, Soha **has broken the computer**; it's not working.

Dad: That computer is always breaking; we need a new one.

[illegible]

Social Media has a negative impact on news and society

To begin with, this constant cycle of news, which is mostly bad, can make people stressed and worried. A recent survey found that more than half of Americans say they get anxious and sleep badly **because of the** news.

Next, not everything we read or see **on social media is true and factual**. If we share it, before checking the facts, we might **spread false information**. **In turn**, this means that the public **stop trusting journalists and news in general**.

Lastly, social media starts to control what news we see and don't see. Our social media 'friends' become the '**managing editors**'. They share news stories they like and agree with, so the news we see is not balanced or objective.

In summary, whilst it is a good thing that we have so much news available and it is easy to keep **up-to-date** with **current affairs**, we need to avoid the **negative effects**. It's important to be careful about where we get our news and how often we check it. We also have **a social responsibility** to make every effort not to **spread inaccurate** or **misleading new** and **not to copy artistic content without permission**.

When the Egyptian Museum was built in 1901 it was one of the largest museums in the Middle East. It had over 120,000 exhibits but only some could be displayed and the rest were unseen in storerooms. Some people complained that the 19th century museum was a little dark and dusty too, so priceless exhibits couldn't be displayed to their full advantage. Others claimed that the small rooms meant that there was always a queue to see the famous Tutankhamun. A frequent visitor to the Museum, Salma Ahmed mentioned that the very busy traffic in central Cairo also made the building difficult to get to. Salma told us that the old museum was beautiful but more space and a better location was needed in the 21st century. The solution to these problems is the new Grand Egyptian Museum at Giza, a stunning location next to the pyramids, looking towards the Western Desert. This exciting project is a state of the art space with interactive exhibits and a floor plan that takes you on a journey through the treasures of Egyptian antiquity. Salma denied that the new museum was too expensive and argued that Egypt's historic past should be displayed in a wonderful setting for all to see. No one can complain about that!

Car drivers are angry about plans to open a new bus lane from the city centre. The plan, which will cost an enormous LE200 million, will stop all cars using Nile Road, one of the most important roads into the city. "Traffic in the city is already terrible," says businesswoman Mrs El Baz. "If they close Nile Road, it will be even worse." Another

business person who uses South Road regularly, Mr Fawzy says, "Why are they planning to close roads? With so many cars in the city, they need to build new ones. No one wants to take buses because they are too slow."

~~~~~

### ( B ) New route to serve university

There are plans for a new bus lane from the city centre to the university. The LE200-million project will mean closing Nile Road to cars, but will make the journey by bus 30 minutes faster. The organisers believe the project will help attract students to the university and that the electric buses will also reduce pollution. The bus lane will also be used by bikes and taxis. The project is part of a long-term plan to persuade people to use public transport rather than driving, to help reduce traffic and air pollution.

~~~~~

12 hours **trapped** in my car in Germany. Thousands of us are trapped in our cars after **a record snowstorm**, about 20 cms of snow an hour. A few people with **spades** are trying to **dig out** their cars. Snow's now stopped, and some people are leaving their cars to try and walk home.

Exciting plan for hotel

A new, modern hotel **is planned** for White Beach. There will be rooms for 200 people and most will **look out over** the beautiful beach. The project should give work to many **local** people and bring more tourists to a beach that few people know about. They will also open a new road to the hotel, to replace the old one which is difficult to drive down.

We still need guidebooks because we cannot **rely on the opinion of people online**.

With today's social media, it is possible to find online reviews of everything from a local park or café to a famous restaurant or museum. Before you book a holiday, you can read what other people think of a hotel or car hire company and what they recommend you do when you get there. Although this means you can get information very easily, in my view, this is not as useful information as you can get from a guidebook.

To begin with, we need to ask ourselves why people write reviews online. Whilst it is sometimes because people like writing their opinions, at other times they have a reason for writing it. Perhaps they know the owners of the café, or perhaps they are the owners of the café! That is why they give it a good review.

Secondly, who are the people writing the reviews? It is difficult to know this information. If they are 50-year-old Europeans, will they have the same opinion as you? It is very hard to know if you are going to like the same places that they like.

Lastly, we need to remember that guidebook writers are usually experts. You can trust them for accurate information and point of view. They also know who is using their books, so if the book is intended to be for young people, they will recommend places that young people will like.

To conclude, online reviews are useful, but it's important to remember that they are just people's opinions. If you want to know what experts think, personally I think you should buy a guidebook.

~~~~~

**Writing** (A persuasive essay)

( شرح المقال بعدالوحده السادسة )

### Exercises

### Lesson one and two

ثانيا الاسئلة الموضوعيه التاليه ( كل سؤال بدرجه )

### 1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

1. The police have closed the train station because there has been an.....  
a) occasion                      b) incident                      c) event                      d) encourage
- 2-.....is the crime of illegally copying and selling books, tapes, videos, computer programs  
a) Theft                      b) robbery                      c) Murder                      d) Piracy
3. The teacher..... to know why the students were all late.  
a) demanded                      b) forced                      c) told                      d) wandered
4. Someone who is involved in illegal activities or has been proved guilty is a .....  
a) cheat                      b) criminal                      c) officer                      d) bookseller
5. This lawyer won't try to .....you. It's not his style. He is honest.  
a) mislead                      b) cheated                      c) thief                      d) make up
6. Robbery is against the ..... We should fight robbers.  
a) court                      b) judge                      c) law                      d) editor
7. Yehia Haqqi was an ..... on Arab culture.  
a) expert                      b) experience                      c) experiment                      d) exporter
8. Students in all kinds of schools should practise the four..... reading, writing, listening and speaking to be fluent in languages.  
a) skulls                      b) things                      c) skills                      d) languages
9. The incident ..... the problems of online book piracy.  
a) highways                      b) highlights                      c) heights                      d) high quality
10. The police reached the ..... of the crime. They prevented anyone from touching anything.  
a) location                      b) destination                      c) scene                      d) placement
11. A..... newspaper has small pages and large photos.  
a. broadcast                      b. poster                      c. tabloid                      d. blog
12. A ..... newspaper is a more formal newspaper with large pages.  
a. tabloid                      b. poster                      c. blog                      d. broadsheet
13. The bank ..... the company from bankruptcy. It gave the company a huge loan.  
a. served                      b. rescued                      c. motioned                      d. mentioned
14. I have a very..... teacher who tolerates no jokes at all.  
a) funny                      b) strict                      c) optimistic                      d) thoughtful
15. The teacher became very..... after the kids started causing problems.  
a) serious                      b) seriousness                      c) seriously                      d) joking
16. The ..... of the newspaper main articles printed in red.  
a) addresses                      b) headlines                      c) ranks                      d) awards
17. There are some wonderful.....in Al Ahram Weekly about practicing sports this week.  
a) articles                      b) tale                      c) poets                      d) papers
18. Police are looking for the .....who stole a car yesterday. The suspect is a man in his forties.  
a) innocent                      b) criminal                      c) lawyer                      d) officer
- 19-Not many people have read the young author's book as she could not find a.....  
a) library                      b) publisher                      c) bookshop                      d) bookseller
20. My job ..... making copies, answering phones, and other duties.  
a) contains                      b) consists                      c) includes                      d) have
21. What bad news! The book had been ..... before it was published.  
a. leaked                      b. locked                      c. disappeared                      d. written
22. It is .....that some people were typing up copies of the book to share it illegally.  
a. comfortable                      b. appeared                      c. climbed                      d. claimed
23. Online book ..... is an illegal action.  
a. proficiency                      b. piracy                      c. accuracy                      d. security
24. The accident ..... despite the carefulness of the driver because there was a sudden leak in the brake oil.  
a. claimed                      b. caused                      c. occurred                      d. excused
25. It is not easy for young writers to..... their new books.  
a. write                      b. appear                      c. come out                      d. publish
26. I applied for the new job and I am waiting for the answer to my application with bated

breath . This means that I .....

a. no longer expect that I will get the new job.      b. am waiting hopelessly to get promoted.

c. am in a nervous and excited state anticipating what 'll happen.      d. I 'll get the new job.

27. .... is one of the behaviours that you must stop practising.

a. Charity                      b. Checking                      c. Cheating                      d. Chatting

28. Ali ..... that He was going to the park after school.

a) told                      b) recommended                      c) whispered                      d) mentioned

29. A successful journalist must be nosy and interested in people. This means that he/she has to be .....

a. not curious and ambitious

b. curious and inquisitive

c. cheerful and forgiving

d. unenthusiastically waiting for good news

30. The Prime Minister ..... that there was a severe penalty against those who build illegally.

a. announced

b. advertised

c. refused

d. decreased

31. The giant ship had broken down and.....navigation in the Suez Canal for 7 days.

a. allowed

b. blocked

c. refused

d. eased

32.To.....is to say something is true, although it has not been proved

a) misunderstand

b) mislead

c) misprint

d) mistake

33. Bias by .....is when the stories put by the editor at the top of the page to show as most important.

a) placement

b) accuracy

c) omission

d) spin

34. Bias by .....is to leave out certain stories , facts or certain information which does not agree with the writer's point of view

a) placement

b) accuracy

c) omission

d) spin

35. Bias by .....is to choose examples or data which support one side, present an opinion as a fact or using emotional language to persuade the reader

a) placement

b) accuracy

c) omission

d) spin

36..... journalism means that people , not professional journalists report, collect and publish news , usually on line.

a) Editor

b) Peer

c) Citizen

d) Teenager

37. What is the best .....for a headache?

a- cause

b- treatment

c- illness

d- surgeon

38. Ali often won running races at school, but we all knew he was a ..... . He did not follow the correct route and did not run as far as other students.

a) faithful

b) loyal

c) cheat

d) honest

39. The family picnic was ..... when there was a sandstorm and everyone had to wait inside.

a) sad

b) desired

c) hoped

d) ruined

40 People wait with .....breath while the firefighters helped the family from the fire. Thankfully, everyone was saved.

a) beat

b) hated

c) bite

d) bated

41.The teacher asked the students to give him the ..... of the story they have read at home

a) paraphrase

b) summary

c) total

d) brief

42- People who leak books and join in .....are punished for their crime.

a) piracy

b) pirates

c) cheat

d) chat

43. I was ----- to hear that my car had been stolen.

a. cheered

b. checked

c. choked

d. shocked

44. Unfortunately, the collapse of the house's caused tens of ---and a lot of injuries.

a. facilities

b. abilities

c. casualties

d. impurities

45. Finally, the police discovered what had ----- the accident.

a. caused

b. reasoned

c. excused

d. rescued

46. Downloading music from some websites on the internet without paying is an example of.....

a) bully

b) piracy

c) petrify

d) cheat

47.With the expansion of the Internet, ..... has grown more widespread.

a. piracy

b. pirated

c. pirate

d. private

48.There are a lot of ..... on the internet that we can use to get a lot of information.

a. resources

b. sources

c. friends

d. helpers

49.The criminal should be punished and spent some years of their lives in .....

a) streets

b) prisons

c) schools

d) factories

50.The famous journalist writes film..... for the newspapers.

a) revisions

b) reviews

c) criticism

d)clerks

## Exercises

ثانياً الاسئلة الموضوعية التالية ( كل سؤال بدرجة )

### 1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

1. Ali always puts Zamalik's reports at the top of the page when they win, but not when they lose! This is bias by .....  
 a) spin                      b) aggression                      c) placement                      d) omission
2. We rewarded her as she didn't ..... in the exam. She depended on herself  
 a) make                      b) cheat                      c) do                      d) play
3. The product ..... that it can make you thin without dieting .I think it is fake.  
 a) announces                      b) claims                      c) accuses                      d) advises
4. Our head teacher is ..... He is always quiet and does not often laugh.  
 a) furious                      b) serious                      c) genius                      d) curious
5. Recording companies continue efforts to fight internet.....  
 a) piracy                      b) conspiracy                      c) fancy                      d) pirate
6. The divers could pinpoint the ..... of the sunken ship.  
 a) destination                      b) location                      c) orders                      d) placement
7. Nothing can ..... for the loss of the parents.  
 a. consist                      b. compensate                      c. revolve                      d. indicate
8. There are some dangerous ..... in the Red Sea who attack ships to ask for ransom  
 a) gang                      b) violent                      c) killers                      d) pirates
9. The news of his brother's accident gave him a .....  
 a ) shock                      b ) shocking                      c ) shocked                      d) shocks
10. Al -Ahram Weekly ..... a lot of articles about science every week.  
 a) writes                      b) translates                      c ) publishes                      d) says
11. Social ..... are changing the way people communicate, work, and shop.  
 a. media                      b. mania                      c. trail                      d. trial
12. Book piracy ..... the publisher's surprise. He lost a lot of money.  
 a-rained                      b-reined                      c-ran                      d-ruined
13. A ..... is someone who produces books, newspapers or magazines.  
 a) diplomat                      b) publisher                      c) partner                      d) performer
14. A successful journalist must be ..... He/she has to be curious and inquisitive  
 a. noisy                      b. nosy                      c. early                      d. eyes
15. The factory had collapsed, so the lawyers ..... that the insurance company should pay the legal compensation.  
 a. protested                      b. demanded                      c. rejected                      d. disappeared
16. The captain said that a strong wind ..... the ship so that both its front and back hit the sides of the canal.  
 a. stopped                      b. robbed                      c. begun                      d. spun
17. The police officers are ..... the cause of the crime to arrest the criminal.  
 a. announcing                      b. hiding                      c. refusing                      d. investigating
18. After the accident, the injured people were ..... financially.  
 a. regulated                      b. compensated                      c. fined                      d. freed
19. The journalist was biased by .....; he put the story at the top of the page to show it was interesting.  
 a. repetition                      b. omission                      c. placement                      d. spin
20. The police were able to rescue the people who were ..... inside the house during the fire.  
 a. typed                      b. tripped                      c. wrapped                      d. trapped

21. .... is a type of media bias in which a journalist uses words and phrases to support or oppose a service, or even an idea.  
a. Placement      b. Spin      c. Omission      d. Commission
22. As well as ..... an important writer, he was an expert on Arabic culture.  
a) being      b) to be      c) be      d) having been
23. He ..... an urgent telephone call asking for help.  
a) did      b) revised      c) made      d) delivered
24. The police are looking for the criminal who has .....that horrible crime.  
a. made      b. committed      c. competed      d. corrected
26. The robber grabbed the lady's handbag and ..... quickly so he could escape.  
a. coped up      b. sat down      c. set off      d. broke into
27. The person winning the quiz is a ..... He looked up the answers online, which was not allowed  
a. chat      b. bias      c. cheat      d. spin
28. You must be .....of yourself; you have made a silly mistake!  
a. proud      b. pleased      c. afraid      d. ashamed
- 29- The .....of some planets in our solar system is rocky.  
a. impact      b. face      c. scar      d. surface
- 30- Doctors keep the ..... of all their patients, so they know what illnesses they have had .  
a. paper      b. records      c. placements      d. figures
31. In many countries, the police ask the suspected men to give him their cards to.....them  
a. release      b. identify      c. identity      d. quality
- 32 A.....is someone who behaves in a dishonest way in order to get something illegally.  
a) killer      b) pilot      c) cheat      d) blacksmith .
- 33 To.....is to ask for something in a very strict and serious way.  
a) demand      b) offer      c) send      d) joke
- 34 .....is when someone illegally copies and sells someone's work.  
a) Private      b) Piracy      c) Petrify      d) Theft
- 35 To.....is to completely spoiled something.  
a) ruin      b) run      c) pour      d) blame
- 36-To be .....is an extreme adjective meaning very surprised and upset .  
a) afraid      b) sad      c) shocked      d) pleased
37. To ..... is to happen or exist in a particular place or situation.  
a) take      b) overcome      c) come      d) occur
38. A ..... newspaper has small pages and large photos . It uses short stories. It uses simple language and large headlines  
a) dictionary      b) broadsheet      c) timetable      d) tabloid
40. A ..... newspaper is a more formal newspaper with large pages . It has more international news. Articles are more factual and use longer sentences and paragraphs.  
a) dictionary      b) broadsheet      c) timetable      d) tabloid
41. .... is a type of media bias. Some journalists use words and phrases to support or oppose a service, product, or even an idea.  
a) Placement      b) Accuracy      c) Omission      d) Spin
42. Some people..... that night is safer than day.  
a) delay      b) claim      c) tell      d) demand
- 42 .Workers at the factory ..... better pay and shorter working hours.  
a) demand      b) offer      c) send      d) joke
43. I was..... to read that 52% of people in the world are under 30 years old.  
a) shocked      b) choked      c) cheeked      d) shaken
44. If you want to make a-an ..... due to the bad product, you should meet the manager.

- a. excuse                      b. complaint                      c. require                      d. demand
45. The police suspected that the guard was the criminal so he was sent to the.....to be judged.  
a. court                      b. police station                      c. prison                      d. place
- 46 We will be playing tennis on ..... number four in the club this afternoon.  
a. court                      b. yard                      c. field                      d. place
47. Our football team is not good. They usually lose in the first ..... of the competition.  
a. number                      b. final                      c. round                      d. cup
48. Earthquakes.....is not predictable.  
a.happen                      b. expectance                      c. occurrence                      d.watching
49. The company ..... a lot of damages for its losses .  
a. mentioned                      b. demanded                      c. investigated                      d. wandered
50. Scientists hope to develop a- an ..... that uses solar energy to fly.  
a. ship                      b. fly                      c. aircraft                      d. bicycle
- 51.I told my friend that this problem is .....and he shouldn't tell anyone about it  
a. public                      b.general                      c. secret                      d. warning
52. A man has been found dead in the road. The police think it was an accident, not .....  
a. an event                      b. a crime                      c. an incident                      d. a game.
53. Ali ..... that Ahmed broke the window, but Ahmed is innocent!  
a. claimed                      b.clapped                      c.calmed                      d.told
54. If you want to see.....things, you can visit the Grand Museum in Cairo  
a. available                      b. valuable                      c. petrify                      d. modern
55. Sharm el Sheikh is considered as a nature .....on the coast of the Red Sea.  
a. book                      b. preserve                      c. reserve                      d. protected
- 56.....examined the statue deciding that it was false.  
a. Geologists                      b. Teachers                      c.Experts                      d. Engineers
57. This chicken is not cooked very well. I'm going to ..... to the waiter.  
a. tell                      b. complain                      c. call                      d. scream
58. The police accused my neighbour.....stealing my car.  
a. on                      b. in                      c. of                      d. off
59. The patient should have his medicines.....or his state will be worse.  
a. gradually                      b. regularly                      c.day                      d. orally
- 60.A- An.....is someone who decides what will be published on the newspapers or magazines and where will be published.  
a) publisher                      b) beggar                      c) writer                      d) editor
- 61.There's no fixed ..... in this market . You should debate well to get what you want.  
a) prize                      b) price                      c) breeze                      d) pounds
- 62.We all were surprised when the coach announced the ..... of Shikabala to our national team as he does not like him.  
a) exclusion                      b) inclusion                      c) treatment                      d) denial
63. My hobbies ..... reading and painting.  
a. consist                      b. contain                      c. include                      d attitude
64. I really enjoyed this book. It is written in a very simple.....  
a) stand                      b) steel                      c) stool                      d) style
- 65.We start the ..... email with "Dear Sir".  
a) formal                      b) informal                      c) friendly                      d) officially
- 66.My father bought the latest..... of Toyota. It is a full option car.  
a) middle                      b) mark                      c) model                      d) style
- 67.We are proud of Mohammed Salah for ..... achievements in the Champions League.  
a) carrying                      b) scoring                      c) doing                      d) making



68. My brother is going to be a lawyer when he graduates, he's studying..... at university.  
a) law                      b) low                      c) lawful                      d) lower
69. The government ..... a lot of charitable organisations financially.  
a- supports                      b) opposes                      c) allows                      d) help
- 70- Heindi is an excellent actor. He ..... on the stage perfectly.  
a- performs                      b) operates                      c) pretends                      d) makes
71. All the passengers and crew on the plane were killed, ..... the pilot.  
a. included                      b. includes                      c. include                      d. including
72. The manager is busy ..... some job applicants.  
a. operating                      b. competing                      c. interviewing                      d. speaking
73. .... are things that people do every day, month, year, etc regularly.  
a. Habits                      b. Cultures                      c. Civilizations                      d. Customs
74. Hany's parents give him everything he wants; they ..... him.  
a) spill                      b) split                      c) spell                      d) spoil
75. My father said that his English teacher was very..... . My father couldn't talk in his lessons!  
a serious                      b strict                      c fatherly                      d a & b
76. There was a long..... in front of the cinema to buy tickets of the film.  
a. queue                      b. row                      c. lane                      d. raw
77. Nowadays almost everyone ..... a computer; they are available everywhere.  
a. owes                      b. moans                      c. means                      d. owns
78. The minister was dishonest, so the president ..... him.  
a) donated                      b) imprisoned                      c) honored                      d) persuaded
79. The book is scheduled for ..... next month.  
a. donation                      b. community                      c. publication                      d. instruction
- 80- A youth was seriously injured in a- an ..... last night.  
a. event                      b. incident                      c. criminal                      d. walking
81. The incident ..... as it was dark and raining heavily.  
a. played                      b. placed                      c. occurred                      d. positioned
82. There are a lot of passengers standing in a ..... waiting the bus.  
a. row                      b. raw                      c. queue                      d. line
83. The husband that helps his wife is a real .....  
a. treasure                      b. pressure                      c. measure                      d. health
84. The lift broke down on the 10<sup>th</sup> floor and a lot of people were ..... inside it.  
a. stick                      b. stuck                      c. stung                      d. taught
85. The treasures of the ancient Egyptians are .....  
a. worthless                      b. priceless                      c. helpless                      d. emotional
86. There was nobody in the house ..... Ali.  
a. rather than                      b. other than                      c. otherwise                      d. others
87. Winning the gold medal at the Olympics was the ..... of the athlete's career .  
a. highlight                      b. importance                      c. nervousness                      d. achieved
88. The prices of goods vary according to supply and.....  
a. defend                      b. mend                      c. mind                      d. demand
89. Despite their different ....., they get on with each other.  
a. characters                      b. quantities                      c. personification                      d. personalities
90. Nabila ..... her grandchildren. She always gives them lots of food and presents!  
a annoys                      b hates                      c spills                      d spoils

# Grammar

## THE PAST SIMPLE TENSE

## الماضي البسيط

1- يعبر الماضي البسيط عن حدث انتهى في الماضي في وقت محدد

- She **visited** London in 2010.
- I **was** in Alexandria a month ago.
- At the age of seven, my parents **took** me to Jordan.

2- يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدثين متتابعين في الماضي .

- When he **had** an idea, he **wrote** a short story.
- I **went** to the park and **met** my friends.

3- يعبر عن عادة في الماضي و غير مستمرة الآن.

- I **played** tennis every day **when** I **was** younger.
- I **always ate** breakfast before I **went** to school.
- She **cooked** lunch **every day last week**.

4- يعبر عن الحقائق الماضية وعن الأفعال المنتهية (الموتى) وعن الحدث الثانى :

- Shakspeare wrote Hamlet
- Colombus discovered America.

- ملحوظة هامة : نستخدم الماضي البسيط وليس الماضي المستمر إذا كان الفعل يعبر عن حالة. ( be )

- I **saw** Ali **while** he **was** at the sports club.

(NOT: was being)

5- يعبر عن سرد الاحداث فى الماضي مع : **first, then, next, at last, finally, ....**

- Ali **found** a bag ,then he **went** to the police station.

6- يستخدم لوصف حدث استمر لفترة في الماضي ولكنه غير موجود الآن

- She **lived** in Zagazig **for seven years**.
- They **were** in London from Monday to Thursday of last week.
- Between 1846 and 1851 , millions of people travelled to the USA.

7- في الحالة الثانية من (If) الشرطية.

- **If** he **helped** us, we **would win**.

8- يستخدم مع التعبيرات الآتية ليعبر عن أحداث مستبعدة أو مستحيلة الحدوث في المضارع أو المستقبل.

1- I **wish** + فاعل + ماضي بسيط

- I **wish** mum **wasn't ill**.

- I **wish** the Egyptian team **played well today**.

2- It's **time** + فاعل + ماضي بسيط

- It's **time** he **paid the bill**.

- It **is time** father **arrived now**.

2- I 'd **rather** + فاعل + ماضي بسيط

- I **would rather** she **helped him**.

- I'd **rather** Ali **didn't come tonight**.

يستخدم الماضي البسيط مع الكلمات الآتية:

**yesterday - ago - last... - in the past - once / once upon a time - one day - in 2007 - the other day** مؤخرا **from + سنة + to + سنة** **When I was..... - How long ago = When - for**

- I **last ate** fish **when** I **was** in Alex.

## Quickly – Quickly- Quickly Test yourself

Choose the correct answers:

1. Last week, I.....some flowers in my garden.

- a. planted
- b. was planting
- c. had planted
- d. plan

2. I wish my friends .....with me now.

- a. are
- b. were
- c. had been
- d. have been

3. I wish my friends .....with me yesterday.

- a. are
- b. were
- c. had been
- d. have been

4. ....at school yesterday ?

- a. Did you
- b. Were you
- c. Have you been
- d. Will you be

5. A week....., I went to Cairo.

- a. last
- b. in the past
- c. ago
- d. once

6. Once I .....Ahmed, I gave him his present.

- a. meet
- b. have met
- c. met
- d. meet

7. Ali travelled to Sharm.....

- a. the next day
- b. everyday
- c. now
- d. the other day

8.....Nada went to Zagazig was in June.

a. Last time                      b. The last time                      c. Last                      d. Other day

9. He studied hard.....he answered the homework.

a. when                      b. while                      c. then                      d. but

10. It.....time he slept now.

a. was                      b. has been                      c. is                      d. will be

~~~~~

used to + inf. اعتاد أن

يستخدم للتعبير عن التناقض بين العادات أو المواقف في الماضي والحاضر :

- I **used to eat** breakfast before I **went** to school. (الان لم يعد يأكل الافطار قبل الذهاب للمدرسه)

- He **used to swim** every day. Now he **doesn't** (swim).

- He **used to be** late all the time. Now, he **isn't** (late).

didn't use to + مصدر

وفي حالة النفي نستخدم:

- I **didn't use to** play computer games, but now I do.

(الان يلعب هذه الالعاب)

- I **never used to** play computer games, but now I do

- I **used not to play** (**used to not play**) computer games, but now I do

did + فاعل + use to + مصدر

وفي حالة السؤال نستخدم:

- Did you use to walk to school?

- Where did you use to live?

يستخدم **no longer** بدلا من **used to** ويأتي بعدها الفعل في المضارع البسيط:

- He **used to smoke**. = He **no longer smokes**. = He **doesn't smoke any longer / any more**.

يستخدم **any more / any longer** بدلا من **used to** مع نفي الفعل في المضارع البسيط وتأتي في نهاية الجملة:

- He **used to smoke**. = He **doesn't smoke any more**.

used to = It was my habit to / I was in / got the habit of / had the habit of.....

- كما يمكن التعبير عن عادة في الماضي باستخدام (was / were used to v.ing).

- I **was used to eating** breakfast before I **went** to school.

Note:

إذا كانت بمعنى يستخدم يأتي بعدها المصدر **is used to +**

- The pen **is used to** write with

- The pan **is used to** cook food.

- The thermometer **is used to measure** (**for measuring**) temperature

- The tractor **is used to plough** (**for ploughing**) the field .

في حالة المضارع

(be / get / become) + (used to / accustomed to) + (v + ing)

- I'm **used to playing** football.

- He **is used coming** on time .

- He **is accustomed to drinking** black coffee.

- She **becomes used to eating** vegetables.

Quickly – Quickly- Quickly Test yourself

Choose the correct answers:

1- When I was a little child, I watch cartoons.

a. used to b. used c. didn't use to d. a & b

2- When I was a little child, I watch cartoons. I hated them.

a. used to b. never use c. didn't use to d. a & b

3. Nada used to wear glasses but now she

a) does b) doesn't c) isn't d) didn't

4. He used to be thin, but now he.....

a) isn't b) doesn't c) wasn't d) didn't

5- When I was younger, Idoing the housework on my own.

a. would b. used to c. used for d. was used to

~~~~~

### would + inf. اعتاد أن

## نستخدم ( المصدر + used to / المصدر + would ) للحديث عن أحداث متكررة في الماضي

- A lot of people would / used to live in the desert.
- When I was young , I **always used to help** my mother.
- When Ali was nine , he **would always help** his mother.
- When she was young , she ( **would** ) ( **used to** ) cry easily .
- My mother **used to / would buy** me nice clothes when I was young.

### الاختلاف بين ( used to - would )

١- نستخدم ( used to ) ولا نستخدم ( would ) لوصف حالة الماضية أي مع الأفعال التقريرية + ( افعال الحواس والشعور ..... مثل:

.be/ have/ love / hate /enjoy / want / wish /weigh / hear / cost /deserve / understand / feel)

I **used to be** lazy . -We **used to have** a car . -He **used to enjoy** travelling. -They **used to own** a car.

### ٢- نستخدم ( used to ) ولا نستخدم ( would ) في النفي (انظر النقطة 5) والاستفهام

. Did you use to play football ? I didn't use to get up early on Saturdays

٣- نستخدم ( used to ) ولا نستخدم ( would ) مع أحداث استمرت في الماضي لفترة من الوقت ولم تعد تحدث

I **used to live** in Cairo, but I moved to Alexandria last year ( don't use would here)

٤- أن **would** لا يمكن استخدامها للتعبير عن الحالة إلا إذا كان الزمن محدد في الماضي ومذكور في أول الجملة. على عكس **used to** تستخدم في بداية الجملة أو منتصفها دون أي تغيير بالمعنى

- I **used to** play football every weekend **when I was 11 years**.
- **When I was a child**, I **would play football** every weekend.
- **When I was little**, I **would** get up and watch a lot of TV.

### ٥- يمكن استخدام **would** في وجود ظرف من ظروف التكرار مثل ( **wouldn't often or wouldn't always** )

-When we **were** in Sharm, we **wouldn't swim** in the sea **very often**

## Quickly – Quickly- Quickly Test yourself

### Choose the correct answers:

1. We ..... have a car.  
a. would                      b. used to                      c. is used to                      d. wouldn't
2. My uncle.....to work when he was young, but nowadays he uses his car.  
a. would always walk      b. didn't use to walk      c. is used to walking      d. always walks
3. When we were children, we..... live abroad.  
a. would                      b. used to                      c. were used to                      d. a & b
4. I ..... every weekend when I was 11 years.  
a. would swim                      b. used to swim                      c. should swim                      d. a & b
- 5- When I was a child, I ..... every weekend.  
a. would swim                      b. used to swim                      c. should swim                      d. a & b

~~~~~

THE PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE الماضي المستمر

Form

was / were + V. ing.....

- Ali **was watching** a film.

- They **were cooking** lunch.

١- يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا لفترة أو في وقت محدد في الماضي

- **Between six and half past six this morning**, I **was having** breakfast.

- Tarek **was eating** dinner **at noon yesterday**.

- I **was travelling** to Cairo **at eight o'clock (yesterday)** this morning.

المجهول

was / were + being +p.p

Our house **was being cleaned** in the morning.

يستخدم الماضي المستمر مع الكلمات الآتية :

While بينما - **as** بينما - **just as** في اللحظة التي - **when** عندما - **all day yesterday = the whole day**
yesterday morning / at noon - طوال الوقت **all the time** - طوال الأمس **yesterday**

٢-- يستخدم الماضي المستمر مع كلمات مثل (While / when / As / Just as) للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في الماضي قطعه حدث آخر في الماضي البسيط

1- While / As / When / Just as (فاعل) ماضي مستمر , ماضي بسيط (الحدثان تقاطعا)

-While I was sleeping, a thief entered the house.

= As (Just as) I was sleeping, a thief entered the house.

- يستخدم الماضي المستمر مع While / when / As / Just as للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس الوقت في الماضي

2- (While / As / When / Just as) ماضي مستمر ... , ... ماضي مستمر (الحدثان لم يتقاطعا)

-(While / As / Just as) my mother was making the dinner, I was looking after my sister.

- While I was studying, my father was reading a paper.

- While she was walking in the street, she met one of her old friends.

- إذا لم يأتي بعد while فاعل يأتي بعدها (v.ing) بشرط ان يكون فاعل الجملتان واحد او اختلف الفاعلين فلا يجوز اضافته ing

- While playing , I fell down.

-While I was waiting (waiting) for the bus , a car hit a boy.

Choose

- While (playing – he was playing) football, he scored a goal.

- While (playing – he was playing) football, Ali was studying English.

- يمكن استخدام during بدلا من while و يأتي بعدها noun

- While he was playing the game, he got hurt.

- During the game, he got hurt. = He got hurt during the game.

- During the party, I met an old friend.

- During my lunchtime, the phone rang.

Quickly – Quickly- Quickly Test yourself

Choose the correct answers:

1. From 10 to half past eleven yesterday, we a football match

a. watch b. watched b.were watching d. were being watched

2- From 9 to ha yesterday, a football match

a. watch b. watched b.was watching d. was being watched

3. From 10 to 12 yesterday, we a football match

a. watch b. watched b.were watching d. were being watched

4. While Ihome, I saw some of my friends.

a. walking b. was walking c. had walked d. walk

5.....he was a student, he was writing short stories.

a. After b. As soon as c.While d. On

-When ماضي بسيط , ماضي مستمر (فاعل)

-When ماضي مستمر , ماضي بسيط (فاعل)

يمكن أن يأتي بعد when ماضي بسيط ثم ماضي مستمر أو العكس حسب المعنى :

- I was studying English when the lights went out.

- The lights went out when I was studying English.

- When I was having a shower , the phone rang

يمكن أن يكون الحدثين مع when في الماضي البسيط :

- يمكن أن يكون الحدثين مع when في الماضي البسيط إذا كانا متتابعين و لم يقطع احدهما الآخر

When he arrived , he found the door locked.

- يمكن استخدام On بدلا من when و يأتي بعدها V. ing أو اسم

- On arriving / his arrival, he **found** the door locked.

الفعل بعد **and** يأخذ نفس شكل الفعل الذي يسبقها:

• He **was writing** a letter **and listening** to some music.

□ لاحظ عدم استخدام **to be** في الماضي المستمر:

• **While / When** I **was** at school, I **worked** to a plan.

~~~~~

يمكن أن يأتي بعد **because** ماضي مستمر و الفعل الآخر ماضي بسيط :

- Magdy **couldn't hear** the phone **because he was having** a shower.

~~~~~  
بحر عادة لا نستخدم الماضي المستمر مع الأفعال التي تصف حالة، شعور، حاسة، رأي، فهم، ادراك ، ملكية ولكن نستخدم معها ماضي بسيط لأنها تعبر عن حالة ثابتة ودائمة :

- لاحظ عدم استخدام الأفعال الدالة على الحالة في الماضي المستمر.

- She (**seemed – was seeming**) ill when I **visited** her.

- While I **was** at home, someone **knocked** on the door. (NOT: **was being**)

لاحظ : لا يستخدم **V.To.Be** في الاستمرار ولكن نكتفي بـ **was / were** فقط .

أفعال الحواس قد تأتي في الاستمرار اذا جاءت بمعنى مؤقت و متغير مثل:

- Where are you? - **I'm tasting** the food.

- Why **are you smelling** the food?

~~~~~  
- هي مجموعة من الكلمات تبدأ بـ **(v.ing)** و تستخدم بدلا من جملة كاملة مبنية للمعلوم.

- **As Sara was walking** to town yesterday, she saw two of her friends.

- **Walking to town** yesterday, Sara saw two of her school friends.

- **As Rami was running** down the road, he fell over and hurt his back.

- **Running down the road** , Rami fell over and hurt his back.

### **Quickly – Quickly- Quickly Test yourself**

**Choose the correct answers:**

1. When I was in Sharm El-Sheikh, I .....a lot.

a. have sunbathed      b. was sunbathing      c. would sunbathe      d. sunbathed

2- I never ..... him late at night when he was on holiday.

a. phoned      b.phoning      c.phones      d.phone

3- When ..... my homework, I fell asleep.

a. did      b.doing      c. was doing      d. was being done

4- ..... I was staying in Zagazig, I made a lot of friends.

a. While      b. When      c. During      d. a & b

5- I was staying in Zagazig ..... I made a lot of friends.

a. While      b. When      c. During      d. a & b

### **Mr El Sebaei Grammar Exercises**      تمارين الوحدة الأولى      **Mr El Sebaei**

ثانيا الاسئلة الموضوعية التالية ( كل سؤال بدرجه )

1- I .....the manager in the office a few days ago.

a.have seen      b. saw      c. would see      d. was seen

2. The manager.....in the office a few days ago.

a.have seen      b. saw      c. would see      d. was seen

3 -What games did you ..... to play with your friends?

a. using      b. used      c. are used      d. use

4.I ..... the plates. My sister did them.

a. washed      b. was washed      c. didn't wash      d. wasn't washed

5. The plates ..... by me. Mum did that.

a. washed      b. were washed      c. didn't wash      d. weren't washed

6. The last time she called me ..... five.

a.at      b. in      c. was at      d. was

7- I ..... to the museum in 2015.



- a. had gone                                      b. have gone                                      c. went                                      d. go
- 8- My mother made me a cake. It ..... of lemons.  
a. was tasting                                      b. tasted                                      c. would taste                                      d. had tasted
9. It's time we ..... our lessons. ( ث ع ٢٢ - دور اول )  
a. study                                      b. will study                                      c. studying                                      d. studied
10. I wish I ..... the meeting yesterday. ( ث ع ٢٢ - دور ثان )  
a. had attended                                      b. have attended                                      c. attend                                      d. attended
- 11- At the age of seven, my parents ..... me to Sharm to spend the summer holiday.  
a. are taking                                      b. took                                      c. take                                      d. was taken
- 12- At the age of seven, I ..... to Sharm to spend the summer holiday.  
a. are taking                                      b. took                                      c. take                                      d. was taken
13. I couldn't open the door as I ..... a shower.  
a) had had                                      b) was having                                      c) had                                      d) has had
- 14- Nada ..... the house two hours ago.  
a. cleaned                                      b. cleans                                      c. has cleaned                                      d. was cleaning
- 15 ..... you use to play with your friends?  
a. Are                                      b. Were                                      c. Did                                      d. Does
- 16 ..... you happy to play with your friends?  
a. Are                                      b. Were                                      c. Did                                      d. Does
- 17 -He ..... a prize for a drawing of an animal.  
a. gave                                      b. was given                                      c. has given                                      d. had given
- 18- I ..... the vegetables. My mother did them.  
a. bought                                      b. was bought                                      c. didn't buy                                      d. wasn't bought
- 19- ..... the vegetables before cooking lunch ?  
a. You washed                                      b. Did you wash                                      c. You were washed                                      d. Were you washed
- 20- A : What ..... to paint the house ? B : I bought some wonderful paints.  
a. you did                                      b. did you do                                      c. you were done                                      d. were done
21. Fortunately , yesterday's news ..... as bad as we expected.  
a. isn't                                      b. weren't                                      c. wasn't                                      d. didn't
- 22- My father always ..... to school when he was young.  
a. walk                                      b. walked                                      c. walks                                      d. was walking
- 23- A : What ..... to improve you skills ? B : I did a course In English.  
a. you did                                      b. did you                                      c. you were done                                      d. was done
- 25- I once used to ..... the newspaper every day. Now I don't have the time.  
a) reading                                      b) read                                      c) was reading                                      d) had read
- 26- My uncle lived in Aswan three years .....  
a. for                                      b. since                                      c. ago                                      d. yet
- 27 - Ola used ..... well at school.  
a. study                                      b. to study                                      c. to studying                                      d. studying
- 28- Ola got used ..... well at school.  
a. study                                      b. to study                                      c. to studying                                      d. studying
- 29- Ola ..... studying well at school. She is very clever  
a. is used to                                      b. used to                                      c. used for                                      d. was used for
- 30- Grass is used ..... animals.  
a. for feeding                                      b. to feeding                                      c. to feed                                      d. a & c
- 31- I ..... for five hours every day last week.  
a. have worked                                      b. had worked                                      c. worked                                      d. was working
- 32- When I was on holiday, I always ..... on the beach to see the sea.  
a. sit                                      b. sat                                      c. was sitting                                      d. have sat
- 33- He ..... the letter and sent it.  
a. had written                                      b. wrote                                      c. writes                                      d. was writing
- 34- He used to be a driver but nowadays he .....  
a. doesn't                                      b. wasn't                                      c. isn't                                      d. didn't
35. I ..... a noise while I was studying last night.

- a) hearing                      b) heard                      c) was hearing                      d) heard
36. When she saw the fire coming out of the factory, she .....
- a) was screaming                      b) had screamed                      c) screamed                      d) will scream
- 37- When she .....seven, she wrote a poem which won a prize.
- a. is                      b. was                      c. was being                      d. has been
38. He .....need much sleep, but he does now.
- a. didn't use to                      b. isn't used to                      c. used to                      d. uses to
39. At six o'clock yesterday evening, I .....TV.
- a. was watching                      b. am watching                      c. have been watching                      d. watch
- 40- What ..... when I called you? - You sounded very busy.
- a) did you do                      b) do you do                      c) had you done                      d) were you doing
- 41- While she ..... her homework, my sister was listening to music.
- a) did                      b) was doing                      c) is doing                      d) would do
- 42- Yesterday evening, we .....for our English test when all the lights went out.
- a) had revised                      b) were revising                      c) revised                      d) revising
- 43- What ..... at eight o'clock yesterday evening?
- a) were you doing                      b) did you do                      c) you were doing                      d) do you do
- 44- Someone phoned me while I ..... the dinner
- a. cook                      b. was cooked                      c. was cooking                      d. am cooking
- 45- While my car ....., I went shopping.
- a. was mending                      b. was being mended                      c. had mended                      d. mended
- 46- This car ..... to me three years ago.
- a) was belonging                      b) belongs                      c) has belonged                      d) belonged
- 47- While .....football, he fell down.
- a. played                      b. he was playing                      c. was playing                      d. a&b
- 48- .....I was out shopping, I saw three of my friends
- a) While                      b) Although                      c) Because                      d) On
49. While I ..... at home, a man knocked on the door and asked for help.
- a) was being                      b) had been                      c) was                      d) am being
- 50- While I .....to school today, I saw an old friend.
- a. had walked                      b. have walked                      c. was walking                      d. am walking

ثانياً الاسئلة الموضوعية التالية ( كل سؤال بدرجتان )

- A.** 1. Amany phoned me while the dinner ..... .
- a) was cooking                      b) cooked                      c) cooks                      d) was being cooked
2. When I lived in London, I ..... through the park every day.
- a) walk                      b) had walked                      c) walked                      d) was walking
- 3- I no longer play tennis as I .....
- a am used                      b am used to                      c used to                      d used
- 4- While finishing one story, he ..... of another one
- a) thinks                      b) is thinking                      c) was thinking                      d) has thought
- 
- B.** 1. I'd rather you ..... that car. It is a bargain.
- a. buy                      b. had bought                      c bought                      d. to buy
2. I'd rather you ..... that car last year. It was a bargain.
- a. buy                      b. had bought                      c bought                      d. to buy
3. My father .....home just now.
- a. is coming                      c. came                      c. was coming                      d. will come
- 4- The room .....when the earthquake happened.
- a. was cleaning                      b. was being cleaned                      c. would clean                      d. had cleaned
- 

- C :** 1. The writer ..... his first story when he ..... at university.
- a. wrote- is                      b. wrote- was                      c. was writing- was                      d. writes- had been
2. My friend .....to Italy the other day.
- a) was travelling                      b) travelled                      c) had travelled                      d) used to travel

- 3-While my mother was doing the washing up, my baby sister ..... after.  
a) was looking      b) has been looked      c) was being looked      d) had looked
4. Crossing the street , he .....on the ice and broke his arm.  
a) was slipping      b) slipped      c) had slipped      d) was slipped

- D.** 1. Someone next door..... heavy metal music all night long. I didn't get a wink of sleep.  
a. was playing      b. has played      c. had been played      b. has been playing
2. Although the police suspected him, he was able to prove that he..... when the crime was committed.  
a. was working      b. worked      c. had worked      d. had been working
- 3-My dad .....on business trips to China four times last year.  
a. was going      b.had gone      c.went      d.used to go
- 4- During..... to school, I saw some students quarrelling fiercely.  
a) my walk      b) was walking      c) walks      d) walking

- E.** 1 - The washing machine .....while I ..... the newspaper.  
a.delivered-read      b. delivers-had read      c. was delivered-was reading      d. had delivered-is reading
- 2-Yesterday, we were discussing the new project and.....a good time.  
a. have      b.had      c.having      d.being having
- 3- I .....the hot weather of the Eastern Desert.  
a. used to      b. didn't use to      c. wasn't used to      d. was used
- 4-Our school has more equipment than they.....  
a. used to      b. used to be      c.was used to      d.uses

PRESENT PERFECT      المضارع التام

**Form:**      **have / has + P.P.** .....

- I **have tidied** my bedroom.      - Ali **has played** tennis for an hour.  
1- يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث تم في الماضي وأثره مازال موجود في الحاضر.
- Ahmed **has hurt** his leg, so **he can't play football today**.      (He can't walk easily)
- He **has broken** his leg. He is crying.      (The kitchen is clean now)
- She **has cleaned** the kitchen.      (never) و (ever) مع تحديد وقت حدوثها عادة مع
- 2- يستخدم المضارع التام للسؤال عن الخبرات السابقة دون تحديد وقت حدوثها عادة مع (never) و (ever)
- I **have never eaten** Chinese food.      - **Have you ever ridden** a camel?
- **Have you ever met** anyone famous?
- I **have never flown** on a plane. **Have you ever tried** snorkelling?
- 3- يعبر عن حدث تم في الماضي دون تحديد وقت حدوثه. وعند التحديد نستخدم ماضي بسيط :
- She **has polished** her shoes.      - He **has fed** the sheep.
- Ahmed **has been** to many countries, but he **hasn't visited** England yet.  
لاحظ الاختلاف الثانيه تم تحديد الزمن لذلك استخدمنا ماضي بسيط
- She **has polished** her shoes.      - She **polished** her shoes **yesterday**.  
4- يدل المضارع التام على حدث متكرر ( عدد ما تم انجازه ) ( أي أن ذلك الحدث قابل للحدوث مرة أخرى ) :
- Ronaldo has scored **a hundred goals**.      (He can score more.)
- She has been to the cinema **twice this week**.      (and the week isn't over yet.)
- I have been to France **three times**.  
- لكن إذا استخدمنا الماضي البسيط مع حدث متكرر فمعنى ذلك أن الحدث توقف :
- He wrote 46 novels.      (He stopped writing. / he died)
- 5- يستخدم إذا انتهت الجملة بكلمة **before** :
- I'm sure I **haven't seen** this man **before**.

### Quickly – Quickly- Quickly Test yourself

1. I ..... three emails this morning.  
a. send      b. had sent      c. was sent      d. have sent
- 2- Oh! I ..... my tablet. What can I do ?  
a. lost      b. had lost      c. was lost      d. have lost
- 3- My car ..... down, how can I solve this problem?  
a. broke down      b. has broken      c had broken      d. has been breaking

4-The people.....the injured to the near hospitals.

- a. have been taken                      b. have taken                      c. took                      d. have been taking

- يستخدم المضارع التام مع الكلمات الآتية:

**Just/ already / yet / so far** الآن / **ever / never / lately / recently**  
**/ since / for / so far / up till now**

ملاحظات

- لاحظ أن **ever / never / just / already** تأتي بين **have / has** والتصريف الثالث PP.

- I **have just written** the letter.                      - He **has already eaten** his lunch.

♦ يمكن أن تأتي **already** في نهاية الجملة:

- Twenty million people **have seen** the film **already**.

- ♦ نستخدم **already** في الأسئلة.

- **Have you already written** to John?

الاختلاف بين (**already - just**) في الجملة:

- I **have just finished** the homework. • = I finished the homework **a moment ago**.

- I've **already done** the job.                      • = I did the job two hours ago.

**Choose:** The plane has ( **already - just** ) flown . I can see it in the sky.

- يمكن استخدام (**ever**) في السؤال وفي الإثبات في الجمل التي تتضمن صفة درجة ثلاثة أو رقم ترتيبى

- Have you ( **ever - never** ) seen a real lion ?

- This is **the strangest match** I **have ever watched**.

- This is **the most interesting film** I've **ever** watched.

لاحظ استخدام **ever** في السؤال و **never** في الإجابة :

- **Have you ever travelled** by plane?                      • No, I have **never** travelled by plane.

تستخدم **such** بترق أيضا قبل صفه المقارنه وقبل

- I have **never** watched a **more interesting** film **than** this one.

- I have **never** met a taller boy **than** Ali.

- I have **never** watched **such an interesting** film **like** this one.

### Quickly – Quickly- Quickly Test yourself

1- I ..... a real lion. I watch it only on TV.

- a. have never seen                      b. didn't see                      c. have ever seen                      d. already seen

2- Nada is ..... student I have ever seen.

- a. an intelligent                      b. intelligent                      c. more intelligent                      d. the most intelligent

3- The plane .....

- a. has just flown                      b. had just flown                      c. last flew                      d. has never fly

4- I have ..... seen a clever intelligent like Nada.

- a. just                      b. ever                      c. never                      d. ago

5. I have met the manager .....

- a. yet                      b. ever                      c. ago                      d. already

- تستخدم **yet** في نهاية الأسئلة لأن الحدث لم يتم و الجمل المنفية

- They **haven't eaten lunch yet**.

- **Has he arrived yet?**

وإذا تم الحدث نستخدم **already** وليس **yet** في نهاية السؤال

- Have you finished the test ( **yet - already** )? - You are quick.

- Have you finished the test ( **yet - already** )? - You should hurry.

- He came late, **yet** he attended the meeting.

ملحوظه **yet** بمعنى لكن او مع ذلك

- Has Salah scored goals **lately / recently**?

- تستخدم كل من (**recently / lately**) بنفس الطريقة في السؤال

في النفي (**lately**) في الإثبات و (**recently**) - يفضل استخدام

- She **has moved** to a new house **recently**. - He **hasn't phoned** me **lately**.

- نستخدم (**has / have been to**) بمعنى ذهب لمكان وعاد أما (**has / have gone to**) ذهب لمكان وما زال هناك (لم يعد)

- My sister **has gone** to school.

(She is still at school now.)

- My sister **has been to** the cinema.

(She isn't there now).

### Quickly – Quickly- Quickly Test yourself

1- My uncle ..... to England lately.

a. is                      b. will be                      c. has been                      d. is being

2- A : Have you ever been to Aswan ? B : Not.....

a. ever                      b.already                      c. never                      d. yet

3- He ..... to the bank to correct his visa number. He will be back soon.

a. has been                      b. has gone                      c. had been                      d. was going

4- She ..... shopping. The vegetables are in the kitchen.

a. has gone                      b. had gone                      c. has been                      d. had been

5. Mu Salah has scored a goal.....? – Amazing.

a. ever                      b.already                      c. never                      d. yet

~~~~~

- يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث بدأ في الماضي و مازال مستمرا حتى الآن مع (since) و (for)

- Mona **has studied** English **for** ten years. - We **have been** at this school **since** 2012.

- I **have lived** in Tanta **since** 1984 (= and I still do.)

- Susan **hasn't finished** her homework **yet**. (= and she is still doing it.)

- يأتي بعد **since** نقطة زمنية تحدد بداية الحدث أما **for** يأتي بعدها مدة هذا الحدث.

Since (+ بداية المدة)	For + مدة كاملة
Last (week- month – year – Monday - night 1995 / 5 o'clock /Sunday The /this morning –yesterday Lunch time – spring – then His arrival/ childhood/death- Marriage/ birthday I /He/She <u>was</u> / the age of..... Since the last + اسم since the last visit-the last holiday	a while –a moment-a second-a minute- an hour -a day- a night- a week – a month – a season- a year (five days /ten years) a long time / ages) / a decade / / ever –more than-some time مدة زمنية + the last/past the last week/month. For وتأتي مع كل ما ينتهي ب s و a/an

We **have owned** this house **since** 1988 - He **has known** the same friends **for** 3 years.

- كما يأتي بعد **since** أيضا اسم يدل علي وقت معلوم مثل

- **lunch / lunchtime / his childhood / her wedding / their arrival.....**

- She **has stayed** her since **her marriage**. - He **has known** the same friends **since his childhood**.

- الجملة التي تأتي بعد **since** تكون زمن الماضي بسيط -
- I **haven't seen** him **since** he **left** for Cairo

- إذا كان التحويل من (for) إلي (since) صعب (أي المدة لا يمكن تحويلها إلي نقطة زمنية) نستخدم التركيبة التالية

It (is – has been) مدة **since** ماضي بسيط

- He **hasn't travelled** **for ages**. (since)

- **It is ages since he travelled**.

He **hasn't studied** **for a long time**. (since)

- **It is a long time since he studied**.

- كما يستخدم المضارع التام إذا وجدنا الجملة ما يلي

- It's/This is the first (second...) time...

- It's the first time I have been to this place.

- It's (This) is the only...

- This is the only play I have seen.

- In the last few years / months.....

- Egypt **has changed** a lot **in the last few years**.

- In recent years

- It **has not rained** in the Western Desert **in recent years**.

- Over the ages / over the years.... - The earth **has become** more crowded **over the ages**.

Note the following:

1. (المضارع التام) **for +** مدة كاملة (جدول الكلمات علي اليمين)

- I haven't met Ali for three years.

2. (المضارع التام) **since +** بداية المدة (جدول الكلمات علي الشمال)

- I haven't met Ali since last week.

3. (المضارع التام) **since +** ماضي بسيط

- I haven't met Ali since I was at school.

4. **since +** مضارع تام , بداية المدة (جدول الكلمات علي الشمال)

- Since last week , I haven't met my friends.

5. (المضارع التام) **since +** مضارع تام

- I haven't met Ali since I have lived in this town. (I'm still living in this town).

6. It's **since +** ماضي بسيط مدة كاملة (جدول الكلمات علي اليمين)

- It's two hours since I ate lunch.

7. ماضي بسيط **ago.** مدة كاملة (جدول الكلمات علي اليمين)

- I last ate koshari a month ago.

Quickly – Quickly- Quickly Test yourself

1- I haven't met my cousin ages.

a. ago b. since c. for d. a & c

2- I haven't met my cousin the age of nine. Now he is a teenager.

a. ago b. since c. for d. a & c

3- I haven't met my cousins they travelled to Italy.

a. ago b. since c. for d. a & c

4- I haven't heard from my close friend last week.

a. ago b. since c. for d. a & c

5- I have watched football matches as long as I can remember.

a. ago b. since c. for d. a & c

Have / Has been +V- ing

المضارع التام المستمر

يعبر عن:

١- حدث مستمر حتي الوقت الحاضر (حدث باستمرار و ما زال مستمراً و سيستمر) :

• **I've been studying all day.**

- It **has been raining** for three hours now.

٢- حدث تم بانتظام بدأ في الماضي واستمر حتي الآن :

- **I've been running** a lot recently.

- **I've been learning** English **for the last few months.**

- **It has been raining** heavily **for the past three days.**

- أحيانا يستخدم المضارع التام المستمر مع How long :

- How long **have you been smoking?**

- ولكن لاحظ استخدام How long ago بمعنى When في الماضي البسيط:

- How long **ago did you smoke?**

٣- تفسير لنتيجة في الحاضر (نشاط حدث في الماضي و أثره الجسماني في الحاضر) :

• **I've been running.** That's why **I'm so tired.**

- I'm sorry about this mess. **I've been painting** my room.

❖ يستخدم المضارع التام المستمر غالباً مع كلمات تدل علي الاستمرار في الجملة:

All day / all week/ all afternoon/ all evening / for...now/for..not yet/ since / lately / recently / over the last few months

الكلمات الدالة

for **since**

for-----now **since -----still**

for -----still **all + مدة حاضرة (day-week -....)**

so far -----now **hasn't stopped – finished yet** فاعل

- She **has been doing** the housework **since 7.30 and she hasn't finished yet.**

- He **(study – studied – has been studying – has studied)** English **for 2 years now.**

❖ يستخدم هذا الزمن غالباً مع الأفعال التي تستغرق وقتاً طويلاً إلي حد ما مثل :

teach / learn / rain / cook / sleep / play / run / study / write / read / stay

1- It **has been raining** for three hours now.

- 2- He **has been working** there **ever since** he passed his exams.
 3- He **has been working** there **for a long time** / for 3 years.

ولكن

مضارع تام فقط

- عندما يشير معني الجملة إلى اكتمال الحدث نستخدم المضارع التام
 - I **have written** the report. **Here it is**
 - My uncle **has joined** the army. **1- عندما لا يستغرق الفعل وقتاً طويلاً**
 • Mona **has sent** me **three e-mails**. **2- عندما نذكر عدد المرات التي قمنا فيها بالحدث**
 3- في حالة وجود أفعال الحواس و الشعور والادراك لا تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة:
 agree / يحب / like / يعرف / know / يكره / hate / يشعر / feel / يعتقد / believe / يوافق / agree / يفهم / understand / يتمنى / wish / يعتقد / think / prefer / يعني / mean / يحب / love
 - I **have known** him **for ten years now**. (NOT: have been knowing)
 - I **have owned** this washing machine **for 5 years now**. (NOT: have been owning)
 - He **has been** in the army **for 5 years now**. (NOT: has been being)

- 4- مع الأفعال التي لا تستغرق وقتاً في الحدث- (أفعال لحظية الحدث)
 مثل :- greet/ start / begin / stop/ open / close / break down/ score
 - My friend is happy because he **has joined** the army. (NOT: has been joining)
 - I **have started** this lesson since Sami arrived. (NOT: has been starting)
 - I **have opened** the door several times for an hour now.

المضارع التام المستمر

- عندما يشير معني الجملة إلى استمرار الحدث حتى الآن نستخدم المضارع التام المستمر
 - Mother **has been cooking** since noon. - **She hasn't finished yet**.
 - لاحظ المثال في المرفق الآتي
 Boss : Welcome to our company, Mona. What's your work experience?
 Mona : I **have worked** for two years at the marketing company down the street from here.
 (This means that Mona does not work marketing company down the street any more.)
 Mona : I **have been working** at a marketing company down the street from here for two years.
 (This means that Mona still works at the marketing company down the street.)

- هناك أيضا فارق بين المضارع التام المستمر و المضارع المستمر
 * يؤكد المضارع المستمر علي استمرار الحدث في لحظة الكلام فقط
 - I cannot go out with you as I **am doing** my homework.
 * يؤكد المضارع التام المستمر علي استمرار الحدث منذ فترة في الماضي و حتى الآن
 - I cannot go out with you as I **have been doing my homework since this morning**.
 الاستخدام بنفس المعني تقريبا
 - Ali **has lived** in Tanta **for over five years**.
 = Ali **has been living** in Tanta **for over five years**.

Quickly – Quickly - Quickly Test yourself

- He..... on that project for two years, and it still needs a lot of effort.
 a) worked b) is working c) has been working d) has worked
- It.....for two hours. Now the sky is clear.
 a) rained b) has been raining c) is raining d) has rained
- He's in hospital because he has an accident,
 a) had b) been having c) having d) not had
- Shefor the test for three hours now.
 a) revised b) had revised c) revises b) has been revising
- The forest fires.....for three weeks now. We need a lot of rain to put them out.
 a) has burnt b) have been burning c) has been burning d) have burnt
- I.....my aunt six times this year.
 a) visit b) have been visiting c) have visited d) was visiting

Mr El Sebaei Grammar exercises

تمارين الوحدة الثانية

Mr El Sebaei

ثانياً الاستثله الموضوعيه التاليه (كل سؤال بدرجه)

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- Have you met the manager (just - yet - ever - since) ?

Mr El Sebaei Atteya

33

01228699122

SOUVENIR

- 2- Dalia has practised her hobby (**since - for - yet - recently**) a long time.
- 3- Reham (**visits - has visited - is visiting - visit**) London recently
- 4- They (**have been - have gone - had gone - gone**) to the USA. They are in Cairo now.
- 5- She (**has left - leaves - left - would leave**) for work already
- 6- Have you eaten all these bananas (**ever - never - already - since**)? .
- 7- Samir and Nagy (**were - have gone - have been - had been**) friends all their lives.
- 8- I have known him (**since - when - for - ago**) we joined the university.
- 9- Noha has (**already - yet - never - ever**) cleaned her room. It looks nice now.
- 10- Adel has graduated from university (**for - since - in - until**) 2003.
- 11- We have lived in Cairo since we (**had married - married - get married - marry**)
- 12- The manager has met many people (**when - on - after - since**) he arrived at his office.
- 13- It's five hours since she (**has come - come - coming - came**) back home.
- 14- He (**eats - has eaten - had eaten - is eating**) three sandwiches up till now
- 15- This tree (**grew - grows - will grow - has grown**) phenomenally tall over the years.
- 16- They (**lived - have lived - were living - live**) in Luxor since 2015.
- 17- I can't phone my parents because I (**lost - was losing - have lost - lose**) my phone.
- 18- Nawal hasn't studied the present (**already - yet - ago - recent**)
- 19- The plane (**left - already left - just left - has just left**). I can see it in the sky!
- 20- Last night I (**lose - lost - have lost - am losing**) my keys and had to call my neighbor to let me in.
- 21- Hala cannot play tennis because she (**hurt - had hurt - hurts - has hurt**) her hand
- 22- Ali is not hungry because he (**has eaten - eats - is eaten - ate**) a big lunch.
- 23- We can't go home by bus because the last bus (**left - has left - leaves - had left**)
- 24- Hamid's hair is wet because he (**has - had had - has had - had**) a shower.
- 25- I'm a student in the third in the third secondary grade. I English for eight years.
a) am learning b) learn c) learnt d) have been learning
- 26- Some farmers the desert land and farming it for about eight years now.
a) are reclaiming b) would be reclaiming c) have been reclaiming d) had been reclaiming
- 27- I (**have just finished - just finish - had just finished - were just finishing**) one of his books, called My Father, An Egyptian Teacher.
- 28- She has been cleaning the house two hours now.
a) for b) ago c) from d) since
- 29- We here for 6 years now and we don't intend to move.
a) lived b) have lived c) have been living d) were living
- 30- Nada four books by Dickens.
a) has read b) had been reading c) read d) has been reading
- 31- Hadi in a band since 2001.
a) plays b) was playing c) has been playing d) is playing
- 32- Look! Someone that window.
a) have broken b) has broken c) has been breaking d) hasn't broken
- 33- I my grandparents many times this year.
a) have visited b) was visiting c) have been visiting d) have been visited
- 34- have you been studying English?
a) How long b) How long ago c) How much d) When
- 35- You your room for more than six hours. When will you finish?
a) cleaned b) have been cleaning c) are cleaning d) have cleaned
- 36- You look pale. (**Has anything happened - Will anything happen - had anything happened - Was anything happening**) to you ?
- 37- They (**learned - learn - have learned - had learned**) all the new words. They needn't worry about the test.
- 38- Since he (**has become - have become - became - become**) famous in Egypt, people have translated his books into many languages.
- 39- His books (**influence - influenced - has influenced - have influenced**) children for many years.
- 40- It's two weeks since we last (**met - have met - had met - has met**).
- 41- This is the most interesting book I have (**never - ever - yet - just**) read .
- 42- Oh! I (**lost - lose - am losing - have lost**) my passport. What should I do?

- 43- Tamera lot of health problems since he started living in that polluted city.
 a. had b. has had c. has d. is having
- 44- Adel (hasn't contacted – didn't contact – doesn't contact – hadn't contacted) me since he left Cairo.
- 45- I have never (gone – been – seen – visited) to the zoo before.
- 46- My cousin has lived abroad (when – for – ago – since) his childhood.
- 47- Belal is not here. He has (gone – been – seen – visited) to the dentist's.
- 48- Omar, (has – have – did – had) you read that book I recommended?
- 49- I (won't – haven't – didn't – hadn't) finished the book yet.
- 50- Help! I (lose- lost- have lost -am losing) my wallet. How can I get home?
- 51- Shady has been very busy since he (has begun – begin – began – begins) working for that charity.
- 52- Nothing like this has (never – lately – ever – just) happened to me.
- 53- Have you (ever tried – tried ever – never tried – tried never) English food?
- 54- Many of today's great writers as teachers.
 a. have also worked b. also work c. has also worked d. also worked
- 55- Where is your father? My father (has been – has gone – had gone – had been) to Cairo.
- 56- He started writing stories for children when hea primary school teacher.
 a. has been b. have been c. had been d. was
- 57- Many of his most famous storiesinto successful films.
 a. have been made b. be made c. was made d. made
- 58- Ali (isn't – didn't – wasn't – hasn't been) hungry because he has eaten a big lunch.
- 59- My brother (is going – will go – has gone – has been) to Paris, he came back last week.
 passed (when – because – since – until) I last saw him.
- 60- This is the first time we (had been – have been – went – was going) to a theatre.

ثانياً الاسئلة الموضوعية التالية (كل سؤال بدرجتان)

- A.** 1- My uncle has lived abroad (for – already – yet- since) five years ago .
 2-Nada doesn't know what flying is like as she (flies-never flew – has never flown- not flies).
 3- Many people (grew – have grown – had grown – has grown) up reading the books of **Al Aqad**.
 4. He (worked- has worked – had worked- is working in this company for 30 years. He retired last yeay.

- B.** 1- She (had written – have written – wrote – has written) a book about why the writer became so successful.
 2- Since the computer was used in schools, remarkable progress in education
 a. has made b. has been made c. had made d. had been made
 3- This was the first time we (had been – have been – went – was going) to a theatre.
 4- He will welcome us as soon as we (arrived – will arrive – arriving – have arrived).

- C:** 1- She has been to America. This means that she (is still – is no longer – will be – won't be) there.
 2-What have you (ever – yet – since – never) done that you would like to do?
 3-How long have you studied English (ago – just – since – for)?
 4- (For – Until – About – Since) when have you lived in your home?

- D.** 1.We..... Ahmed for years now. She is our best friend.
 a) knew b) 've been known c) have known d) have been knowing
 2- Charles Dickens is a famous English writer. Hemany books for children.
 a. write b. wrote c. has written d. is writing
 3- I started reading the story on Saturday but I have been busy (since – for- ago yet) then.
 4- Shakespeare (has written – wrote – had written – was written) 37 plays.

- E.**1. He (lived- has lived – has been living – lives) in Alex for 10 years. Now le lives in zagazig.
 2. I started working here in 1998. This means.....
 a. I have started work here since 1998. b. I haven't worked here since 1998.

c. I have started working here since 1998. d. I have worked here since 1998.

3- Ola has never flown before this time. This means

- a. It is the first time for Ola to fly b. Ola has flown once before this time.
c. we do not know if Ola has flown before or not. d. Ola has flown before that time

4- I have never eaten such a delicious meal. I mean that

- a. I am not enjoying the meal I am eating b. I am enjoying the meal I am eating
c. the meal I am eating is not delicious
d. the meal I am eating is not as delicious as meals I have eaten before

Translation

3. Choose the correct translation:

1. يجب أن نتحدى بالصبر والصمود في مواجهة مشاكلنا الاقتصادية الحالية.

1. We must be characterized by patience and steadfastness in the face of our current economic problems.
2. We must be characterized by patience and steadfastness in the face of our current economic problems.
3. We must be characterized by patience and steadfastness in the hand of our current economic problems.
4. We must be characterized by patience and steadfastness in the face of our current economic problem.

2. يجب على شبابنا دفع عجلة التنمية من أجل مستقبل أفضل.

1. Our youth should push the acceleration of development for a better future.
2. Our youth should push the acceleration of development for a better future.
3. Our youth should push the acceleration for development for a better future.
4. Our youth should push the acceleration of development for a bad future

3. إن الشعب المصري بأسره يرفض الإرهاب والعنف وقتل الأبرياء.

1. The Egyptian people as a whole reject terrorism, violence and the killing of innocent people.
2. The Egyptian people as a whole rejects terrorism, violence and the killing of innocent people.
3. The Egyptian people as a whole rejects tourism, violence and the killing of innocent people.
4. The Egypt people as a whole rejects terrorism, violence and the killing of innocent people.

4. لقد أصبحت السياحة العمود الفقري لتطوير الاقتصاد المصري.

1. Tourism has become the backbone of the development of the Egyptian economy.
2. Tourism has become the backbone of the development of the Egypt economy.
3. Tourism has become the backbone of the development of the Egyptian economy.
4. Tourism has become the backbone of the development of the Egyptian economy.

5. تهدف قوانين المرور الجديدة الى تحقيق أنسياب المرور والحد من حوادث السيارات.

1. The new traffic law aim to achieve the flow of traffic and reduce car accidents.
2. The new traffic laws aim to achieve the flow of traffic and reduce car accidents.
3. The new traffic laws aim to achieve the flow of traffic and reduce car accidents.
4. The new traffic laws aim for achieve the flow of traffic and reduce car accidents.

Choose the right answer

1-Our deserts are one of the chief sources of wealth. If we give them due care, we can increase our national income and solve many of our problems by increasing the cultivated land and constructing new industrial projects. New cities could grow up in these areas and lead to our economic development.

١. تعد صحارينا واحدة من المصادر الرئيسية للثروة ولو أعطيناهم أهتماما بالغاً يمكننا نقص دخلنا القومي وحل العديد من المشاكل عن طريق زرع الاراضى وتشبيد المشاريع الاقتصادية فالمدن الجديدة يمكن أن تنمو فى تلك المناطق وستؤدى الي النمو الاقتصادي
٢. تعد صحارينا واحدة من المصادر الرئيسية للثروة ولو أعطيناهم أهتماما بالغاً يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومي وحل العديد من المشاكل عن طريق زرع الاراضى و عدم تشبيد المشاريع الاقتصادية. فالمدن الجديدة يمكن أن تنمو فى تلك المناطق وستؤدى الي النمو الاقتصادي
٣- تعد صحارينا واحدة من المصادر الرئيسية للثروة ولو أعطيناهم أهتماما بالغاً يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومي وحل العديد من المشاكل عن طريق زرع الاراضى وتشبيد المشاريع الاقتصادية. فالمدن الجديدة لا يمكن أن تنمو فى تلك المناطق وستؤدى الي النمو الاقتصادي
٤- تعد صحارينا واحدة من المصادر الرئيسية للثروة ولو أعطيناهم أهتماما بالغاً يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومي وحل العديد من المشاكل عن طريق زرع الاراضى وتشبيد المشاريع الاقتصادية. فالمدن الجديدة يمكن أن تنمو فى تلك المناطق وستؤدى الي النمو الاقتصادي

2.Thanks to modern inventions, life has become easy. One can go from one place to another in a car, by train or by plane. Modern means of transport have made it possible to enjoy travel.

١. لقد أصبحت الحياة صعبة بفضل الخترعات الحديثة لان المرء يمكنه الان أن ينتقل من مكان لخر بالسيارة أو بالقطار أو بالطائرة فوسائل النقل الحديثة جعلت من الممكن الاستمتاع بالسفر..
٢. لقد أصبحت الحياة أفضل بفضل الخترعات الحديثة لان المرء لا يمكنه الان أن ينتقل من مكان لخر بالسيارة أو بالقطار أو بالطائرة فوسائل النقل الحديثة جعلت من الممكن الاستمتاع بالسفر..
٣. لقد أصبحت الحياة أفضل بفضل الخترعات الحديثة لان المرء يمكنه الان أن ينتقل من مكان لخر بالسيارة أو بالقطار أو بالطائرة فوسائل النقل الحديثة جعلت من الممكن الاستمتاع بالسفر..
٤. لقد أصبحت الحياة صعبة بفضل الخترعات الحديثة لان المرء يمكنه الان أن ينتقل من مكان لخر بالسيارة أو بالقطار أو بالطائرة فوسائل النقل القديمة جعلت من الممكن الاستمتاع بالسفر..

١. إن التليفون نعمة ونقمة في ذات الوقت فأحيانا نحصل على الرقم الخاطيء وتغضب أو ربما يزعجك بعض الوقحين أثناء طعامك و ونومك. فلقد أعتاد الناس في سالف الزمان أن يستخدموا الحمام لارسال الرسائل.. لقد كانوا فعل محظوظين

٢. إن التليفون نعمة ونقمة في ذات الوقت فأحيانا نحصل على الرقم الصحيح وتغضب أو ربما يزعجك بعض الوقحين أثناء طعامك و ونومك. فلقد أعتاد الناس في سالف الزمان أن يستخدموا الحمام لارسال الرسائل.. لقد كانوا فعل محظوظين

٣. إن التليفون نعمة ونقمة في ذات الوقت فأحيانا نحصل على الرقم الخاطيء وتغضب أو ربما يزعجك بعض المحترمين أثناء طعامك و ونومك. فلقد أعتاد الناس في سالف الزمان أن يستخدموا الحمام لارسال الرسائل.. لقد كانوا فعل محظوظين

٤. إن التليفون نعمة ونقمة في ذات الوقت فأحيانا نحصل على الرقم الخاطيء وتغضب أو ربما يزعجك بعض الوقحين أثناء طعامك و ونومك. فلقد أعتاد الناس في سالف الزمان أن يستخدموا الانترنت لارسال الرسائل.. لقد كانوا فعل محظوظين

- ١- السلام بين الامم ليس أمراً ضرورياً فهو يعطى كل دولة الفرصة في تنفيذ خطط التنمية وتوفير الاموال المهددة على الحروب وإنفاقها في تطوير التعليم وحل المشكلات
- ٢- السلام بين الامم أمر ضروري فهو يعطى كل قاره الفرصة في تنفيذ خطط التنمية وتوفير الاموال المهددة على الحروب وإنفاقها في تطوير التعليم وحل المشكلات
- ٣- السلام بين الامم ليس أمراً ضرورياً فهو يعطى كل دولة الفرصة في تنفيذ خطط التنمية وتوفير الاموال المهددة على الحروب وعدم إنفاقها في تطوير التعليم وحل المشكلات
- ٤- السلام بين الامم أمر ضروري فهو يعطى كل دولة الفرصة في تنفيذ خطط التنمية وتوفير الاموال المهددة على الحروب وإنفاقها في تطوير التعليم وحل المشكلات

ثانيا الاستثله الموضوعيه التاليه (كل سؤال بدرجه)

1.False reports put a negative on a story.
a) spill b) spelt c) spin d) spill

2. My friend is nosy. "Nosy" in this sentence means that he is
a. curious b. save c. noisy d. legal

3.Don't trust this lawyer. He is a liar and a
a) cheat b) chat c) creator d) discoverer

4- newspapers have large pages and serious stories.
a) Magazine b) Tabloid c) Broadsheet d) Bubbles

5- "A good citizen never violates the law." The antonym of 'violates is.....
a. escape b. works against c. obeys d. breaks

6 The earthquake a lot of buildings and most people became homeless
a) managed b) ruined c) constructed d) mended

7. Singersa lot of money of selling expired goods.
a. do b. make c. gain d. win

8.While I was doing my homework, my sister my mother.
a. was helping b. helped c. had helped d. helps

9. He used to be fat but now he
a. doesn't b. didn't c. isnt d. hasn't

10. Eman has done the housework3 hours.
a. since b. while c. for d. before

As the population grows, so more people will need water for drinking, washing, etc. At the same time, more water will also be needed to irrigate land in the desert to provide a suitable environment for the growing population. So what can be done? Water can be re-cycled, that is to say, some waste water can be purified and re-used. Engineers can also search for more water underground. However, the Nile will

always remain the major source of water for the country. Yet, the river upon which Egypt relies begins thousands of kilometres to the south, and is shared by other countries in Africa. Both Egypt and Sudan receive water from sources in Ethiopia, Kenya, Uganda, Zaire, Rwanda and Burundi. What would happen if **these** decided they needed more of water from the Nile? The answer is co-operation. Agriculture in Egypt depends almost entirely on irrigation, as there is hardly any rain. This is not true of some of the other Nile states, such as Uganda. Dams could therefore be built in these countries to provide water storage for Egypt at the same time, to provide a source of energy. Efforts could also be made to reduce the large loss. These are issues which will concern all the countries of the Nile in the next century in order to ensure that there is enough water for everyone.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

11. By the year 2025, Egypt will suffer from (lack-increase-growth-rise) of water.
12. Other Nile basin countries depend on (the Nile- wells-rain- recycled) water agriculture
13. Nile basin countries are (7 - 8- 6- 4) in number.
14. Nile basin countries need dams to
a) irrigate their field b) generate electricity c) transport blocks of stone d) store water
15. The underlined word " these " refers to(Engineers- Floods- Nile states- shortage of water)
16. Explain what you think the phrase '**mixed blessing**' means.....
a) It has pros and cons b) It has drawbacks c) It has merits d) It has advantages
17. What could be done to improve the water supply from the Nile?
a) use it b) waste it c) recycle it d) cycle it
18. Do you think the High Dam has brought only good things?
a) Yes , of course b) definitely c) I don't know d) No , it has demerits , too

3) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Hi Dalia,

You asked me to tell you about the interview that I had on Tuesday. It did not start very well. My appointment was at eight o'clock so I had to get up very early. Then there was a downpour as I was walking to the office so I was very wet when I arrived. However, there were two other people who were there for interviews too, and they also got wet! When **it** was my turn, the manager was very friendly. He looked at my CV and said that I had excellent qualifications. Then he asked me to describe myself. I said that I was sociable and conscientious. He asked me if I spoke any languages. I told him that I spoke English fluently. Then he asked me if I had done any volunteering. I told him that I often helped at a local charity for poor and disadvantaged children. He also asked me about my free time activities. I told him that I enjoyed weightlifting. He said that he found that surprising but also impressive! He asked me why I wanted to work for his company. I explained that it had a very good reputation and that I had always wanted to work as a tour guide in a big organisation. At the end of the interview, he said that I was an excellent candidate and I was qualified to do the job. He explained that he would make up his mind about who would get the job in the next few days. I really hope that I get it. Write soon. Best wishes,

Ola

19. Which of these questions did the manager ask?
a Do you do volunteering? b Can you do volunteering?
c Have you done any volunteering? d Why don't you do volunteering?
20. Which information did the manager find surprising?
a Ola helps a charity. b Ola was wet. c Ola is fluent in English. d Ola likes weightlifting.
21. Why did the manager want to know if she had done any volunteering?
a) Because he can't pay her b To find out if she is a kind person.
c Because he works for a charity. d As he needs someone to work with children.
22. What is the main idea of the email?
a Ola knows she has got the job. b Ola doesn't know if she has got the job yet.
c Ola can't get the job. d Why Ola will start the job in a few days.
- 23.- What does the underlined word "**it**" refer to?

a the tour guide b the job c the manager d the company

24. What do you think that disadvantaged means?

a rich b having problems c strong d voluntary

25. When was Ola's interview was on (Saturday- Sunday-Monday-Tuesday) .

26. The manager wanted to know if Ola spoke any languages as she was going to be -----

a) a tour guide b) a teacher c) a journalist d) an ambassadress

ثانياً الاسئلة الموضوعية التالية (كل سؤال بدرجتان)

27. I wish Olaready to go to the shops now

a) was b) is c) will be d) had been

28- Naguib Mahfouz a lot of famous novels .

a. writes b. has written c. is writing d. wrote

29- He didn't respond as heof his problems.

a. was thinking b. thinks c. has thought d. thought

30. Which sentence is correct?

a. Nada said, "My father is a teacher." b. Nada said "My father is a teacher."

c. Nada said, "my father is a teacher." d. Nada said, "My father is a teacher?"

30. What is the last paragraph in the essay called?

a. conclusion b. body paragraph c. introduction d. exposition

Choose the best translation

31- A civilized society should treat its elderly members well even if it is multicultural.

1 المجتمع المتحضر ينبغي عليه أن يعامل كبار السن معاملة جيدة حتى لو كان مجتمع متعدد الثقافات .

2 المجتمع المتحضر يجب أن يراعى في تعامله الأعضاء القدماء حتى لو كان متعدد الثقافات .

3 ويجب على المجتمع المتحضر أن يعالج كبار السن جيداً رغم تعدد الثقافات .

4 المجتمع المتحضر هو الذي يجب عليه أن يتعامل مع صغار السن معاملة جيدة حتى لو كان متعدد الثقافات

32. We can read thousands of newspapers and magazines from around the globe online.

Subscribers get access to more than 7,000 of the world's top publications as soon as they're available for free or according to the rules.

a. يمكننا قراءة آلاف الصحف والمجلات من جميع أنحاء العالم عبر الإنترنت، يمكن للمشاركين الوصول إلى أكثر من 7000 من أفضل المنشورات في العالم بمجرد توفرها مجاناً أو وفقاً للقواعد.

b. يمكننا قراءة آلاف الكتب والمجلات من جميع أنحاء العالم عبر الإنترنت، يمكن للناشرين الوصول إلى أكثر من 7000 من أفضل المنشورات في العالم بمجرد توفرها مجاناً أو وفقاً للقواعد.

c. يمكننا قراءة ملايين الصحف والمجلات من جميع أنحاء الوطن عبر الإنترنت، يمكن للمشاركين الوصول إلى أكثر من 7000 من أفضل المنشورات في العالم بمجرد توفرها مجاناً أو وفقاً للقواعد.

d. يمكننا استيراد آلاف الصحف والمجلات من جميع أنحاء العالم عبر الإنترنت، يمكن للمستوردين الوصول إلى أكثر من 7000 من أفضل المنشورات في العالم بمجرد توفرها مجاناً أو وفقاً للقواعد

33- - حققت النجمة المصرية فريال أشرف إنجازاً كبيراً بفوزها بالميدالية الذهبية في الكاراتيه في أولمبياد طوكيو ٢٠٢١ .

a. The Egyptian star Feryal Ashraf made great achievement by winning the gold medal in karate at the 2021 Tokyo Olympics.

b. The Egyptian star Feryal Ashraf did a great achievement by winning the gold medal in karate at the 2021 Tokyo Olympics.

c. Feryal Ashraf the Egyptian star, made a great achievement by winning the gold medal in karate at the 2021 Tokyo Olympics.

d. Feryal Ashraf the Egyptian star, made a great achievement by scoring the gold medal in karate at the 2021 Tokyo Olympics.

34. تعتبر مصر واحة للامان الذي بعد الركيزة الاساسية للاستقرار الاقتصادي والاجتماعي

1. Egypt is an oasis of safe, which is the mainstay of the economic and social stability.

2. Egypt is an oasis of safety, which is the mainstay of the economy and social stability.

3. Egypt is an oasis of safety, which is the mainstay of the economic and social stability.

4. Egypt are an oasis of safety, which is the mainstay of the economic and social stability.

ثانياً الاستلثة المقالة التالفة (كل سؤال بدرجتان)

The Novel:

35. "Suddenly, we heard angry shouts nearby. I was afraid of what was about to happen."

What do you think was about to happen?

36- Mrs Joe wasn't very loving towards Pip. Explain.

37. Write an essay of about six lines on:

The press has pros and cons.

GREAT EXPECTATIONS



Chapter 1

One cold, grey afternoon in the middle of winter, a small boy sat alone near the **marshes** المستنقعات. He was crying. That small boy was me, **Philip Pirrip**. As my name was difficult to say when I was small, my name became **Pip**. I was crying because it was Christmas Eve, and I was an orphan – my parents were dead, and so were five of my brothers and sisters. This happened when I was very young, so I did not remember them. I had lived with my sister and her husband, **Joe Gargery**, for most of my life. **Joe** was the village **blacksmith** حداد, and Mrs **Joe** was twenty years older than me. She was tall and thin and liked to **complain** يشتكي about me; she was often angry, but **Joe** was my friend. On this grey afternoon, when I was about seven years old, I had walked down to the **graveyard** مقبرة at the edge of the village. I sat by my parents' grave as the afternoon light الضوء slowly disappeared اختفى. The marshes nearby became dark and frightening. I was going to leave and go home, when a terrible voice shouted 'Quiet!' Then a man appeared from behind a grave القبر. I nearly **jumped out of my skin** أصبت بالرعب الشديد!! 'What's your name, boy?' he shouted, walking slowly towards me. '**Pip**, sir.' 'Show me where you live!' said the man. I pointed to **يشير الي** my village, not far away. 'Who do you live with?' 'My sister, sir – Mrs **Joe Gargery** – she's the wife of **Joe Gargery**, the **blacksmith**, حداد sir.'

'A blacksmith!' The man looked down and I saw his **leg-irons** قيود الارجل. Then I noticed his old grey clothes, and his thin dirty face. He was shaking. 'Do you know what a blacksmith's **file** مبرد is?' he asked. Yes, sir.' He suddenly grabbed جذب my shoulders كتف and shook me. 'I want you to bring me that file early tomorrow morning. And some food, too. Then I will let you live! What do you say?' I was frightened, so I promised to bring the file and the food to him the next day. 'Now go home!' he shouted. I ran until I could run no more. When I looked back, I saw the man far out on the marshes, a black shape against the angry red sky. Once I **got my breath back** بمجرد أن استعدت أنفاسي, I hurried home as fast as I could. When I ran into the kitchen, feeling happy to be home safely, Mrs **Joe** angrily asked me where I had been. 'Only to the graveyard,' I cried. 'Graveyard!' she shouted. 'You're lucky not to have been put in the graveyard long ago! It's because of me that you're still here. But I didn't want to look after you! It's bad enough being a blacksmith's wife. I never asked to be your mother!' That evening, I had work to do in the kitchen as usual. It was almost bedtime and I was helping to prepare lunch for the next day, when I heard a loud noise. 'Listen! What is that?' I said. 'A **convict** مسجون escaped هرب last night,' **Joe** explained. 'That noise was a warning to everyone in our village that another convict has **got away**!' 'From the prison ships,' Mrs **Joe** added. 'What are they?' I asked. 'They're ships where they put people because they have **committed a crime** ارتكبوا جريمة,' replied my sister. 'Now go to bed!' she shouted. I remembered that I had seen a broken old ship, far out on the marshes that day. Perhaps it was a prison ship. As I fell asleep, I realized يدرك that the man I had met that day was one of the **escaped convicts** مسجون. He wanted a blacksmith's file so that he could take off his leg-irons and get away from the marshes quickly. He scared اخاف me, but I also felt sorry for him. Early the next morning, I got up and went into the kitchen. It was Christmas Day, and guests were invited to dinner. There was some delicious cheese in the kitchen, as well

as nuts, apples and oranges, and a cold meat pie **فطيره**. I took them all. Then I went into **Joe's** workroom and found a blacksmith's file. Closing the front door quietly behind me and holding all the food carefully, I **set off**. I ran to the graveyard and then out into the mist and over the wet marshes. Suddenly, quite by surprise, I saw a man in grey who seemed to be asleep. He wore leg-irons and stood up when he saw me. At first, I thought he was the man that I knew, but then I realised that his face was different. He looked at me for a moment before disappearing into the **mist الضباب**. I wondered who he could be and what he was doing out here. Soon afterwards, I found the man I was looking for. I gave him the food at once, and he ate it quickly as I told him about the other man that I had just seen. He wanted to know who he was and where he had gone, but I could not tell him. Then, as soon as he had eaten, he took the file from me and started trying to remove **يزيل** his leg-irons with an angry look on his face.

I was afraid again, so I ran home as fast as I could. As I ran back across the marshes, I could hear the sound of the file on the leg-irons through the mist. Mrs **Joe** was busy preparing the house for guests, so **Joe** and I were alone together. I began to feel guilty **يشعر بالذنب** about the food and the file which I had stolen that morning, and I wanted to tell **Joe** what I had done. But then I thought he might not want to be my friend if I did, so I said nothing. It was not long before the guests arrived and we sat down to Christmas dinner. At first, nobody noticed that anything was missing. But then, to my horror, Mrs **Joe** invited everyone to try the delicious meat pie that **Joe's** uncle, Mr **Pumblechook**, had given us. The guests happily agreed and she went to find it. **Joe** told me I could have some, and I felt very bad. At any moment, Mrs **Joe** was going to discover that the meat pie had disappeared from the kitchen. Unable to stay at the table with all the guests **ضيوف** any longer, I got up from my chair and ran to the front door. But when I opened it, a group of soldiers **جنود** entered, just as Mrs **Joe** came back into the room shouting, 'The pie has gone!'

The appearance of a group of soldiers made the guests forget about the pie and they all stood up from the table. Everyone wondered why the soldiers had come, and we all felt nervous. 'We need a blacksmith to mend some **handcuffs القيود**, please,' the first soldier said. 'We're looking for two convicts who broke their handcuffs and escaped. We think they are hiding out on the marshes, although they probably won't try to get away until tonight.' When he asked if we had seen them, everybody else said no. I did not speak. **Joe** mended **the handcuffs القيود اليدوية** for the soldiers, and they waited with us as he worked. When they were finished, **Joe** and I followed the soldiers out of the village and onto the marshes. 'I hope we don't find the convicts, **Joe**,' I said quietly. 'Me too, **Pip**,' **Joe** replied. Day became night as we walked over the marshes. It was raining and the wind blew the rain into our faces. Suddenly, we heard angry shouts nearby. I was afraid of what was about to happen.

Chapter one

Answer the following questions:

1. Do you think that Pip's being an orphan **يتيم** affected **اثر علي** his life? Why? Give your answer in three sentences at most.

- Yes, he was an orphan and his sister was cruel **قاسي** to him. His sister had a hard and heavy hand on Joe, her husband, too. He had a miserable life. **حياه بائسه**

2. If you were in Pip's place, would you bring the file and food to the stranger **للغريب**? Why?

- Yes, because I would be afraid of the stranger.

- No, I would tell my sister and Joe what happened at the marches and ask for their help.

3. Do you think that Pip's older sister led **تعيش** a happy life with her husband? Why?

- No, because she thought it was bad enough being a blacksmith's wife.

4. What do you think would have happened if Pip had told his sister about his behavior with the convict? سلوكه مع المسجون

- She would have punished him for stealing the food and the file. سرقه تعاقبه

5. "Suddenly, we heard angry shouts nearby. I was afraid of what was about to happen." What do you think was about to happen? صرخات غاضبة

- Everyone would know that Pip had helped the convict.

6. Should Pip have told the soldiers about the convict? Why? هل كان يجب علي بب يخبر الجنود عن المسجون؟

- Yes, because he was a criminal. مجرم. He should be punished for escaping from prison.

- No, he shouldn't. because he felt that it was his duty not to tell anyone where he was. واجب

7- Mrs Joe wasn't very loving towards Pip. Explain. زوجه جو لم تكن محبه لاخوها . اشرح

Pip says Mrs. Joe "liked to complain about me". Joe tells Pip that he wishes Mrs. Joe wouldn't hit Pip. When she died, he didn't feel sad.

8- Joe was a kind, understanding man. Explain

- Pip says 'Joe is my friend' and neither of them want to find the convicts when they are with the soldiers. Joe speaks kindly to the convict when he says that he stole the pie.

9- Why do you think the convict asked Pip to get him a file ? Or why do you think the convict looked at his legs when he learnt that Pip's brother-in-law was a blacksmith ? اخته زوج

-He thought about telling Pip to fetch him a blacksmith's file to cut the leg-irons off to be able to move freely to escape. يحضر

10- Why do you think Pip went to his parents' grave on Christmas Eve ? يتحرك بحريه

- As he felt lonely and he wished they had been alive. His sister was cruel to him , so he them to complain to them.

11- Do you think the convict was serious when he threatened Pip? Why? جاد تهدد

- No, he wanted only to make him afraid to get the file to take off his leg-irons and get away from the marshes and to get him food as he was so hungry.

12- What is your impression of the man that Pip meets in the graveyard? Clarify your answer. انطباع وضع الاجابه

-I think he felt cold and afraid as he was shaking and he was hungry as his face was thin. I think he escaped from prison due to his clothes. He threatened Pip only to get what he needed.

13. Why do you think Pip felt sorry for the convict?

- He was a child and the man was shaking and his clothes were dirty and he was hungry in that cold weather.

14- To what extent did Pip like Joe? الي اي مدي كان ييبب يحب جو؟

- He loved him so much. He refused to tell him that he helped the convict not to lose him as a friend.

15- How do you think Mr. Joe Gargery was the opposite to his wife?

-He was kind and treated Pip as his friend but she was cruel and treated them by hand.

16-Why do you think Pip had a feeling of being guilty?

-Because he had stolen the food and the file from Joe's house and helped the convict.

Unit Two

Vocabulary

Her story

By: Mr El Sebael Attaya

Key vocabulary

award	يكافئ - مكافأه	obstacle	عقبه	make achievement	انجاز
cheerful	مبتهج - بشوش	overcome	يتغلب علي	majority	اغلبيه
determination	عزيمه - تصميم	qualify for	يؤهل ل	minority	الاقليه
determined	عاقد العزم	qualified as	مؤهل ك	significant	رائع - جميل
prejudice	التحامل - التحيز	qualification	مؤهل	inspire	يلهم
prejudiced	متحيز	role model	قدوه	inspiring	ملهم
round	جوله في مباراه	stereotype	صوره نمطيه - تقليديه	inspiration	الهام
physicist	عالم فيزياء	court	ملعب - محكمه	percentage	نسبه مئويه
rank	يصنف - مكانه - رتبه	miserable	بائس	grumpy	غاضب
karate	كاراتيه	tournament	دوري - مسابقه	remarkable	ملحوظ - مميز
cross with	غاضب - يعبر	in conclusion	في الخاتمه	reflect	يعكس
pharmacist	صيدلي	make eye contact	اتصال بصري	patient (im....)	صابر (متعجل)
powerlifting	حمل اثقال	bar graph	رسم بياني	lecture (at - about - on)	محاضره - يحاضر
patience	الصبر	bar chart	رسم بياني	make contribution to	مساهمه

Definitions

pharmacist	a person who knows medicine and works in a chemist's	صيدلي
court	a place where tennis is played	ملعب تنس - محكمه
tournament	a sports competition involving a number of teams or players	دوري
confident	feeling sure about your ability	واثق
prejudice	an unfair or unreasonable opinion because you don't have enough knowledge	التحامل - الظلم انحياز
lecture (v)	talked to a group of people about a subject	يلقي محاضره
lecturer	a person teaches at university	محاضر
determination	the ability to continue trying to do something although it is very difficult.	عزم - تصميم
contribution	something you do help make something useful	مساهمه - مشاركه
responsible	sensible and able to be trusted	مسئول
role model	a person young people can look up to and try to be like them	قدوه
stereotype	a fixed idea about what a person or thing is like	صوره نمطيه - تقليديه
qualify	successfully finish a training course so you can do a job .	يؤهل
patient	able to wait for a long time or accept annoying behaviour	صبور
physicist	an expert in physics	عالم فيزياء
significant	important	مهم - رائع
round	a stage in a sports completion	جوله - دوره في الرياضه
cross	angry	غاضب
grumpy	bad-tempered / easily annoyed	حاد الطبع - سيء المزاج

rank	the position or level that someone holds in an organization, especially in the police or the army, navy etc	رتبه في- يصنف
overcome	to successfully control a feeling or a problem.	يتغلب علي

Quickly – Quickly- Quickly Test yourself

Choose the right answers:

1- A/An is a competition in which players compete against each other in a series of games until there is one winner.

- a. tournament b. award c. round d. prejudice

2. The of the Egyptians support the economic reform. They are 75%. They hope to live well.

- a. majority b. minority c. great d. least

3- A/An is a prize or symbol given to recognise an achievement.

- a. tournament b. award c. round d. prejudice

4- A is an area made for playing games such as tennis.

- a. stereotype b. contribution c. court d. competition

5. It is a.....to think that all footballers are tall and strong. Some of them are quite small.

- a. traditional b. stereotype c. customary d. right

6. It is.... to think that all footballers are tall and strong. Some of them are quite small.

- a. traditional b. stereotype c. custom d. right

7. Ahmad Zewail made great to science in the field of chemistry.

- a. contractions b. contributions c. participation d. importance

8- A/An is an unfair or unreasonable opinion because you do not have enough knowledge.

- a. justice b. aggression c. pies d. prejudice

9- A is a fixed idea about what a person or thing is like which is often not true in reality.

- a. stereotype b. contribution c. court d. competition

10- To is to successfully finish a training course, so you can do a job.

- a. honour b. generate c. extract d. qualify

11- A/An is one of the parts of a competition that you have to finish or win before you can go on to the next part.

- a. tournament b. award c. round d. prejudice

12- A is someone whose job is to prepare medicines in a shop or hospital.

- a. role model b. pharmacist c. lecturer d. physics

13- A is a person young people can look up to and try to be like them.

- a. lecturer b. physicist c. sportswoman d. role model

14- A is something you do to help make something successful.

- a. stereotype b. contribution c. court d. competition

15- Thethat women shouldn't work in some jobs is fair. There are jobs for men only like taxi drivers and building workers.

- a. picture b. opinions c. prejudice d. stereotype

Lesson one and two

advance	تقدم - يتقدم	association	منظمة - رابطة	assume	يفترض
podcast	منصة صوتية	impressive	مؤثر - جميل	disabled	معاق
volunteer	متطوع	archaeologist	عالم اثار	responsibility	مسئولية
equality (in.....)	المساواة (عدم...)	viewer	مشاهد	education	تعليم
equal to	مساوي ل	review	يراجع -مراجعة	influence(effect) on	يؤثر - تأثير
athlete	رياضي	attend	يحضر	attitude	اتجاه - شعور
beat	يهزم	celebrate	يحتفل	CEO	رئيس تنفيذي

champion	بطل	bronze medal	ميدالية برونزية	event	حدث
championship	بطولة	clinic	عيادة	competition	مسابقة
challenge	يتحدى - تحدي	consider	يعتبر - يفكر	defeat	هزيمة
defy	يتحدى	creative	مبدع	demonstrate	يوضح
difficulty in	صعوبة	generate electricity	يولد كهرباء	fans	مشجعين
female	انثى	firsts	اولويات	fixed	ثابت
formula	وصفه طيبة	fuel	وقود	confidence(trust)	ثقة
Grand Slam	بطولات التمس الاربعه	honour	يكرم - تكريم	confident	واثق
translate	يترجم	innovate	يبدع	clay	صلصال
knowledge	معرفة	invention	اختراع	clay courts	ملاعب ناشغه
mathematics	رياضيات	medical	طبي	medicine	طب - دواء
minor	ثانوي	natural	طبيعي	Olympics	الاولمبياد
reasonable	معقول	physics	فيزياء	planet	كوكب
private	خاص	prize	جائزة	produce	ينتج
professional	محترف	recognise	يتعرف علي	retire	يتقاعد
spark	يشير - شراره	specialise in	يتخصص	state	يحدد - دولة
straw	قش	symbol	رمز	technical	فني
(do) training	تدريب	treatment (cure) for	علاج ل	fair	عادل
unique	فريد من نوعه	treat	يعالج - يعامل	medal	ميدالية
tunnel	نفق	youth	الشباب	department	قسم
administration	اداره - قسم	aeronautics	علم الطيران	degree	درجة علميه - حراة
opportunity	فرصة	organiser	منظم	Master's degree	درجة الماجستير
point out	يوضح - بين	STEM subjects	مواد مدارس المتفوقين	name after	يسمى
career	مهنة	stem school	مدرسة متفوقين	device	جهاز
college	كلية	junior	ناشئ	emergency	طواريء
grade	درجة	encourage	يشجع	suburb	ضاحية

Lesson 3 & 4 and 5

extract	مقتطف - مقتبس	sensible	واع - منطقي	society	مجتمع
results	نتائج	biography	سيره ذاتيه	class	درجه - فصل
fight	يحارب - يقاتل	qualities	صفات - سمات	arts	فنون - اداب
break down	يتعطل - يثور	ambition	طموح	nuclear power	طاقة نوويه
products	منتجات	expert in-on-at	خبير في	x-rays	اشعه اكس
challenging	مثير للتحدي	encouragement	تشجيع	goal	هدف
sites	مواقع	responsible for	مسئول	do research into -on	بحث
metals	معادن	the Middle East	الشرق الاوسط	attendant	مقدم الخدمات
available for	متاح	Persian	فارسي	death	الموت
atom	ذره	archaeology	علم الآثار	obtain	يحصل
(do)a training course	دوره تدريبيه	the First World War	الحرب العالميه الاولى	World Cup	كأس العالم
star	نجم - يتالق	director	مدير	President	الرئيس
engineering	هندسه	alone	بمفرده	First Class Order	وسام من الدرجة الاولى
engineer	مهندس	borders	الحدود	hold (held)	يعقد - يقيم - يمسك
reasons	اسباب	classmates	زملاء دراسه	scholarship	منحاه
private clinic	عياده خاصه	antiquities	اثار	dream of	حلم
patients	مرضى	artefacts	اعمال يدويه	graduate	حريج - يتخرج
repeat	يكبر	remain	يبقي - بقايا	musician	موسيقيار
realise	يدرك - يفهم	queen	ملكه	flood	فيضان - يفيض
planet	كوكب	achieve	يحقق	apologise for	يعتذر
face	يواجه - وجه	burning	اختراق	statement	عبارة - بيان
grow up	ينش ينمو	produce	ينتج	special	خاص
commission	لجنه - مهمه - عموله	a teen	مراهق	bubble	فقاعه
profile	ملف شخصي	maior (main)	رئيسي	success	نجاح
interview	مقابله	proud of - to	فخور ب	previous	سابق
heat	الحراره - يسخن	take pride in	يشجرك في	conditions	حالات - ظروف - شروط

mention	يذكر	mental side	جانب عقلي	require	يتطلب
reaction	رد فعل	bring	يجلب	strength	قوة
hide	يخفي	do activities	انشطه	make(give) speech	خطبه- كلام
make decision	قرار	gap	فجوة	character	شخصيه
honest	امين	superiority	افضليه	aim to	يهدف الى
author	مؤلف	inferiority	عجز- قصور	adventures	مغامرات
tomboy	بنت مسترجله	last for	يستمر	cruel	قاسي
naughty	مشاغب	abilities	قدرات	a European country	بلد اوروبي
argue with	يجادل مع	Women's Day	عيد الام	make a difference	الاختلاف
argue for	يدافع عن	heart	قلب	Alzheimer's disease	مرض الزهايمر
figures	ارقام- اشكال- شخصيات	trouble	متاعب	three-quarters	ثلاثه ارباع
kind	عطوف - نوع	raise	يرفع- يربي	alternative	بديل
noticeable	يتم ملاحظته	surprising	مدهش	care	عنايه
Netherland	هولندا	for a while	لحظه	region	منطقه
developme	تطور - تنميه	obvious(clear)	واضح	pattern	نموذج
note	ملاحظة- يلاحظ	statistics	احصائيات	expect	يتوقع
tips	نصائح	activist	ناشط	contact	يتصل - اتصال
good natured	لطيف	swing	مرجيحه	economic development	تنميه اقتصاديه
conform to	يتفق مع- ينسجم	colonial	استعماري	generation	جيل
march	مسيره	motivate	يحفز	parliament	برلمان
protest	يحتج	purify	ينقي	rule	قاعده
sign	علامه	statement	بيان	typical	نموذجي
vision	رؤيه	vote	ينتخب	worldwide	عالمي
blacksmith	حداد	soldier	جندي	veil	حجاب
fortune	ثروة	candle	شمعه	mud	طين
break heart	قلب حزين	stir	يحرك	wedding dress	فستان زفاف
anger	غضب	file	مبرد - ملف	mist	ضباب
bride	عروسه	shake my head	ارفض	tears	دموع
nature	طبيعه	trouble	متاعب		

Expressions

worried about	قلق بشأن	ask for equality at work	يطالب بالمساواة في العمل
be related to	مختص ب	the less developed countries	الدول الاقل تقدما
It is especially interesting	شيق جدا	the less developing countries	الدول الاقل نموا
practise reading it aloud	يمارس القراءة بصوت عالي	on business	في مهمه عمل
inspire interest	يثير الاهتمام - يحفز	search for = look for	يبحث عن
in a fix	في ورطه/موقف صعب	take part in : share in- participate in	يشارك في
a very traditional society	مجتمع تقليدي	be natural with	طبيعي مع
quite a traditional society	مجتمع تقليدي تماما	take turns	يتناوب الأدوار
have the honour of + v.ing	له الشرف	responsible for = in charge of	مسئول عن
honour with	يكرم ب	busy with + v.ing	مشغول في
care about / for	يهتم ب	cause of	سبب لـ (نتيجة)
reason for	سبب لـ (تفسير)	conduct (do-carry out) a survey	يجري استطلاع
influential writer	كاتب مؤثر	look up to	يحترم
encourage to	يشجع على	look down upon	يحتقر
discourage from	لا يشجع على	earn money	يكسب مال
give (set) goals	يحدد أهداف	convince : persuade	يقنع
reach / achieve goals	يحقق اهداف	reach a level	يصل لمستوى معين
score goals	يحرز أهداف	special about	مميز في
win awards for	جوائز لـ	leave dreaming	يترك... يحلم
a heart of stone	قلب حجر (قاسي)	fight through the obstacles	يحارب العقبات
focus on	تركيز / يركز	believe in	يؤمن ب

famous for = well-known for	مشهور بـ	do best	يُبذل قصاري جهد
make a plan for	يُعد خطة	pay attention to	يُولى إعطى اهتمام لـ
recommend s..thing to s..one	يقترح شيء علي شخص	on the radio – on TV	في الإذاعة
communicate with	يتواصل مع	show respect to	يُظهر الإحترام لـ
make treatment	يصنع علاج	do a project about - on	يقوم بعمل بحث عن
break down stereotypes	ينور علي النمطية	look forward to + v. ing	يتطلع الي
psychological side	جانب نفسي	well-behaved	حسن السلوك
spiritual side	جانب روحي	behave badly	يتصرف بطريقه سي
physical side	جانب بدني	identical to	متطابق مع

Quietly – Quietly - Quietly Test yourself

Choose the right answers:

1-I wish my brother would..... and get a house of his own.

- a. bring up b. grow up c. teach d. educate

2-Most youth dream of a lot of money to live well.

- a. beating b. earning c. gaining d. winning

3- Water can be used to electricity.

- a. predict b. generate c. bear d. protect

4- Wise people should set theirin life to achieve them.

- a. contributions b. goals c. heads d. creations

5.Scientistsresearch into the causes diseases to find cures for them.

- a. do-of b. protect-for c. predict-of d. make-for

6.Many women prejudices against woman nowadays.

- a. have b. defy c. break down d. b & c

7- Salah's visit to the charity attention to the importance of donations to help poor people.

- a. paid b. defied c. brought d. did

8.Students should.....attention to the teacher's explanation.

- a. pay b. defy c. bring d. do

9. Dr Zewail several contributions to science and technology.

- a. won b. made c. recognised d. did

10- The activities students at school help them improve their skills.

- a. give b. achieve c. do d. make

11- My brother was honoured an award in a science competition.

- a. of b. with c. from d. at

12- I named my elder son his uncle. They both are called Ahmed.

- a. in b. to c. before d. after

13- Many young people look Salah as their role model.

- a. after b. for c. up to d. out of

14- She is a remarkable Egyptian woman who has broken stereotypes and prejudices, demonstrating that women's place in society is important.

- a. down b. into c. in d. out

15- They have contributed completing the task.

- a. for b. by c. to d. from

16. My father is..... my brother.

- a. takes pride of b. takes pride in c. proud d. proud of

17- My father my brother.

- a. takes pride of b. takes pride in c. proud d. proud of
- 18- I'm proud be a member of the national team.
- a. to b. in c. of d. a & b
- 19- She cares everything related to her children.
- a. at b. in c. on d. about
- 20- When my phone rang, I asked Rodayna to watch the baby a while.
- a. from b. for c. on d. during

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
influence	يؤثر على	influence	تأثير	influential	ذو تأثير - ذو أهمية
Contribute to	يساهم في	Contribution	مساهمة		
advise	ينصح	advice	نصيحة	advisable	مرغوب به
confide	يأتمن	confidence	ثقة	confident	واثق
differ	يختلف	difference	اختلاف	different	مختلف
honour	يُكرّم - يوقّر	honour	شرف - فخر	honourable	جليل - مبجل - موقر
affect	يؤثر	effect	تأثير	effective	مؤثر
inspire	يلهم	inspiration	الهام	inspired	inspiring
include	ينضم	inclusion	انضمام	included	متضمن
persuade	يقنع	persuasion	الإقناع	persuasive	مقنع
believe	يعتقد	belief	اعتقاد	believable	تصديقه
disable	يعجز عن العمل	disability	إعاقه	disabled	عاجز
graduate	يتخرج - خريج	graduation	التخرج	graduated	خريج
authorize	يأذن	authorization	تفويض	authorizable	مصرح به
research	بحث - يبحث	researcher	باحث		
invent	يخترع	invention	اختراع	inventable	قابل للاختراع
produce	ينتج	production	إنتاج	productive	إنتاجي
defy	يرفض - يتحدى	defiance	الرفض	defiant	رافض
Compete	ينافس	competitor	منافس	competitive	تنافسي
		Physicist- Physician	فيزيائي-طبيب		
innovate	يبدع	innovation	الابتداع	innovative	إبداعي

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonyms	Antonyms	Meaning
grumpy	غاضب	angry -furious -bad tempered	good-natured	هاديء الطبع
award	جائزه - يمنح	prize -grand- present	refuse	يرفض
confidence	الثقة	trust -faith certainty credit	doubt	الشك
patient	صبور	deceit- fraud -deception	impatient	غير صابر
majority	الاجليه		minority	الاقليه
defy	يعارض- يتحدى	challenge - resist- disobey	surrender-give up	ينسحب
prejudice	التحامل - الظلم	bias - preconception intolerance	fairness -tolerance	غير مبالي - غير مكترث
impressive	مؤثر - جميل	remarkable - extraordinary	common- unexciting	عادي - غير شيق
cruel	قاسي	severe - tough-harsh	kind -gentle -fatherly	رفيق
naughty	مزعج	evil -nasty-indecent	well behaved-polite	ذو تصرف جيد
equality	المساواه- التكافؤ	parity- equivalence	inequality- prejudice	الظلم

honour	شرف – فخر - يكرم	appreciate - raise	condemn-disregard- shame	بدین - خزي - عار
inspire	يلهم	influence -motivate	discourage- depress	يحبط
professional (paid)	محترف	experienced - skilful	amateur (unpaid)	هاوي
alternative	بدیل	Replacement-option- substitute	obligation	ضروره
reflect	يعكس	indicate-show	cover-ignore	يتجاهل - يغطي
cross	عاضب	angry- annoyed	uncross- cheerful	مرح
significant	هام - ذو مغزي	considerable- important - worthy	insignificant - trivial	تافه
encourage... to + v.ing	يشجع	support - urge - boost	discourage from+ v.ing	يمنع - يحبط
tournament	مسابقه	competition - contest quiz		
win	يفوز	triumph-gain	lose to	يخسر

Be honest , don't look at the table

Quickly – Quickly- Quickly Test yourself

Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct word from a, b, c or d :

1-The majority of the Egyptian people support Al Ahli.The antonym of **majority** is

a.large b. immense c. minority d. massive

2-He is grumpy : this means he is.....- tempered .

a.bad b. well c. good d. better

3- Players who are paid are professional. The antonym of **professional** is.....

a. fan b. amateur c. impressive d. qualified

4- "Women want the complete equality in rights and duties with men". The antonym of 'equality' is

a. equality b. inequality c. prejudice d. b & c

5- "Women should defy convention". The word 'defy' means.....

a. resist b. obey c. give up d. surrender

6- "I was beaten in boxing". " was beaten" means..... .

a. won b. triumphed c. lost to d. gained

7- "We have absolute confidence in our parents". The antonym of 'confidence' here is

a. trust b. doubt c. belief d. reliance

8- Black people are prejudiced against them because of the colour of the skin." The synonym of "prejudiced" here is

a. discriminating b. awarded c. just d. unprejudiced

9- "You can't defy two armed men on your own". The word 'defy' can be replaced by

a. resist b. obey c. give up d. surrender

10- "Zamalik beat Al Ahli 2-1". This means Al Ahli Zamalik.

a. won b. triumphed c. lost to d. gained

11- "I have absolute confidence in what he says". The synonym of 'confidence' here is

a. trust b. doubt c. negligence d. independence

12- "My father is cross with me as I don't study well". The word 'cross' is a synonym of

a. angry b. miserable c. impatient d. pleased

13- 'Patient' is to 'impatient' as '.....' is to 'merciful'.

a. forbearing b. even-tempered c. cruel d. kind

14- He is good-natured. This means he is not

a. obedient b. grumpy c. significant d. tomboy

15. There are a lot of professional players in our team. "Professional" is the antonym is.....

a. gifted

b. brilliant

c. inefficient

d. educated

Language Notes

٢- هناك أسماء و أفعال لها نفس الشكل:

face	يواجه	- We have to face the facts.
face	وجه	- The ball hit him in the face .
lecture	يحاضر	- She lectures at the local university.
lecture	محاضرة	- The professor gave a lecture on the history of China.
influence	يؤثر علي	- His books have influenced children for many years.
influence	تأثير	- She has a lot of influence over his thinking.

2- عند اضافة (ly) للاسم يصبح صفة :

fatherly / أبوي / friendly / motherly / مرتبط بالأم / cowardly / جبان / neighbourly / ودود/عطوف / lovely / silly / ugly / قبيح / brotherly / أخوي / deadly / مميت / lonely / likely / محتمل / unlikely / غير محتمل / heavenly / سماوي / manly / حيوي/نشيط / lively / رجولي

حال - ظرف in a + adj. + way/ manner

- He behaved in a silly way.
- She spoke in a friendly way.
- My teacher treats me in a fatherly way.
- وهذا التعبير يستخدم كظرف

Test yourself :

1. My father gave me a (motherly- father-kindly- fatherly) kiss. I was happy.
2. He feels (only- lone- lonely) after the death of his wife.
3. She spoke in a (silly- friendly- deadly) . I didn't like her style.
4. We should (face- lecture-influence) our problems bravely.
5. Pollution had a bad(affect - affection- influence) on people.

3 - special خاص ولا يمتلكه الانسان

-private خاص ويمتلكه الانسان

Test yourself :

- 1- There are a lot of (private- special) schools. They are expensive.
- 2- My daughter's marriage was (special- private) occasion .

4 - like (مثل) للتشبيه

- as (ك) للحقيقة

- A teacher is like the layers of the earth.
- My father works as a teacher. He is a teacher.

Test yourself

1. The new actress sings (as- like) Om Kalthoum.
2. Taha Hussein wrote a lot of stories (like - as) " Al Ayam."
2. My father works (as - like) an accountant in a bank.

5 - inspire يلهم

aspire..... يطمح

conspire يتآمر

- A good teacher must **inspire** his students and **encourage** them.

Test yourself

1. My father always (aspires- inspies-conspires) me to study hard.
2. Our team (aspires - inspies -conspires) to win the tournament this year.
3. His successful story inspired a lot of readers. The antonym of inspired is (bboke down- put off- motivated- encouraged).
4. As girls, the sisters used to (aspire -inspire-conspire) with each other against their brother.

7- society

مجتمع

social

اجتماعي للاشياء

sociable

اجتماعي للانسان

Test yourself:

- 1- (Social - Sociable) people have a lot of real friends.
- 2- There are a lot of (social - sociable) factors that affect our (society- community)

9- **award**

جائزة أو يمنح جائزة أو شهادة جامعية

- He won many awards for his writing.
- They **rewarded him for** his good behavior.

- **reward**

يكافئ أو مكافأة ماديه

- He **was awarded** his PHD last week.

Test yourself:

- 1- He was (**rewarded – awarded**) his Ph D in 2003.
- 2- The teacher gave me 10 pounds as a (**reward – award**) when I helped him.
- 3- My father gave me chocolate as a (**reward – award**) when I was good.
- 4- Taha Hussein wrote his (biography- biobiography) in a story called Al Ayam.
- 5- Haikal wrote the (biography- biobiography) of Al Sadat in a famous book.

10 . **whenever**

حينما / عندما

أي شخص / أيا كان

Wherever

أينما / حيثما

whatever مهما / أي شيء**Test yourself**

1. (Whenever- Wherever- Whatever - Whoever) she comes, she brings some presents.
2. (Whenever- Wherever- Whatever - Whoever) commits a crime should be punished.
3. (Whenever- Wherever- Whatever - Whoever) he goes, he makes friends.
4. You can eat (whenever- wherever- whatever - whoever) you like.

11- **be related to be = associated with = be connected with**

مرتبط ب/له علاقة ب

There are problems **which are associated with** cancer treatment.12. **grow up doing something**- **leave someone doing something**

- Many people have **grown up reading** the books of Abdel-Tawab Youssef.
- The head teacher **left him dreaming** about his life as a teacher.

13 . لاحظ استخدام **most / least** مع الأفعال الآتية:

- What do you **most/least enjoy/like/love/hate** about..?
- What do you **enjoy/like/love/hate most/least** ... about..?
- What I **like/love/enjoy/hate most is/are**...
- What do you **most enjoy** about your job? = What **do you enjoy most about** your job?
- What I liked most were the beautiful beaches.

Test yourself

1. Scientists think that cancer is (relating –associated – co operated) with pollution.
2. I left my son (to stand – stand – standing (with the plumber and went to work .
3. Mathematics is connected (to- for- with) astronomy.
4. What do you (mostly -most – the most) enjoy about your job?
5. What I liked (the least – least –the best) was the delicious food.
6. Children grow (on-up-in) with a mixture of character traits from both sides of their family.
7. Our children should grow up (to read- reading- read) stories.

14 . **raise+ مفعول** (يرفع - يربي)

{ money مال يجمع / a question سؤال / your voice صوتك / cattle ماشية يربي

- rise (rose – risen) يرفع / ينهض / تشرق / بدون مفعول

- Prices rise
- He rose and left -
- The sun rises

-arise from (arose – arisen)

ينشأ

- Many problems will arise from this unwise decision .

- arouse يثير مشاعر

(feelings / sympathy تعاطف / suspicion شك / doubt ريبه - شك)

Test yourself

1. I couldn't hear my teacher, so I asked him to (rise- raise-arise-arouse) his voice.
2. The students (rise- raise-arise-arouse) their hands when they want to to answer a question.
3. Rivers always (rise- raise-arise-arouse) after the rain.
4. When I saw my father, I (rose- raised-arose-aroused) to receive him.

5. We must (rise -arouse -arise) our soldiers to fight with enemies.
6. Some learning difficulties (rise -arouse -arise) from the way children are taught at school.
7. The concert will (rise - raise - arise) money for local charities.
8. Parents want to (raise -arouse - rise)their children well.
9. The (raise- rise- arouse) in prices is a global problem.
10. Students should (rise - raise- arise) early on school days.

15 . allow + المصدر + to مفعول **& let + مفعول + to مصدر بدون**
allow (بدون مفعول) + v. ing **- make (مفعول) + مصدر** **- make (صفة + مفعول)**

Test yourself

1. I allowed Ali (help - to help - helping) me.
2. I let Ali (help - to help - helping) me.
3. I allowed (help - to help - helping) me when I need help.
4. The strict teacher makes his students(respect - to respect- respecting)him.
5. Your success makes me (happy - happily) .
6. I was allowed (to stay - stay - staying) up late.

16- decide + to + المصدر &They **decided to move** into a new flat
decide + on + اسم & You should **decide on your goal** in life.
decide +that + فاعل + فعل &They **decided that they should study** hard.

17- remember + v. + ing **remember + to + المصدر** **يتذكر بنفسه**
& remind + مفعول + to + المصدر **& remind + مفعول + of + v.+ ing** **يذكر شخص**

18- A number of (اسم جمع) + فعل جمع **-The number of (اسم جمع) + فعل مفرد**

Test yourself

- 1-A number of people in Egypt (is - are) illiterate .
- 2-The number of people in Egypt (is- are) illiterate .

19. invent **يكتشف شيء جديد** **- discover** **يكتشف شيء مخبيء** **- explore** **يستكشف مكان نعرفه ولكن لم نزوره**

Test yourself

1. Scientists (invented- discovered) a new cure for cancer.
2. Gerham Bell (invented- discovered) the telephone in ile last century.
3. The (invention- exploration) of space has contributed to improving the aspects of life on the earth.
5. (A - The- No article) number of modern schools operate mobile libraries.
6. (A - The- No article) number of patients was intolerant of the diet.
7. A number of thin cracks (has - have -are) appeared in the wall.
8. The number of storefronts (was- were- has) damaged in the riots.
9. What made you decide (to-on -that) a career as a vet?
10. I can't decide (to- on -that) who to invite.
11. Ali decided (on-in-that) he would travel abroad.
12. We should (remind - remember - forget)the benefits of healthy food.
13. The manager (remember- remind - forget)her to come earlier tomorrow morning.
14. I can't (remember- remind - reply) her exact words.
15. I reminded my daughter (to - of - at)the meeting on Monday.

20 - percentage **نسبة مئوية** **- percent** **في المائة = %** **- proportion** **نسبة (كميته)** **- rate** **معدل**

21- demonstrate **يوضح** **- demonstrate** **يقوم بمظاهرة**

Teachers made demonstrations to ask for pay rise but in vain

22. break down **ينفضض على/يحطم/يثور/ يتحلل** **break down stereotypes** **يثور على النمطية**
break into **يقترحم** **break out** **تندلع / تشب**

Test yourself

1. These results of the elections (demonstrate -remember-break down) convincingly that our campaign is working.
2. A lot of people demonstrate against the new law. " Domonstrate" means..(show-protest- assist).
3. It's hard to break (out -down -into) old prejudices.

- [illegible]

READING

Firsts for Egyptian women

Hilana Sedarous

1904-1998

Education: London Medical School

Hilana Sedarous was **the first Egyptian woman to become a doctor** in modern Egypt. She was born in Tanta and **was sent to** London in 1922 to study **mathematics** and medicine with five other Egyptian students. They **were considered to be** the first medical students to study in England. In 1930 she **qualified as** a doctor and returned to Egypt where she opened **a private clinic** for women. She was **treating patients** until she was 70 years old. **After retiring**, she **started writing** and translating stories for children.

Yasmeen Yehya Moustafa

Born: 1998

Awards: 1st place in the Intel Science and Engineering competition, NASA named a planet after her recognizing her contribution to science.

Education: Maadi STEM

School for Girls, Middle East Technical University

Yasmeen is a **role model** for other young Egyptian women. Born in Damietta, she **defied stereotypes**, **moving to Cairo** alone to attend the Maadi STEM school encouraged by her mother. Yasmeen's winning **invention** was **sparked** by the need for cleaner water in her village. She found that burning **rice straw** gave clean water and also **produced a natural fuel** which can be used to **generate electricity**. She says her school gave her the **confidence to innovate** and to **defy prejudice**: 'I can change the world'.

2021 : A great year for Egyptian women athletes!

2021 was an **amazing** year for Egyptian female **athletes**. At the Tokyo **Olympics** Games, **Ferial Abdelaziz** became the first female Egyptian to win karate gold medal. Ferial studied to become a **pharmacist**, and had played karate since she was seven. Before she won the Olympic gold medal, she had already won a **bronze medal** at the world **championship** in Spain and a **silver** medal at the 2019 African Games in Morocco.

However, Ferial was not the only Egyptian to win a medal at the Tokyo Olympics , Giana Farouk won **a bronze medal** at the same **event**. Giana had also won **a gold medal** at the Africa Games in Congo in 2015 and three gold medals at the world championships (two in Germany in 2019 and one in Austria in 2016).

Also in 2021, Egyptian tennis player Mayar Sherif became **the first Egyptian woman to be ranked in the top of 100 players of the women's tennis Association (WTA), reaching number**

74 in September. This was after she reached the (WTA) finals in Romania, where she lost to Andrea Petkovic. Earlier in the year, she beat Chloe Paquet from France in the first round of the 2021 Australian Open. Up until then, no Egyptian woman had won a match in **a Grand Slam tournament.** These great women **athletes** and many others faced many **obstacles** and **challenges.** However, they were able to **overcome** them and **proudly** put Egypt **on the world map of sports.** **The secret formula** for their success was hard work, **determination** and a lot of patience.

@@

A report about a handball player

What's her dream?

In 2021 Fatma was 21. Before this time, Fatma **had been playing top handball** for many years. Before she went to university, Fatma had already played for the Egyptian youth team, the **under-eighteens** and before she **graduated** she had played for ... the under-twenties. She became one of **the best women handball players** in the country. In 2021, Egypt did not have a handball team for players over 21. When we spoke to Fatma, she said that in the past the country had **spent** a lot of money **on** the men's handball team, which **helped it to become** very successful. She hoped that the **sports organisers** would spend money on a women's team in the future. She also pointed out that in the past women had been very successful in other sports such as **Hedaya Malak and Sara Ahmed** who **won medals** at the 2016 **Olympics.** She said there was no reason women handball players could not do extremely well too. Let's hope that soon her dream will come true and that there will be **an international Egyptian handball team for women** over twenty one. We are sure that they will be very successful.

The biography of Dr Tahani Amer

- Dr Tahani Amer **grew up** in a suburb in Cairo. Her love of **engineering** started **while** she was **watching** her father **repair** a car engine when she was young, **although** she thought she would study medicine at university.

- She then married when she was 17 and moved to the US A in 1983. Although she did not speak any English at that time, this did not stop her from doing well in maths and she got **top grades** in her exams.

- She took a two-year degree in science **while** she **was bringing up** two young children, and then took a higher degree in engineering. In 1992, she got **a master's degree** in **aerospace engineering** and another **qualification** in engineering after that. It is easy to understand why she believes that education is **the key to opportunity!**

- After she moved to the USA, she was **determined to work for** the National **Aeronautics** and Space **Administration** (NASA) and she did some work for them while she was at college. This gave her the experience she needed to get **a full-time job** there. She became a manager at NASA.

in 2012. Since 2016, she has worked for NASA's **technology department.**

- During her time there, she was helping to program computers and **test wind tunnels.** She **invented a new device** and helped solve real-life problems. She now **reviews** NASA's space **missions.**

- While living in the USA, Dr Tahani Amer also **did a lot of volunteering** for the community. She helps at after-school science clubs, teaches Arabic and Islamic studies to young children and also works hard to help other women become successful in their **careers.**

- Dr Tahani Amer's work has **contributed to the increase in** the number of women who work at NASA today, around 30% of people who work for NASA are female.

Lesson three and four

Mayar Sherif makes Egyptian tennis history

Egyptian tennis player Mayar Sherif became **the first Egyptian woman to win** a match at a major **tournament** when she **beat** Chloe Paquet from France in the first round of the 2021 Australian Open **on Tuesday**. Up until then, she **hadn't won** a match in a Grand Slam tournament, **although she had previously played at the French Open in September 2020, where she lost in the first round**. In fact, she'd only been playing professional tennis since January 2020. In an **interview** after the match **she said she was proud of what she had achieved**. She said she wasn't used to such fast courts and the heat, but every day she had been improving and **getting used to the conditions**. She also **mentioned** that since the French Open, Mo Salah, the Liverpool football star had been giving her advice about the mental side of competing and sleeping which had helped her game. It was Mayar's parents, **big fans of the game**, who had first got Mayar and her three sisters into playing. In 2016, when she was 20, she went to play tennis at an American University. Before that she had been training in Spain. She has received a big reaction from the Egyptian public after her win and this is helping to **bring attention** to the game. Asked what advice she had for other **hopeful female players**, she said that anyone could do it with hard work; they just had to believe in themselves and fight through the **obstacles**.

LISTENING TEXT

An interview with Mayar Sherif

Interviewer: How long **had you been playing** tennis when you played your first **professional match**?

Mayar : **Let's think**, I started when I was five so I **had been playing** for 15 years.

Interviewer: Had you ever competed on clay courts before you played at the French Open?

Mayar : No, it was the first time I had played **on a clay court in a professional match**.

Interviewer: Did you think you were going to win the match against Chloe?

Mayar : No, to be **honest**, before the match I **hadn't been hitting the ball** very well. The **courts** were fast and it was difficult. But **little by little** I had been playing better and by the time I played against her I **felt confident**.

A podcast about the Maadi STEM school in Cairo

Why don't more girls study STEM subjects? **Despite the fact that** in most countries there are **more** girls at university **than** boys, **fewer girls than** boys complete **STEM university degrees**. **More** girls are in school today **than** ever before, but they don't always have the same **opportunities** as boys to choose the education or subjects they want. **Too many girls are held back by gender biases, stereotypes and social norms** **تقاليد** and **expectations** which **influence** the subjects they study. Research has shown that even though girls often get better grades than boys in **STEM subjects** in lower school, they choose not to carry on studying them later on because they worry they won't be able to follow classes and they will get **poor grades**. Well, one answer to this is old girls' schools where it seems that girls are less likely to **conform** **يتوافق** to **stereotypes** and tend to be more **confident** about their abilities.

One school in Cairo has gone one step farther than this. The Maadi STEM school for girls is a school which **specializes in** STEM. One of its students is Hoda Mandour, a seventeen-year old girl from the Nile Delta. Like most **teenagers**, she loves playing sport and listening to music, but what makes her different is the **scientific research** she is doing at school. Last May, she and two other students took first place in **an international science and engineering fair**, where 1600 of the best and **brightest students** in the world had **presented** their ideas. Together these girls have found a way to **purify drinking water** using 24% less energy than **typically used**. Hoda says what they study there is far more interesting than in the old school. She says, "We do real research. Here everyone is a teacher and everyone is a student."

The aim of the school is to raise a generation of critical thinkers and leaders. Certainly the girls at Maadi seem inspired and motivated to become the next leaders. Hoda's ambition after she graduates is to find a cure for Alzheimer's disease, a disease which affects the brains of older people.

A speech about Women's Day

Today, I'm going to talk about Women's Day in Egypt. Egypt's Women's Day is on the sixteenth of March, but in 2019 there was a special sixteen days for Egyptian women from the first to the sixteenth of March. The organizers had chosen these days to remember the events in 1919 when women marched on the street to complain about colonial rule. This event was to remember women's contribution to the Egyptian society.

In my opinion, women are increasingly important in Egyptian society. For example, there are now around ninety women who are members of parliament, more than ever before. In 2021 many women have become judges for the first time. The future is bright for Egyptian women.

Book of the week

What Katy Did by Susan Coolidge. Susan Coolidge, an American author born in 1835, is still a big inspiration to many of today's female authors. *What Katy Did* is a story following the adventures of Katy and her brothers and sisters. Katy, 12, has an accident on a swing and can't walk. Her aunt had told her not to use the swing, but she hadn't explained why. It was broken.

Before the accident, Katy had been a tomboy. She was a little bit naughty and always getting into trouble. She didn't care about her clothes and often got dirty climbing trees. She often argued with her brothers and sisters. After her accident, she becomes very angry and miserable for a while. She gets very impatient and cross with everyone. However, her cousin, Clara, who is disabled, encourages her to be kinder and more cheerful. Katy learns she must make the best of things or lose the love of her family. She becomes the 'heart' of the family. At the end of the book, she learns to walk again.

Complete from the bar graph:

Share of female doctors in selected countries as of 2015

Latvia 74.3%
Estonia 73.3%
Netherlands 51.7%
Spain 51.6%
United Kingdom 45.8%
Italy 40.3%
Australia 39.4%
United States 34.1%
Japan 20.3%

Source: OECD Health Statistics 2016

Female doctors by country

The bar graph shows the percentage of female doctors in certain given countries around the world. It can be seen that there is a very significant difference across countries, from a majority of women doctors in some countries to a small minority in others. The country with the highest number of women doctors is Latvia, which has nearly three-quarters of female doctors, while the country with the smallest number is Japan, where less than a quarter of doctors are women. Netherlands and Spain have very similar numbers of women doctors; around half the doctors in those countries are women. However, another European country Italy has around 10% fewer women doctors. In conclusion, the most surprising thing about the figures is the big differences across different countries, which do not seem to be related to region, or size or economic development of the country. In other words, there does not seem to be any obvious pattern to the results. It is especially interesting to note the very low number of women doctors in Japan. That may reflect the stereotype that Japanese women are usually expected to look after the home.

Women's Day

- From the **graph**, it can be seen that there is a **significant difference** between people's opinions when asked the question in the graph. The highest number of people who agreed were in India, where the **majority** of people (80%) thought things would be better if women had more important jobs in government and **business**.
- Perhaps the most **surprising thing** about the **figures** is that over 70% of people in the less **developed countries**, such as South Africa and Turkey, agreed with the question.
- However, in some of the more developed countries such as Sweden and the USA, fewer than 60% of the people agreed, while in South Korea, nearly half the number of people disagreed.
- It is **especially interesting** to note that in Japan, only 43% agreed. That may **reflect** the fact that Japan is a **very traditional society**. In conclusion, we can see that in most countries, people believe that things would be better if women had more important jobs in business or government.

Videos script

Thousands of women, men and children **marched***1' in cities around the world on 20 and 21st January. The Women March was a worldwide **protest** that first took place in 2017 as a result of some statements made by American president, **Donald Trump**, which were **considered** to be negative towards women. This year, the protest **focused attention** on how people are standing up against **inequality**, to make sure women are treated the same as men and are given the same **opportunities**. Thousands of people in cities including London and Washington DC came out in **freezing temperatures** to give their support. One woman was carrying a sign which read "Little Girls with Dreams become women with **vision**". In London there were **speeches** by women's **activists** such as Dr Helen Pankhurst, the granddaughter of Emmeline Pankhurst, who played an important role in winning British women's right to vote in 1918. Dr Pankhurst said she thought that today's **generation** would push for even greater change.

~~~~~

## Exercises

### Lesson one and two

ثانياً الاستثله الموضوعيه التاليه ( كل سؤال بدرجة واحدة )

#### 1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- The Great Zamalik faced a lot of problems this year but they were able to win all the championships in Egypt and Africa, especially the Egyptian..... for football  
a. tournament                      b. cap                      c. champion                      d. medal
- A.....is someone whose job is to prepare medicines in a lab or hospital.  
a. pharmacist                      b. dramatist                      c. physicist                      d. physician
- Mo Salah has been ..... as one of the top footballer in the world.  
a. formed                      b. ranked                      c. called                      d. defied
- The ..... of the woman as a homemaker no longer exists; she now holds key positions around the world.  
a. stereo                      b. stereotype                      c. location                      d. site
- Ola is over the moon; she has won a/an ..... for her collection of short stories for children.  
a. fine                      b. penalty                      c. present                      d. award
- China has made a significant .....in developing a vaccine to combat the Coronavirus.  
a. contribution                      b. ammunition                      c. contamination                      d. radiation
- You should overcome your fears to achieve your goals. "Overcome" is the synonym of.....  
a. defend                      b. defeat                      c. earn                      d. react
- There are a lot of .....writing for children. Most children like their stories  
a. authors                      b. lawyers                      c. doctors                      d. vets
- He ..... at the University of Cairo about writing for children.  
a. lectured                      b. cultured                      c. played                      d. stayed
- The authors writes ..... to express his ideas.  
a. novels                      b. poems                      c. plays                      d. stories
- .....is a particular position, higher or lower than others. ( ث ع ٢٤ )  
a. Bias                      b. Destination                      c. Location                      d. Rank

12. A role .....is a person looked up to by others as an example to be imitated.  
a. module                      b. middle                      c. model                      d. medal
13. I paid close attention to the..... and jotted down key points to get ready for the final exam.  
a. maker                      b. lecturer                      c. listener                      d. worker
14. Nageib Mahfou won many ..... as a writer which has made him famous.  
a. words                      b. reward                      c. cups                      d. awards
15. Ayman cannot apply for the job in the bank because he is not ..... to do it.  
a) qualification                      b) qualified                      c) quality                      d) qualities
16. My English ..... at university inspired me to become an English teacher  
a) teacher                      b) tutor                      c) lecturer                      d) learner
17. His successful story inspired a lot of readers. The antonym of " **inspired** " is..... ( ث ع ٢٠٢٤ )  
a) broke down                      b) put off                      c) motivated                      d) encouraged
18. It is a .....to think that all footballers are tall and strong. Some of them are quite small.  
a) traditional                      b) stereotype                      c) customary                      d) right
19. It is .....to think that all footballers are tall and strong. Some of them are quite small.  
a) traditional                      b) stereotype                      c) custom                      d) right
20. You must work harder; this training is necessary to ..... as a nurse.  
a. amplify                      b. specify                      c. qualify                      d. defy
21. Don't worry, everyone has .....own problems; no one is immune to them.  
a. its                      b. her                      c. his                      d. their
22. Nada's grades are..... She is very happy.  
a) impressive                      b) impression                      c) impress                      d) impressed
23. A ..... is the qualification given to someone who has successfully finished a university course.  
a) degree                      b) referee                      c) guarantee                      d) trainee
24. Achieving objectives needs a lot of patience and .....  
a) procrastination                      b) distraction                      c) preservation                      d) determination
25. I would like to thank our volunteers, who have all made..... to helping the poor.  
a) frustration                      b) depression                      c) challenge                      d) contribution
26. The Australian tennis player Rod Lavar won the ..... twice, winning the Australian, French and US Open and Wimbledon in both 1962 and 1969.  
a) tournament                      b) cap                      c) champion                      d) Grand Slam
- 27- There are a lot of different ..... schools that graduate a lot of skilled people for working in factories  
a) technical                      b) academic                      c) high                      d) agricultural
27. The great boxer Tayson could beat his opponent in the second ..... winning the world boxing championship.  
a) court                      b) round                      c) around                      d) tip
28. Tennis, basketball and volleyball are all played on .....  
a) courts                      b) rounds                      c) around                      d) tips
29. As well as writing books on ..... and culture, she wrote poems.  
a) social                      b) sociable                      c) society                      d) variety
30. To ..... for is to clearly explain why you think something is true or should be done.  
a) bargain                      b) challenge                      c) review                      d) argue
31. Women are still looking forward to complete ..... with men.  
a. condition                      b. equality                      c. reaction                      d. confidence
- 32- Some students need more.....than others at school.  
a. depression                      b. encouragement                      c. likes                      d. stress
33. Because of her parents' death, she left school with no..... .  
a) qualities                      b) qualifications                      c) qualify                      d) qualified
34. My cousin is ..... and cannot walk very well.  
a) disabled                      b) cheerful                      c) unable                      d) rude
35. My friends work for Resala charity as ..... . They don't get any money . I want to join them  
a) volunteers                      b) sociable                      c) professional                      d) amateurs

36. Mo Salah is a ..... player in Liverpool. He gets a lot of money.  
a) volunteer                      b) sociable                      c) professional                      d) amateurs
38. Mona is often ..... before lunch. Once she's eaten, she's quite cheerful again!  
a) grumpy                      b) happy                      c) pleased                      d) cruel
38. A/An ..... is an expert in the interactions of matter and energy in the physical universe.  
a. psychologist                      b. physicist                      c. archaeologist                      d. socialist
39. My cousin ..... a STEM school in Al-Obour City.  
a. goes                      b. attends                      c. studies                      d. learns
40. The major ..... to achieving that project is money; there aren't enough funds.  
a. cause                      b. merit                      c. circle                      d. obstacle
41. I am sure your spirit of ..... is the most important factor of success.  
a. cause                      b. merit                      c. determination                      d. deterioration
42. In underdeveloped countries, illiteracy ..... lack of national awareness there.  
a. suspects                      b. respects                      c. reflects                      d. infects
43. Some private universities ..... students in terms of their GPAs.  
a. risk                      b. rank                      c. arouse                      d. rise
44. The problem is difficult, but I am doing my best to ..... it.  
a. think                      b. gain                      c. win                      d. overcome
- 45.. Giana Farouk has ..... medals in four different countries.  
a. won                      b. gained                      c. beaten                      d. overcome
46. I never ..... that women are less efficient than men; in fact, they often outperform a large number of males.  
a. refuse                      b. deny                      c. assume                      d. resume
47. Albert Einstein is perhaps the most famous ..... the world has known.  
a. professor                      b. doctor                      c. physicist                      d. physician
48. There shouldn't be ..... against people of different cultures.  
a. clarity                      b. equality                      c. prejudice                      d. justice
- 49.The Olympics is a great ..... that happens every four years.  
a. accident                      b. incident                      c. event                      d. occasion
50. The ..... chose these dates to hold the great event in Egypt.  
a. organizers                      b. students                      c. poets                      d. authors
- 51.People believe that things would be better if women ..... more important jobs in business or government.  
a. have                      b. had had                      c. had                      d. will have
- 52.The level of education in the ..... countries is very high.  
a. develop                      b. developed                      c. developing                      d. development
53. The people in the ..... countries suffer from a lot of problems  
a. develop                      b. developed                      c. developing                      d. development
- 54-The President's achievements have ..... all the Egyptians well.They are happy.  
a. defied                      b. depressed                      c. influenced                      d. prejudiced
55. Students are told about the ..... of revising before the exam.  
a. importance                      b. import                      c. goodness                      d. equality
56. Dr Ahmed Zewail is an.....person in the field of science.  
a. idle                      b. impatient                      c. influenced                      d. influential
- 57-He is an expert on science and often..... at the university.  
a. does                      b. makes                      c. learns                      d. lectures
- 58-You should keep the documents. They are very .....  
a. trivial                      b. important                      c. ugly                      d. silly
- 59 .The ..... is a person who is sensible and can be trusted  
a. liar                      b. dishonest                      c. knave                      d. responsible
- 60 My friend is ..... , quiet and does not often laugh.  
a. joking                      b. fun                      c. serious                      d. seriously



### Lesson three, four and five

#### 1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

1. Ahmad Zewail was ..... Nobel Prize for discovering the femto second  
a) rewarded                      b) won                      c) got                      d) awarded
2. Jobs can give writers ..... that they can use in their writing.  
a) experiences                      b) measures                      c) experiments                      d) experts
3. Ahmad studied very hard for many years and he has now ..... as a doctor.  
a) qualified                      b) earned                      c) rewarded                      d) went
4. Ahmad Zewail made great ..... to science in the field of chemistry.  
a) contractions                      b) contributions                      c) participation                      d) importance
5. The football team are playing with a lot of ..... I think they are going to win!  
a. cleanliness                      b. negligence                      c. equality                      d. confidence
6. The writer's books have been translated into many languages, ..... English, French and Chinese.  
a. including                      b. containing                      c. consisting                      d. taking
7. My neighbour's children cause a lot of noise which makes me unhappy and .....  
a. pleased                      b. cross                      c. disobedient                      d. dishonest
8. The global distribution of wealth reflects high levels of .....; there are rich and extremely impoverished countries.  
a. minority                      b. majority                      c. inequality                      d. equality
9. You must ..... the bottle before taking this medicine.  
a. chock                      b. shock                      c. leak                      d. shake
10. I'm ..... to my friends for their encouragement.  
a. grateful                      b. harmful                      c. careful                      d. needful
11. There is a ..... increase in online sales especially during pandemics; people prefer online shopping to avoid infection.  
a. hesitant                      b. significant                      c. trivial                      d. minor
- 12- Many people have grown ..... reading the books of Al Akad.  
a. down                      b. up                      c. in                      d. on
13. This book has some useful ..... on how best to revise.  
a) tops                      b) taps                      c) tapes                      d) tips
14. Patience is the most important ..... for a teacher.  
a) quality                      b) quantity                      c) equality                      d) personality
15. He studied ..... at Cairo University so he is able to design building.  
a) engineering                      b) politics                      c) medicine                      d) physics
- 16- He ..... from Cairo University in 1950 .  
a) got out                      b) graduated                      c) graduate                      d) interviewed
17. He is a ..... from Cairo University in 1950 .  
a) got out                      b) graduated                      c) graduate                      d) interviewed
18. He wanted to ..... money to send his sisters to school.  
a) beat                      b) earn                      c) gain                      d) win
19. The company hopes that its ..... will sell very well in the new year and achieves great profits.  
a) products                      b) measures                      c) productive                      d) sales
20. .... is the official language of the people who live in Iran.  
a) Mandarin                      b) Persian                      c) Mandarin                      d) English
- 21- In summer, the sun ..... early in Egypt nearly at 5 o'clock.  
a) falls                      b) rises                      c) sits                      d) sets
22. Al -Ahram Weekly ..... a lot of articles about science every week.  
a. writes                      b. translates                      c. publishes                      d. does
- 23- There have been significant computer ..... during the last decade.  
a. attachments                      b. appointments                      c. developments                      d. agreements
24. I missed the plane, and the next ..... flight doesn't leave until tomorrow.  
a) relaxing                      b) unavailable                      c) available                      d) significant
25. That play is very popular. You'd better check the ..... of tickets.

- a) publication                      b) settings                      c) agreements                      d) availability
26. I wanted to complain to the manager of the shop, but he was..... .
- a) available                      b) unavailable                      c) comfortable                      d) uncomfortable
27. The manager thought my CV was very....., so I was appointed as a sales representative.
- a) impressive                      b) impression                      c) depressive                      d) massive
28. The nuclear energy project will help Egypt ..... more electricity in the future .
- a) grade                      b) generate                      c) import                      d) lose
29. An ..... teacher can stimulate students to achieve their goals.
- a. inspiring                      b. conspiring                      c. spring                      d. expiring
- 30- The dealer takes a 20% ..... on the sales he makes .
- a) committee                      b) camp                      c) commission                      d) courage
- 31-The US Open , Wimbledon French Open and the Australian Open are called .....
- a) Grand Slam                      b) Grandparents                      c)Grand Museum                      d) Grandfathers
- 32- A ..... is a competition where there are a number people competing to win a cup.
- a) team                      b) completion                      c) tournament                      d) riddle
33. The first ..... of sporting competition is when the opining game or match is played.
- a) round                      b) around                      c) rally                      d) regime
- 34-In an interview after the match , she said she was proud ..... what she had achieved.
- a) in                      b) on                      c) off                      d) of
35. Mayar became the first Egyptian woman to ..... a match at a major tournament.
- a) earn                      b) beat                      c) win                      d) gain
36. Our handball team can compete and ..... the strongest teams all over the world .
- a) earn                      b) beat                      c) win                      d) lose
37. Mo Salah, the Liverpool football ..... had been giving her advice
- a) stare                      b) store                      c) star                      d) stir
38. After he became addicted to drugs. His physical and ..... health had got worse.
- a) trivial                      b) mental                      c) true                      d) manual
- 39- She has received a big ..... from the Egyptian public after her win . She was happy
- a) sorrow                      b) hatred                      c) reaction                      d) bias
- 40 Israel always puts ..... to hinder the peace process .
- a) roses                      b) obstacles                      c) flowers                      d) flavours
41. Our great army protect our..... with other countries so we feel safe.
- a. sides                      b. borders                      c. faces                      d. mountains
42. Our local council .....the streets of our town after famous men like Al Sadat.
- a. called                      b. named                      c. painted                      d. lightened
- 43 .The film of " Asal Eswed" was very.....and made Ahmed Helmy famous .
- a. success                      b. failure                      c. hatred                      d. successful
- 44 .The film of " Asal Eswed" was a.....and made Ahmed Helmy famous .
- a. success                      b. failure                      c. hatred                      d. successful
- 45- Teachers often .....their students to work hard.
- a. encourage                      b. discourage                      c. scold                      d. spoil
46. The .....of the Egyptians support the economic reform. They are 75%.
- a. majority                      b. minority                      c. amount                      d. lightening
47. A great number of students .....absent yesterday because of rain.
- a. was                      b. were                      c. has                      d.- have
- 48- The great number of students ( was- were- has- have ) absent yesterday because of rain.
- a. was                      b. were                      c. has                      d.- have
49. My older sister is very ..... She explains carefully when I can't do my homework.
- a. patient                      b.impatient                      c. careless                      d. active
50. We saw some boys being very .....outside the school.They were throwing stones at a cat so we stopped them.
- a. active                      b.cruel                      c. patient                      d. polite
51. My brother is often..... He always hides my things and I become confused.
- a. polite                      b.careful                      c. careless                      d.naughty
52. The FIFA World Cup is an international .....for football that is held every four years.
- a. tournament                      b.cap                      c.champion                      d.medal
53. Hassan's sisters are both very good-..... They are always friendly and smiling.

- a. natured                      b. natural                      b. nature                      d. mature
54. Nada's children are very well.....They never complain and don't make problems.
- a. behavior                      b. behaved                      c. behave                      d. behaving
55. Egypt's (Women's - Woman's- Women's- Woman )day is on 16 March.
56. The report ( based- bases- was based- basing ) on the this graph, is very true.
57. ( Percent-Percentage- number-amount ) of men and woman doing housework in Europe, is low.
58. There was a( lecture - culture -play - stay ) at the university about new technology.
- 59- Shakespeare's plays are ( influence-affect-influenced- influential). Many writers use his stories.
60. In tennis you play on a ( court- round- around- tip ) which can be made of clay or grass.
61. The (volunteers-sociable-professional-amateurs ) player is the one who is paid to play.
62. Feryal Ashraf ( made- did- gave- plated) history when she won a gold medal.
63. The sun ( rose- raised - aroused- arose ) at 6 o'clock yerterday.
64. The doctor's smile ( rose- raised - aroused- arose ) our hopes that our father would be fine
65. The boxer ( rose- raised - aroused- arose ) his opponent and threw him on the ground.
- 66- My father always encourages me to take ( place - part - up - down ) in conversations.
- 67- Ali always makes a revision ( plain - plane - pain- plan ) two months before the exams.
68. The minister took the full.....for the disaster and resigned.
- a. behaviour                      b. carelessness                      c. responsibility                      d. interest
69. Janet's dog was sick, so she took it to the .....
- a. surgeon                      b. pet                      c. technician                      d. vet
70. Patience is the most important .....for a teacher.
- a. quality                      b. quantity                      c. equality                      d. personality
71. Many people think that teaching is difficult, but it is a .....job.
- a. wealthy                      b. worthless                      c. worthwhile                      d. ugly
72. The ..... attended a summit meeting with other heads of states.
- a) president                      b) resident                      c) student                      d) assistant
73. He achieved a lot in his field, so the president ( donated- imprisoned- honored- persuaded ) him
- 74- The ( clerk - diver - president - minister ) is the official leader of a country which does not have a king or queen.
- 75- My maths teacher ( rose - did - influenced - raised ) my decision to be a teacher, too.
- 76- The tourists went on a / an ( industrial - tiny - agricultural - cultural ) tour of Egypt, visiting all the sites.
- 77- The school secretary is ( irresponsible - respected - responsible - awarded ) for sending emails.
- 78- The rich man ..... an association to help children with ..... They need help.
- a. set out- cleverness                      b. sit up- disabilities                      c. set off- disease                      d. set up- disabilities
79. A good teacher should ( inspire - conspire - despair - insult ) his students to work hard.
- 80- When I finish school, I'd really like to do something to help other people. What ( advice - device - advise - devise ) can you give me?
- 81- I ( give - achieve - score - reach ) myself goals and plan to achieve them.
- 82- He was married ( to - with - from - in ) a son and a daughter.
- 83- The head teacher ( recognized- realized - identified- qualified ) that the young teacher was worried.
- 84- People have translated his books ( for - on - onto - into ) many languages.
- 85- You are very natural ( of - on - with - at ) the students, but strict.
- 86- Leaving lights on is a / an ( respectable - responsible - irresponsible - irritable ) behaviour.
87. Salah was able to score a wonderful game as the goalkeeper was standing in the wrong.....
- a. position                      b. procession                      c. profession                      d. movement
88. A lot of people like eating the.....meat as it is delicious when it is grilled.
- a. dog                      b. limb                      c. lamb                      d. lamp
- 89- I will hold a big party in ..... of my father
- a. hour                      b. honour                      c. honest                      d. honourable
- 90- To..... is to control a feeling or a problem that prevents you from achieving something.
- a) come                      b) get                      c) have                      d) overcome
91. My friend told me if he were in my ....., he would help my brother financially.
- a. position                      b. procession                      c. profession                      d. movement
92. Archeology and mining have a lot of thins in..... They are expensive.

- a. pivate                      b. special                      c. habits                      d. common
93. The government has announced its official..... of the issue of the River Nile.  
a. position                      b. procession                      c. profession                      d. movement
94. We are ..... a project about archaeology in Egypt  
a) making                      b) giving                      c) getting                      d) doing
- 95-What are the necessary ..... of a good teacher?  
a) qualification                      b) morals                      c) qualities                      d) quatities
- 96-The good teacher should be .....to control the naughty students.  
a. patience                      b. patient                      c. impatient                      d. honourable
97. Sir, a lady in a black gown with a .....is waiting for you outside.  
a. vale                      b. vein                      c. veil                      d. veal
98. I'll never forget the day my daughter put on her wedding dress and became a .....  
a. groom                      b. bridegroom                      c. pride                      d. bride
99. The .....of " The Days " by Taha Hussein was a blind boy.  
a. protagonist                      b. personality                      c. playwright                      d. author
- 100- Ali was .....of himself when the results of the exams were announced as he didn't study well.  
a. shy                      b. ashamed                      c. happy                      d. rude
101. I sat .....the dead praying for him to be forgiven.  
a. with                      b. by                      c. in                      d. for
- 102- Muslims' women always wear .....to cover their heads. It is one of the musts of Islam.  
a. scarf                      b. veins                      c. veils                      d. vies
103. When I gave the poor man some money, he .....my hands to thank me.  
a. shook                      b. shake                      c. gave                      d. caught
104. The guide told us the Pharaoh spent a ..... building his palace.  
a. luck                      b. money                      c. fortune                      d. properties
105. The storm cut off the electricity so we had to use.....  
a. screens                      b. torches                      c. papers                      d. moons
106. The protagonist had a heart of ..... She was cruel to everyone .  
a) gold                      b) silver                      c) mercy                      d) stone
107. I had a change of ( heart - teeth - eye - skin ) and decided to stay longer reading.
108. The synonym of ashamed is ( embarrassed - shy - trusted - confident )
109. The tourists sat by the pool and ..... the sun  
a. played                      b. faced                      c. focused                      d. glance
110. When my friend travelled , I felt lonely and .....  
a. boring                      b. bored                      c. funny                      d. glad

## **Grammar**

### **Past Perfect Tense      زمن الماضي التام**

#### **Form:**

**had + p.p.**

#### **التكوين**

**- يتكون الماضي التام من**

- We washed the dishes after we **had eaten** supper.

#### **Usage:**

#### **الاستخدام**

**يستخدم الماضي التام ليصف حدث وقع قبل حدث آخر في الماضي.**

- When I met Ali yesterday, I remembered that we **had met** before, about ten years ago.
- When I got home, my wife **had cooked** the dinner.
- I **hadn't flown** before, so I was nervous about getting on the plane.

**يستخدم الماضي التام في الكلام غير المباشر لنقل أشياء حدثت بالفعل عندما كنت تتحدث عنها.**

- I **told** him that I **had weighed** the soil.
- She **said** she **had heard** it all before.

**يستخدم الماضي التام مع الكلمات الآتية:**

حتى / until / حتى / till / عندما / when / بمجرد أن / as soon as / بعد / after  
لم يكده ... حتى / no sooner....than / قبل / by the time / قبل / before

**Study well**

(A) 1- **After** + فاعل + **past perfect** ماضى تام + **past simple** ماضى بسيط

**After** he **had done** his homework, he **watched** television.

2- **After** + v. + ing + **past simple** ماضى بسيط

**After doing** his homework, he **watched** television.

3- **Having** + p.p. + **past simple** ماضى بسيط

**Having done** his homework, he **watched** television.

4. **V+ing** ( حدث اول ) ماضى تام + **past simple** ماضى بسيط

**Doing** the shopping , she **returned** home

5- **As soon as** + فاعل + **past perfect** ماضى تام + **past simple** ماضى بسيط

He **parked** his car **as soon as** he **had found** a place.

6. **When** + فاعل + **past perfect** ماضى تام + **past simple** ماضى بسيط

When I **had finished** the answer, I **gave** my paper to my teacher

7. **By** + ماضى تام + **past perfect** ماضى تام

**By 2010** , Ali **had got** a new job in a factory.

(B) 1- **Before** + فاعل + **past simple** ماضى بسيط + **past perfect** ماضى تام

**Before** + v. + ing + **past perfect** ماضى تام

**Before** he **parked** his, he **had found** a place.

**Before** **parking** his car, he **had found** a place.

2 - **By the time** + فاعل + **past simple** ماضى بسيط + **past perfect** ماضى تام

**By the time** the police **arrived** the thief **had escaped**.

3- **When** + فاعل + **past simple** ماضى بسيط + **past perfect** ماضى تام

**When** he **had read** the novel, he **watched** TV.

خلي بالك

**When** he **watched** TV, he **had read** the novel.

لاحظ الفرق فى المعنى بين هاتين الجملتين:

• **When I arrived** at the station, the train **left**.

= I arrived, then the train left.

• **When I arrived** at the station, the train **had left**.

= The train left before I arrived.

خلي بالك

- **After (As soon as) (when) (Before)**

إذا جاء معهم ثلاثة أحداث يكون اثنان ماضى بسيط وواحد فقط ماضى تام ولا يوجد ترتيب كالتالي

**When** I **arrived** at the station I **found** that the train **had left** the station.

= **On arriving** at the station I **found** that the train **had left** the station

**As soon as / after** I **saw** Ahmed, I **realized** that I **had forgotten** his book at home.

**As soon as** He **reached** the airport, Ali **found** out that he **had left** his suitcases at home.

**After** I **heard** that I **had passed** the exam, I **phoned** my dad.

خلي بالك

- **After = Before that** + **past perfect** ماضى تام + **past simple** ماضى بسيط

**Before = after that** + **past simple** ماضى بسيط + **past perfect** ماضى تام

I **watched** the film but **before that** I **had done** my homework.

I **had had** a shower **after that** I **went** out.

خلي بالك



( ماضي بسيط ) , ( v + ing ) or ( اسم On )

- On finishing work, I left the office.

- The moment ماضي تام + ماضي بسيط

The moment I had finished work, I left the office.

خلي بالك

نستخدم هذه التركيبة عندما لا يكون هناك فارق زمني بين الحدثين

After / as soon as / when

ماضي بسيط + ماضي بسيط

- When she saw a snake in front of her, she cried.

- He told me as soon as he heard the news.

- After he paid the driver, he got out of the taxi.

ماضي تام + until / till + المصدر ماضي بسيط غالبا منفى ( didn't + المصدر ) 1. (c)

He didn't park his car until he had found a place.

ماضي تام + until - till + p.p. wasn't / weren't + الفاعل 2.

Ali wasn't invited to the party until he had met the bridegroom.

ماضي تام + until - till + المصدر couldn't / wouldn't + الفاعل 3.

I wouldn't leave the office until I had finished my work.

ماضي تام + until - till + الفعل ماضي بسيط مثبت 4. No one

No one left the office until they had finished all tasks.

ماضي تام + until - till + او اي كلمه تدل علي النفي ( refused/denied ) 5-

She refused to marry him until he had bought a new flat.

ماضي تام + until - till + صفة / اسم wasn't / weren't + الفاعل 6.

He wasn't strong until he had trained in a gym.

خلي بالك

..... + فاعل + مصدر + did + ماضي تام Not until + past perfect 7.

Not until he had found a place did he park his car.

ماضي بسيط + that + ماضي تام It wasn't until + past perfect 8-

It wasn't until he had found a place that he parked his car.

ماضي بسيط + that + فاعل + ماضي تام It was only when + past simple 9-

It was only when he had read the novel that he watched TV.

لاحظ :- أحيانا يستخدم الماضي التام بعد because بشرط أن تكون الجملة في الماضي والحدث بعد because هو الذي حدث أولا:

ماضي تام + until / till + ماضي بسيط 1.

Leila was late for school because the bus had broken down.

He was angry because she had insulted him.

لاحظ :- يستخدم الماضي التام مع الكلمات الدالة علي المضارع التام إذا كان في الجملة فعل ثانى زمنه ماضي بسيط:

for / ever / never / already / yet / just

The film had already started when I arrived.

لاحظ استخدام no sooner / hardly / scarcely بين had و التصريف الثالث (pp)

no sooner than

ماضي بسيط + past simple when + p.p. + hardly + فاعل 1. (D)

scarcely when

He had no sooner gone shopping than it started to rain.

He had hardly gone shopping when it started to rain.

إذا بدأت الجملة بـ no sooner / hardly / scarcely نضع الجملة الأولى في صيغة استفهام.

2. No sooner than

ماضي بسيط + past simple when + p.p. + فاعل + had + Hardly

Scarcely when

- No sooner had they finished painting our new house than we moved into it.

- لايد من استخدام الماضى التام إذا كان ذلك يؤثر على معنى الجملة.**

- ~~~~~

## زمن الماضى التام المستمر

- They **had been waiting for** an hour **when** the train **arrived**.  
يستخدم الماضى التام المستمر لوصف حدث استمر لفترة فى الماضى قبل وقوع حدث آخر و يستخدم عادة مع since / for / when / all day / all weekend

- There **were** floods **because** it **had been raining for** three days.
- يأتي الماضي التام المستمر عادة مع أفعال يمكن أن تستغرق فترة طويلة مثل  
**wait / do / study / live / work / stay / play / watch / sleep / paint / read / write / talk / run**  
**/ walk / travel**

- Choose the correct answer: ( جمل سهله لاختبار القاعدة بسرعہ )**

- Mr El Sebaei Atteva**

- a. I had met                      b. had I met                      c. I met                      d. have I met
- 14- She ..... the homework before her sleep.
- a. does                      b. doing                      c. has already done                      d. had already done
- 15- By 2017, the young author ..... three novels. It was a great achievement for him.
- a. had published                      b. will publish                      c. has published                      d. was publishing
- 16- The young author ..... three novels. It is a great achievement for him.
- a. had published                      b. will publish                      c. has published                      d. was publishing
- 17- We arrived half an hour late. The film ..... half an hour earlier.
- a. began                      b. was beginning                      c. had begun                      d. has begun
- 18- After the house ..... painted, we furnished it.
- a. had                      b. had been                      c. has been                      d. is
- 19- I had ..... for three hours before I went to bed.
- a. been studying                      b. been studied                      c. studying                      d. study
- 20- Mona didn't give the sheet to the teacher until she ..... it.
- a. has been checking                      b. has checked                      c. had checked                      d. checking

ثانياً الاسئلة الموضوعية التالية ( كل سؤال بدرجة )

Choose the right answers:

1. Ahmed ..... for only three weeks, so he failed his driving test.
- a. trains                      b. had trained                      c. has been trained                      d. was trained
- 2- she had been sleeping all day before my mother ----- her.
- a) awoke                      b) had awoken                      c) awakes                      d) has awoken
3. When she went home she found that she (buy-has bought-had bought-would buy) the wrong book.
4. We (had played-has played-were playing-had been playing) tennis for only a few minutes when it started raining.
5. The secretary left the office after (type-had typed-typed-typing) all the letters.
6. Hardly (he had heard-has he heard-had he heard-does he hear) the bad news when he got depressed.
7. It (had been snowing-had snowed-snowed-has snowed) for a while before we left.
8. I (have-am-had-was) already left the house when it began to rain.
9. They had no sooner left the house (when-what-then-than) it started to rain.
10. There were floods because it (had been raining-has been raining-was raining-rains) for three days.
11. By the time Alex finished his studies, he (was-had been-has been-is) in London for over 8 years.
12. When I went to my friend's flat, she (already left-has already left-had already left-left) for school.
13. Last year, I spent a month in France. I (dream-had dreamt-has dreamt-was dreaming) of going there since I was a child.
14. Leila and her husband (move-have moved-moved-had been moving) into their own flat last weekend. Before that they had lived with Leila's parents.
15. My father retired last week. He (worked-has worked-has been working-had worked) for the same company all his life.
16. Karim fell asleep during the football match because he (had gone-has gone-was going-is going) to bed late the night before.
17. The fish was fresh when I (bought-had bought-was buying-have bought) it.
18. Ali ate a sandwich during the game because he (wasn't having-had not had-doesn't have-won't have) enough time to eat before it started.
19. The doctor said that the patient (dies-died-had died-was dying) a few minutes before.
20. Hassan (borrows-has borrowed-borrowed-was borrowing) money from Ali because he had left his money at home.
21. Adel asked which team was red because he (doesn't see-hasn't seen-can't see-had not seen) these teams before.

22. I did not have any money because I (had lost-have lost-lost-lose) my wallet.
23. Ali (has looked-was looking-had been looking-looks) for work for over a year before he got a job.
24. The little children's clothes (are-have been-were being-were) dirty because they had been playing in the park all day.
25. He (had been driving-was driving-drives-to drive) for only 3 weeks, so it is not surprising that he failed his driving test.
26. I went to the doctor's yesterday evening because I (have been feeling-was feeling-had been feeling-feel) ill for nearly a week.
27. When I got home, I was very tired. I (have been working-work-had been working-have worked) all day.
28. The town was flooded. It (has rained-had been raining-has been raining-rains) for 3 days.
29. After I (finish-have finished-had been finishing-had finished) my homework, I watched my favourite TV programme.
30. She (worked-has been working-had worked-had been working) at that company for three years when it went out of business.
31. There were floods because it (had been raining - has been raining - was raining - rains) for three days.
32. By the time he was 12, my brother (learnt - had learnt - has learnt - learns) 3 languages.
33. Ali knew Samy was at the match because Steve (had phoned - phones - was phoning - would phone) him before he went.
34. By the time she (finishes - finished - has finished - was finishing) writing her report, she had drunk six cups of tea.
35. Before (wrote - writing - had written - has written) this novel, he had become famous as a playwright.
36. As soon as I arrived in The USA, I.....a big difference in social behaviour.  
a) notice                      b) noticed                      c) had noticed                      d) was noticing
37. When we had finished the meal, I.....some coffee.  
a) was making                      b) have made                      c) had made                      d) made
38. By nine, most of the workers.....  
a) arrived                      b) had arrived                      c) was arriving                      d) have arrived
39. It was only four o'clock, but everyone.....the office.  
a) already left                      b) have just left                      c) already had left                      d) had already left
40. When Amr arrived, we .....dinner. He found nothing to eat.  
a) have had                      b) had had                      c) had                      d) were having
- 41- When she went out to play, she..... her homework.  
a) had already done                      b) has already done                      c) was already doing                      d) does
- 42- My brother ate all of the cake that our mum .....  
a) will make                      b) has made                      c) had                      made                      d) used to make
- 43- The doctor took off the plaster that he ..... on six weeks before.  
a) puts                      b) had put                      c) is putting                      d) has put
- 44-The waiter ..... a drink that I had ordered.  
a) had brought                      b) was bringing                      c) will bring                      d) brought
- 45-.....he phone Dalia before he went to see her in London?  
a) Did                      b) Had                      c) Has                      d) Can
- 46-No sooner .....the sun risen than the fog disappeared.  
a) has                      b) had                      c) did                      d) does
- 47-Did you ..... write poems when you were young?  
a) use to                      b) used to                      c) used                      d) get used to
- 48- When she went back to school, she found she .... the wrong composition the day before  
a) wrote                      b) had written                      c) has written                      d) had been written
- 49- She ..... a magazine when suddenly somebody knocked at the door.  
a) read                      b) reads                      c) was reading                      d) had read
- 50- They couldn't go swimming because they ..... their swimsuits.  
a) forget                      b) have forgotten                      c) had forgotten                      d) will forget
- 51- Before ..... for London, he had paid off his debts.

- a) leaving                      b) left                      c) had left                      d) leave
52. Hany couldn't answer the phone because he ..... a shower.
- a) had                      b) was having                      c) had                      d) had had
- 53-By the time he reached the bus stop, the bus .....
- a) leave                      b) leaves                      c) will leave                      d) had left
- 54-.....seeing the accident, the motorists drove more carefully.
- a) On                      b) Without                      c) Despite                      d) Over
- 55- ( On - In - By - At ) 6:00 pm yesterday , I had done many jobs at home.
- 56-I..... my own computer for three years before anything went wrong with it.
- a) had had                      b) have had                      c) had                      d) have
- 57-Fawzi .....already read some of Yehia Haqq's writing before learning about him in class.
- a) have                      b) had                      c) is                      d) was
- 58-Mr Ali was shocked when he joined our company as he .....to do much work every day.
- a) wasn't used                      b) didn't use                      c) used                      d) was used
- 59-As soon as the criminal ....., he was sent to prison .
- a) arrested                      b) has been arrested                      c) had been arrested                      d) was being arrested
- 60-Did you go out last night or .....you busy ?
- a) did                      b) were                      c) have                      d) are
- 61- It wasn't ( when - until - after - before ) he had arrived that the light went out.
- 62-We were sitting in the garden when it suddenly .....to rain.
- a) was starting                      b) started                      c) had started                      d) has started
- 63- His clothe were dirty because he ----- his car by himself.
- a) has mended                      b) had been mending                      c) has been mending                      d) is mending.
- 64-When it was lunchtime , I didn't eat much . I .....a big breakfast .
- a) was having                      b) have had                      c) had had                      d) will be having
- 65- I ----- for two hours before the light went out.
- a) studied                      b) was studying                      c) had studied                      d) had been studying m
- 66- As soon as I arrived home , I realised that I ----- my keys.
- a) had been losing                      b) have lost                      c) was losing                      d) had lost.
- 67- Hardly ----- written the report when she handed it to me.
- a) she had                      b) did she                      c) had she                      d) she has
- 68- My friend ----- to give me the mobile until he had watched the video.
- a) didn't                      b) refused                      c) wasn't                      d) won't
- 69- After I ----- my friend I realised that I forgot to give him the address.
- a) will invite                      b) invite                      c) have invited                      d) had invited.

ثانيا الاسئلة الموضوعية التالية ( كل سؤال بدرجتان )

Choose the correct answers:

- A.** 1. I bought the tickets and 10 minutes later the film.....
- a. started    b. has started    c. Had started    d. was starting
- 2.....the manual, I understood how to use the washing machine easily.
- a. To read    b. Having read    c. Had read    d. After being read
- 3.My mother offered me another cup of tea, but I refused as I.....enough
- a. have    b. have had    c. was having    d. had had
- 4.The earthquake destroyed the castle that.....in the 19<sup>th</sup> century.
- a. built    b. has built    c. had been built    d. has been built
- 
- B.** 1. I was going to leave the office when I.....I didn't have the mobile.
- a. remembered    b. had remembered    c. have remembered    d. was remembering
- 2..... sets are usually cheaper than new ones.
- a. Use    b. Used    c. Using    d. Uses
- 3.....second-hand sets is usually cheaper than new ones.
- a. Use    b. Used    c. Using    d. Uses
- 4- I called you because I ..... who took your tablet.
- a. will know    b. did know    c. knows    d. knowing
-



- C.** 1. Yesterday, I had my car checked. It.....checked since last year.  
a. hasn't been                      b. isn't                      c. hadn't been                      d. wasn't  
2. I sighted something in the road, but I couldn't stop at once because I.....fast.  
a. drive                      b. had driven                      c. drove                      d. had been driving  
3- My life was dull.....I decided to move to the city.  
a. unless                      b. so that                      c. until                      d. as soon as  
4. No one.....on time until they had been punished.  
a. doesn't arrive                      b. didn't arrive                      c. wasn't arrived                      d. arrived

- D.** 1.As soon as I .....her, I knew I had met her before.  
a. had seen                      b. have seen                      c. saw                      d. see  
2. ....arrested, the thief was taken to hospital.  
a. While                      b. On                      c. Having been                      d. having  
3. Did you know that Ali.....behind due to his bad behavior.  
a. had left                      b. is left                      c. had been left                      d. has left  
4....., the man was taken back to prison  
a. On arresting                      b. After arresting                      c. Having arrested                      d. When arrested

- E.** 1. We ..... that car for ten years before it broke down.  
a.have had                      b. had                      c.had been having                      d. had had  
2- I met Sally yesterday. I ----- her since she left our village.  
a) didn't see                      b) haven't seen                      c) hadn't seen                      d) won't see  
3. I ..... a lot till I answered the questions.  
a. didn't try                      b. doesn't try                      c. won't try                      d. tried  
4-No sooner ..... he see the police than he ran away.  
a) do                      b) does                      c) had                      d) did

- F.** 1- Did you hear what she said ? – No, I .....about something else.  
a) thought                      b) was thinking                      c) have thought                      d. think  
2-..... the street , he slipped on the ice and broke his arm.  
a) was crossing                      b) crossed                      c) had crossed                      d) crossing  
3-Sorry for being late . The car .....down on my way here.  
a) was breaking                      b) has broken                      c) was broken                      d) used to break  
4.....his own company , he took on many workers.  
a.found                      b. Founed                      c.After finding                      d. Founding

- G.** 1. ....in medicine , he became a doctor.  
a. Graduated                      b. Having been graduated                      c. Graduating                      d. Being grarduated  
2. ....for two hours , the food was ready to eat.  
a. Cooking                      b. Having cooked                      c. After cooking                      d. Cooked  
3. ....in the garage , my car became good.  
a. Repairing                      b. Having repaired                      c. Repaired                      d. Have been repaired  
4. Unfortunately, he missed the train. When he ----- the station, the train.....  
**a** reached/has left                      **b.** had reached/left                      **c.** reached/had left                      **d.** was reaching/has left

- H.** 1. She had visited her uncle.....before she saw him yesterday.  
a.the day before                      b. last Friday                      c. today                      d. a day ago  
2. **I didn't listen to him and I didn't succeed. This means.....**  
a. I didn't succeed as I had listened to him                      b. As I hadn't listened to him, I failed.  
c. After I had listened to him, I didn't succeed.  
d. Before I didn't succeed, I had listed to him.  
3.**We didn't recognize him until he came into the light. This means.....**  
a. It was not until we recognized him that he came into the light.  
b. It was not until he came into the light that we recognized him.  
c. It was not until we didn't recognize him that he came into the light.  
d. It was not until he came into the light that we didn't recognize him.

4. She heard the news of the death of her mother. She fainted. This means.....

- a. On hearing the news of her dead mother, she fainted.
- b. On hearing the news of her mother's death, she fainted.
- c. She fainted so she heard the news of the death of her mother.
- d. She fainted and then she heard the news of the death of her mother.

1. As soon as he arrived at the airport, he called home. This means.....

- a. He arrived at the airport and called me to take him home.
- b. He arrived at the airport sooner than he had expected.
- c. Calling home, he said that he had arrived at the airport.
- d. No sooner had he arrived at the airport than he called home.

2. Which of the following is structurally correct?

- A. Once I have heard the good news, I contacted Adel.
- B. Once I heard the good news, I had contacted Adel.
- C. Once I had been hearing the good news, I contacted Adel.
- D. Once I had heard the good news, I contacted Adel.

18. She refused to lend me her camera until I -----to take care of it.

- a. had promised      b. have promised      c. had been promising      d. have been promising

3. Which of the following is structurally correct?

- A. I haven't handed in my answer sheet until I'd gone over all the questions again.
- B. I didn't hand in my answer sheet until I'd gone over all of the questions again.
- C. I won't hand in my answer sheet until I went over all the questions again.
- C. I didn't hand in my answer sheet until I've gone all the questions again.

4. "I had my lunch after taking a shower." This means .....

- a. I had had my lunch after I took a shower.      b. I had had my lunch before I took a shower.
- c. Having taken a shower; I had my lunch.      d. Taken a shower, I had my lunch.

~~~~~

ADJECTIVES الصفات

الصفة عبارة عن كلمة تحدد معني الاسم و توضحه.

- Dalia is **an intelligent girl**.

be - feel - smell - taste - sound - seem - look

- Do you **feel tired**?

- The dinner **smells good**.

- لاحظ أننا يمكن أن نستخدم **inf + to** بعد بعض الصفات مثل

difficult - easy - impossible - hard - happy - pleased - glad - sad - amazed - disappointed

- It's **difficult to understand** him. - I **was sorry to hear** that your father was ill.

- الصفة في اللغة الانجليزية لا تتغير حسب العدد أو الجنس

- He is **a kind brother**. - She is **a kind sister**. - They **are kind brothers**. - They **are kind sisters**.

- يمكن استخدام أسماء الخانات كصفات لكنها لا تستخدم للمقارنة أو التفضيل أو التساوي و لا تجمع

- **a gold ring / an iron chair / silver coins**

- بعض الأسماء يستخدم كصفة لبيان الغرض من الاسم الموصوف مثل

- **a tea-spoon** : a spoon for putting tea in a cup

(nice / kind / stupid / silly / clever / polite / careless)

- لاحظ استخدام صفات مثل

في التركيبة التالية

- It (be) + adj. + of + someone + to + inf.

- It is **kind of you to lend me the money**. - It was **careful of Ali to phone the police**.

٢- شرح الصفات المنتهية ب **ed** و **ing** في اللغة الإنجليزية:

تُعد الصفات المنتهية ب **ed** و **ing** من أهم الصفات في اللغة الإنجليزية، حيث تُستخدم لوصف الأشخاص أو الأشياء، لكن لكل نوع وظيفة خاصة به.

(tired- tiring) (interested- interesting) (excited- exciting) (bored- boring) (annoyed- annoying)

الصفات المنتهية ب **ed**:

(tired.- interested- excited- bored- -annoyed- surprised)

-I am **tired** after studying for hours . - She was **excited** after winning the lottery .
 -My **friend** was excited when he won the first prize.

الصفة المنتهية بـ **ing**

(tiring. interesting- exciting- boring- -annoying- surprising)

- That film was **boring**, wasn't it? - He is **a boring person**. He is talkative.
 - Mo Salah is an **amazing** player to watch. - You are active . You work with **amazing speed**.

لاحظ هذه الصفات

3-الصفات القوية والضعيفة

ضعيفه	قويه	ضعيفه	قويه
tired	exhausted	angry	furios
frightening	terrifying	hot	boiling
cold	freezing	bad	terrible
unusual	incridible	big	enormous-huge
interesting	amazing	good	wonderful-fantastic

(delighted- delightful- skilled -skillful -impressive-impressed- depressed- depressive)

exhausted = very tired freezing = very cold ...etc

مع الصفات العادية نستخدم extremely / quite / rather / really / very / fairly

I'm very **tired**. The film was **quite frightening**.

مع الصفات القوية نستخدم totally / absolutely / completely / really

The film was really terrifying. I was absolutely exhausted.

لاحظ هذه الجمل:

After spending the night in the desert, the children were **very cold**. (freezing)

After spending the night in the desert, the children were **freezing**.

Tarek told us **a very unusual story**. (incredible) - Tarek told us **an incredible story**.

Comparative Adjective (بين اثنين) صفات المقارنة

1- (adjective + er + than / more (less) + adjective + than) الصفة في الدرجة الثانية تتكون من
 (نضيف للصفة القصيرة er)

- Ahmed is **taller than** Soha.

- Soha is **shorter than** Ahmed

2- نستخدم (more) قبل الصفة المكونة من أكثر من مقطعين أو مقطعين مشتقين

The car is **more expensive than** the bike.

Zewail is **more famous than** any scientist.

3- (لاحظ أن less) توضع أمام أي صفة سواء مكونة من مقطع أو أكثر

He is **less tall than** me .

She is **less beautiful than** her sister.

4- (لاحظ أن الأهم في الدرجة الثانية هو إنها مقارنة بين اثنين

Which is the easier language , **German** or **French**?

Who is **the taller** of the **twins**?

She is the **MORE serious** of the two children.

Our house is **the TALLER** of the two in our street.

I didn't think the car was **so expensive**.

It was **more expensive than** I thought.

5- لبيان المقارنة الضمنية لشئيين مع عدم ذكر احد طرفي المقارنة

This shirt is small. I need a **bigger one**.

He wants a **more expensive car**.

6 - لاحظ شكل الضمير بعد **than** (يستخدم ضمير فاعل إذا كان بعده فعل و ضمير مفعول في حالة عدم وجود فعل):

He **is taller than me/him/her**.

But: He **is taller than I am / he is/ she is**.

He runs faster **than I do**.

He runs faster **than She does**.

My car is **more expensive than Ahmad's**.

My car is **more expensive than hers**.

Nowadays, I got up **earlier than I used to**. (**Not earlier than**)

7- لاحظ أن الصفة بعد **and** تأخذ نفس شكل الصفة قبلها

The weather is getting **colder and colder**.

- He runs **faster and faster** .

8- يمكن استخدام **slightly / a bit / much / a lot / a little / far/ a few / many** قبل الدرجة الثانية لتوضيح الفرق:

♠ Going by plane is **much more expensive**.

♠ You have to move **a bit faster**.

♠ He is **a little taller than** his wife .

♠ Gold is **much more expensive than** silver.

♠ A few **more people** attended his conference **than** our conference.

♠ Going by bus is **a lot cheaper than** going by plane.

♠ Her illness was **far more serious than** we at first thought.

9- لا نستخدم **any/ no / a bit /a lot** قبل صفات القارنه المتبوعه باسم ولكن نستخدم **far / much**:

There are **a bit /no/a lot/** nicer shops in the town centre.

There are **much-/far** nicer shops in the town centre.

10 - نستخدم هذه التركيبة لنبين ان الفارق ليس كبيرا

1. **almost as + صفة + as slightly/a bit/a little + صفة مقارنة + than**

I'm **almost as old as** my brother.

Nada thinks that her friend is **slightly prettier than her**.

Traveling by train is **a little/ a bit cheaper than** traveling by car.

2. **much/ a lot/ far + صفة مقارنة + than**

نستخدم هذه التركيبة لنبين ان الفارق كبيرا جدا

Her illness was **far more serious than** we expected.

English is **much easier to study than** Chinese

Gold is **a lot/ much more expensive than** salt.

11• عند المقارنة بين صفتين في نفس الشخص (إحدى الصفتين أقل أو أكثر من الأخرى) نستخدم **more / less** قبل الصفة حتى ولو كانت صفة قصيرة – ولا يمكن استخدام **er** في هذه الحالة:

- She is **more cruel than** strict. (NOT **crueler**)

- He is **more lucky than** intelligent. (NOT **luckier**)

12- الفرق بين **elder** و **older**

نستخدم **elder** و **eldest** في نطاق الاسره لبيان الاكبر سنا ولا نستخدم **than** بعد **elder**

Ali is **my elder brother** .

He is **the eldest** in our family.

My **elder brother** is two years younger than **my eldest brother**.

تستخدم **older** لتشير الى الاكبر سنا او الاقدم ويمكن ان يتبعها **than** او تفهم المقارنة ضمنيا بدون **than**

We start understanding many things as we **grow/get older**.

My parents are **older than** your parents.

The older version of the software had many useful features than this one.

- I am **the eldest child** in my family. ✓

- I am **the oldest child** in my family. ✗

- I am **2 years older than** my **younger** brother. ✓

- I am **2 years elder than** my **younger** brother. ✗

13- الفرق بين **last** , **later** , **late** and **latter**

Sorry, I'm busy right now - I'll speak to you **later**.

تستخدم latter لتشير الى الثاني من اثنين او شيئين يتم ذكرهما

I met two men and Ali is **the latter**.

تستخدم last بمعنى اخر شخص او شيء او اقرب شيء للوقت الحاضر

I didn't read **the last chapter** of the book.

The next meeting will be held **in the last week** in June.

Ali comes **late** to school. (**Adverb**)

- Ali is **late** (**adj.**)

14 (لاحظ ان مقارنة الظروف مثل الصفات)

Modern machines work **more efficiently than** the old ones .

♠ The rabbit runs **more quickly than** the tortoise.

♠ He works **harder than** you .

♠ If you get up early, you will arrive early = **The earlier** you get up , **the earlier** you arrive.

15 - لاحظ أن

(as) + اسم = the same + noun + as + adjective صفة

adjective	noun	adjective	noun
old	age	tall	height
deep	depth	high	height
expensive	price	heavy	weight
long	length	wealthy	wealth
wide	width	strong	strength

- Samy is **as tall as** Ramy. = Rania is **the same height as** Rasha.

- Rania is **as old as** Rasha. = Rania is **the same age as** Rasha.

- I **speak** English **as well as** Ali (**does**)

- I **speak** English **as well as** Ali **speaks**.

- My car **is** **as old as** **Ali's**.

- My car **is** **as old as** **yours**.

- He's **as tall as** **me**.

- I **speak** English **as well as** **him**.

- Samy and Ramy **are the same height**.

- Cairo is not so **(as) cold as** London .

- Samy is **the same height** as Ramy.

- Cairo is **hotter than** London.

16 - عندما نستخدم (صفة متبوعة باسم) بعد as الأولى نضع أداة النكرة قبل الاسم

Ali is **as good a cook as** his wife is!

(NOT Ali is **as a good cook as** his wife is.)

(as much + اسم لا يعد + as / as many + اسم يعد جمع + as)

They try to give them as much freedom as they can.

There weren't as many people there as I expected.

17 - عند عقد مقارنه بين المقاييس او المعايير في الصفه يمكن استخدام احد النماذج التاليه:

1.....is twice as + صفة + as..... (Not twice more / -er)

2.....is three/four times + صفة + er / more + صفة + as.....

3.....is three/four times + صفة + as.....

- My car is twice **as expensive as** yours.

- My car is three/four times **faster / more expensive than** yours.

- My car is three/four times **as expensive as** yours.

- Your car is **as old as** mine.

- I can run **as fast as** you can.

18 - لاحظ أن

(فعل + فاعل + as + صفة)

لاحظ أنه يمكن استخدام **as** بمعنى (بالرغم من) إذا بدأت الجملة بصفة وبعدها **as** :

Rich as he is, he does not enjoy his life.

ويمكن أيضا استخدام (**as** صفة **as**) + في بداية الجملة لتعطي نفس المعنى

As rich as he is, he does not enjoy his life.

19- بعد **as / than** عادة نستخدم ضمير مفعول عندما لا يوجد فعل و نستخدم ضمير فاعل عندما يوجد فعل

- You are **taller than** me. = You are **taller than** I am.

20- أحيانا نستخدم (**best - most**) كظرف بدون **the** (أي يمكن حذفها) قبل الصفة بمعنى **very** أو **very much**

- The article I've just read was **very** interesting.

(**most**)

- The article I've just read was **most** interesting.

21- عندما نريد أن نقول أن هناك شيئا يعتمد على شيء آخر نستخدم

The + فعل + فاعل + صفة مقارنة + the + فعل + فاعل + صفة مقارنة

- As you **get older**, you become wise.

(The older)

- **The older** you get, **the wiser** you become.

- يمكن استخدام صفتي مقارنة للدلالة على التغير المستمر في الشيء.

- It's becoming **harder and harder** to find a job. - It's becoming **more and more difficult** to find a job.

- **The higher** we go, **the colder** we feel.

- **The more** you study, **the more** marks you get.

- **The more** you talk, **the less** you work.

٣- الصفة الدرجة الثالثة (العظمى)

♣ الصفة الدرجة الثالثة تتكون من (**adjective + est / The most (least) + adjective**)

♣ Soha is **the tallest** girl in the class.

♣ He is **the most intelligent** boy in the school .

♣ My grandfather is **the oldest member** in our family .

♣ Diamond is **the most expensive** metal.

♣ Amr is **the tallest person** in the family.

♣ I love my father **best**.

1- لاحظ عدم استخدام (**the**) لعدم وجود اسم بعد الصفة

2 - لاحظ استخدام الدرجة الثالثة مع الكلمات **first / second / third, ...etc**

♣ Alexandria is **the second largest** city in Egypt.

♣ He has got **the third highest** marks .

3- لا تستخدم **the** قبل الدرجة الثالثة في حالة وجود ضمير ملكية قبل الصفة:

♣ It was **his biggest achievement** in Chemistry.

♣ Nada is **my best friend** .

Naguib Mahfouz is **Egypt's best** novelist.

4- الدرجة الثالثة تصبح درجة ثانية بوضع كلمة (**any**) قبل الطرف الثاني أو نبدأ بالطرف الثاني مسبقا بـ (**No**)

♣ French is **the easiest** subject.

♣ **No** subject is easier than French.

♣ Ola is **the cleverest** girl I have ever seen ♣ I have never seen **such a clever** girl as Sally

5- لاحظ استخدام (**of**) عندما يكون بعدها اسم جمع وقبل كلمة (**group - lot**)

ولا نستخدم (**of**) متبوعه باسم مفرد يشير لمكان أو مجموعته بدلا منها نستخدم (**in**)

♣ The Nile is **the longest river in** the world (**NOT.....of the world**).

♣ She's the best student in the class. (**NOT.....of the class**).

♣ The Pacific is **the biggest of** all oceans

♣ She is **the most intelligent lady in** the conference. (**NOT.....of the conference**).

♣ Salah is **the best player in** Africa.

♣ He is the best **of the lot** (**of them all**).

6- لاحظ استخدام المضارع التام بعد صفة التفضيل.

- This is **the most interesting** book I've ever read.

7- بعد صيغة التفضيل نستخدم حرف الجر **in** مع الأماكن و نستخدم **of** مع الأشخاص و الأشياء

- Dalia is **the best student** in our class.

- Dalia is **the best of her friends**.

- Water is **the least expensive** of all liquids.

- لاحظ أننا نقول

the farthestfrom / the nearestto

- Pluto is **the farthest planet** from the sun.

- Mercury is **the nearest planet** to the sun.

8- صفات شاذة: Irregular adjectives

الدرجة الأولى	الدرجة الثانية	الدرجة الثالثة	الدرجة الأولى	الدرجة الثانية	الدرجة الثالثة
good	better than	the best	well	better than	the best
bad / badly	worse than	the worst	ill	worse than	the worst
many	more than	the most	much	more than	the most
little	less than	the least	old	elder	eldest
far	farther / further than	farthest / furthest			

♠ Alexandria is **farther / further** **أبعد** than Cairo .

♠ I need **further information** معلومات إضافية about the salary

9- بعض الصفات تأخذ في المقارنة (**most** او **more / est** او **er**) اي صفه طويله وقصيره في نفس الوقت مثل:

(common-narrow -simple-quiet - stupid - clever- polite- friendly- gentle -cruel-lovely)

quiet → **quieter / more quiet**

→ **the quietest / most quiet**

clever → **cleverer / more clever**

→ **the cleverest / most clever**

narrow → **narrower / more narrow**

→ **the narrowest / most narrow**

simple → **simpler / more simple**

→ **the simplest / most simple**

cruel → **crueler / more cruel**

10- بعض الصفات ذات مقطع واحد و تعامل معاملة المقطعين

(real / wrong / true / right)

11- نستخدم صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل بصفة عامة مع الصفات المتدرجة في درجاتها (Gradable) (مثل الصفة **tall** - هناك

شخص طويل وشخص أطول منه وهكذا . ولا نستخدم مع الصفات غير المتدرجة (Non-gradable) كالصفات النوعية التي

تصنف الأشياء مثل **digital, industrial, historica**

أو الصفات القوية التي لا يقبل معناها التدرج مثل:

priceless, free, dead, alive.

Choose the right answers

(جمل سهله لاختبار القاعده بسرعه)

1- Burj Khalifa is Cairo Tower.

a. the highest

b. highest

c. higher

d. higher than

2- The Nile is river in the world.

a. longer than

b. longest

c. the longest

d. long

3. This is the test I've ever taken.

a. hardest

b. less hard

c. harder

d. hard

4. He is not reliable as his friend.

a. so

b. as

c. more

d. a & b

5- The quality of food is not early as it was in the past.

a. the best

b. worse

c. as better

d. so good

6- For the continuity of life, water is the valuable of all liquids.

a. more

b. less

c. least

d. most

7- A donkey is not as a cheetah.

a. as fast

b. fastest

c. faster

d. fast

8- It was of her to save some of her money.

a. least wise

b. wise

c. less wise

d. more wise than

9- Which do you think is, Paris or Dubai ?

a. the most exciting

b. most exciting

c. a more exciting

d. more exciting

10- The new wall is not the old one.

a. as high as

b. the high as

c. high as

d. as high

ثانيا الاستثله الموضوعيه التاليه (كل سؤال بدرجه)

Choose the right answers

- 1-Yesterday was hot but today is
a the hotter b. hotter c. hotter than d. hottest
- 2-Yesterday was hot but today is
a colder b. cold c. colder than d. hotter
- 3-Planes are.....faster than trains.
a. a lot of b. more c. much d. as
- 4-The Egyptian museum is one of the.....places to visit in Cairo. Thousands of tourists like to visit it.
a. most popular b. least popular c. less popular d. more popular
- 5-Your homework is.....than last week; you seem lazy!
a. bad b. good c. worse d. better
- 6-Adel isn't as old as Hatim. Adel is really.....
a. oldest b. youngest c. older d. younger
- 7-What is the.....mountain in Europe?
a. much high b. highly c. high d. highest
- 8-Jana has a beautiful baby, but Judy has the.....baby on earth.
d) most beautifully c) beautiful a) more beautiful b) most beautiful
9. Maher isn't.....friendly as Hussein.
a) than b) so c) far d) much
10. English isto study than Chinese
a) easy b) more easier c) much easier d) less easier
- 11-I don't read as.....books as you do
a-more b-much c-many d-most
- 12-It was.....of her to waste all her money.
a-more foolish b- less foolish c- foolish d- least foolish
- 13- He was not.....as his colleagues.
a-helpful b- as helpful c- more helpful d- less helpful
- 14-Although we aren't rich, my children go to.....schools in the city.
a) the best b) the most c) as good d) the better
15. I think air pollution is..... more dangerous than sound pollution.
a) so b) a lot c) many d) a lot of
16. We aren't the same..... You're taller than me.
a) length b) age c) height d) amount
- 17.The.....I had to queue at the bank, the more impatient I became.
a) longer b) long c) longest d) most long
- 18.A spoiled child often behaves and annoys us
a) good b) bad c) badly d) well
- 19-A (few - few more - Less - little) students enrolled on our course than last year.
- 20-She is not.....as her mother.
a) more beautiful b) most beautiful c) beautiful than d) so beautiful
- 21.Mr Hassan doesn't earn..... money as I do.
a the most b. more c. so much d. as many
- 22.He has much.....friends than me.
a. more b. the least c. most d. many
- 23.It's too noisy here. Can we go somewhere (more quiet -much quiet-quieter -most quiet)
- 24-I've never had a (hard test- harder test than - more hard test- the hardest test) this.
- 25- He was not (helpful- as helpful- more helpful - less helpful) as his colleagues.
- 26-He is not (so - more - less - lessen) reliable as his friend.
- 27-My flat is (more big - less big - biggest - the biggest) than yours.
- 28-You didn't do as (more - less - least - much) work as I did.
- 29-Her friend is (wealthy - wealthiest - wealthier - wealthiest) than her.
- 30-My car is (less - more - least - most) small than yours.
- 31-Nobody here is (efficient - as efficient as - most efficient than - as efficient) Peter.
- 32-It was (more wise -wiser - wise - wisest) of her to study well to get her degree.
- 33-Mobiles are (as and more - more and so - much and more - more and more) popular
- 34-French is (many - most - much - more) easier than English.

35. Most other metals aren't.....as gold.
a) precious b) the most precious c) more precious d) as precious
36. A modern BMW is.....expensive than this old Fiat.
a. much more b. much c. the most d. most
37. Tablets are becoming.....popular nowadays.
a. more and more b. much and more c. more and less d. less and more
38. Unfortunately her illness was.....we thought at first.
a) serious b) more serious c) more serious than d) the most serious
39. Which is.....in summer: Cairo or Alexandria?
a. hotter b. hottest c. as hot d. hotter than
40. I come from a large family, but my grandfather had a.....one.
a) large b) the largest c) much large d) larger
41. Although we aren't rich, my children go to.....schools in the city.
a) the best b) the most c) as good d) the better
42. I come from a large family, but Ali's isone in our village.
a) large b) the largest c) much large d) larger
43. The Pacific Ocean is the world's.....ocean.
a) deepest b) the deepest c) deep d) deeper
44. I can't hear you. Could you speak a little....., please?
a) loudly b) loudest c) loud d) louder
45. Travelling by train is.....than travelling by bus.
a) expensive b) the most expensive c) more expensive d) much expensive
46. This tree is.....than the building over there.
a) more taller b) a bit taller c) very tall d) the tallest
47. My sister thinks she's.....than me, but I don't agree!
a) the most intelligent b) much intelligent c) intelligent d) more intelligent
48. My job is a bit boring sometimes. I'd like to do somethinginteresting.
a) much b) most c) less d) more
49. A falcon has got a (good-better-best- bad) eyesight than a human.
50. I think air pollution is.....more dangerous than sound pollution.
a) so b) a lot c) many d) a lot of
51. He is.....than all of his four brothers.
a) more taller b) the tallest c) the taller d) taller
52. I was not as intelligent as the others, but I was.....
a) more prettier b) pretty c) the prettiest d) most pretty
53. I am afraid his situation is going from bad to.....
a) worse b) bad c) worst d) badly
54. China is.....than any other country in the world.
a) most populated b) more populated c) populated d) as populated

ثانياً الاسئلة الموضوعية التالية (كل سؤال بدرجتان)

Choose the right answers

- A.** 1- It is theadventure novel of the two I have.
a. best b. better c. good d. well
2. Most secondary students speak French.....than they write it
a. fewer b. worse c. fewest d. worst
3. Some people prefer visiting their friends in the afternoon. It ispossible time to visit others.
a. bad b. the worse c. worse d. badly
4. Ola isn't so tall as Nada. Nada is.....
a. shorter b. taller c. younger d. higher
-
- B.** 1. Egypt's.....monuments are the pyramids at Giza.
a. more important b. most important c. the most important d. much more important
2. I'm not keen on football. For me, it is.....important thing.
a. the least b. the most c. the best d. the little
3. Although he is my relative, I.....see him.
a. always b. nearly c. hardly d. usually

4.strong your determination is!

- a. What a b. How c. Such a d. What

C. 1. I'd prefer to play football.....watch TV.

- a. rather b. rather than c. to d. from

2. Huda is.....fatter than her sister.

- a) little b) less c) a bit d) more

3. Basmala is theof the two sisters.

- a) young b) as young as c) youngest d) younger

4- Heba's wearing herdress today.

- a) more new b) newer than c) the newest d) newest

D. 1- Of all the players, I like Mohammad Salah.....

- a. better b. worst c. good d. best

2. We aren't the same height. You're(taller- higher- longer- bigger)than me.

3. Water is the.....expensive, but the most needful, of all liquids.

- a) most b) least c) less d) more

4- The more books she reads.....ignorant she is.

- a. the more b. the less c. the most d. the least

E. 1- This exam seems.....than the previous one; you don't have to worry.

- a. much difficult b. easier c. the easiest d. more difficult

2- The.....fat you eat, the healthier you become.

- a- less b- much c- least d- most

3- I love all my family, but I love my fatherof all.

- a) more b) much c) the most d) most

4. Forinformation , contact the receptionist.

- a) farther b) further c) furthest d) far

F. 1- You were a little depressed yesterday, but you look.....today.

- a) happier b) more happy c) much happy d) happiest

2- Perhaps I looked bad this morning, but she looked

- a) worse b) the worst c) well d) badly

3. Sanaa is the(young- as young as- youngest- younger)of the two sisters.

4- I have two brothers. One is a doctor and the.....is an engineer.

- a. later b. latter c. latest d. late

G. 1. The shorter the queue is, the.....the service is.

- a) fast b) fastest c) faster d) less fast

2. Your car is more expensive than mine. This means.....

- a. My car is cheaper than your. b. My car is as expensive as yours.
c. Your car is not cheaper than mine. d. My car is not as expensive as yours.

3. Ola is a better cook than Nada. This means.....

- a. Nada can't cook as good as Ola. b. Nada isn't a cook as good as Ola.
c. Nada can cook as badly as Ola. d. Nada can't cook as well as Ola.

4. You were a little depressed yesterday, and you look.....today. I sympathise with you.

- a) happier b) more depressed c) much happy d) happiest

Translatin

يجب أن نكون شاكرين لوالدينا لما قدموا لنا من تضحيات على مدى حياتهم.

1. We should not be thankful to our parents for what they have given us of sacrifices over their lives.

2. We should be thank to our parents for what they have given us of sacrifices over their lives.

3. We should be thankful to our parents for what they have given us of sacrifices over their lives.

4. We should be thankful to our parents for what they have give us of sacrifices over their lives.

لقد أصبحت ضرورة ملحة البدء في إنشاء عاصمة جديدة بدلا من القاهرة.

1. It has become an urgent need to begin setting up a new capital instead of Cairo.

2. It have become an urgent need to begin setting up a new capital instead of Cairo.

3.It has become an urgent need to begin setting up a new capital instead of Cairo.

4. It has become an urgent need to begin set up a new capital instead of Cairo.

إن كل دولة في العالم لها الحق في استخدام الطاقة الذرية للأغراض السلمية

1.Each country in the world has the right to use atomic energy for peaceful purposes.

2. Every country in the world has the right to use atomic energy for peaceful purposes.

3. Every country in the world have the right to use atomic energy for peaceful purposes.

4. Every country in the world has the right to using atomic energy for peaceful purposes.

يمكن تجنب الكثير من الأمراض عن طريق اتباع العادات الغذائية السليمة

1.It's not possible to avoid a lot of diseases by following healthy dietary habits.

2.It's possible to avoid a lot of diseases by fallowing healthy dietary habits.

3.It's possible to avoid lot of diseases by following healthy dietary habits.

4.It's possible to avoid a lot of diseases by following healthy dietary habits.

تهدف مؤتمرات السلام الى وضع نهاية للحروب وتحقيق السلام العالمي

1.Peace conferences aims to put an end to wars and achieve the world peace.

2.Peace conferences aim for put an end to wars and achieve the world peace.

3.Peace conferences aim to put an end to wars and achieve the world peaceful.

4.Peace conferences aim to put an end to wars and achieve the world peace.

Translate into Arabic

1 The Egyptian monuments and museums attract millions of tourists from all over the world. We ought to exert more efforts to increase the number of tourists visiting Egypt nowadays.

١. لا تجذب الآثار والمتاحف المصرية ملايين من السياح من جميع أنحاء العالم ويجب أن نبذل مزيداً من الجهود لزيادة عدد السياح هذه الأيام

٢. تجذب الآثار والمتاحف المصرية ملايين من السياح من جميع أنحاء العالم ويجب أن نبذل مزيداً من الجهود لزيادة عدد السياح هذه الأيام

٣. تجذب الآثار والمتاحف المصرية ملايين من السياح من جميع أنحاء العالم ويجب أن نبذل مزيداً من الجهود لزيادة عدد السياح هذه الأيام

٤. تجذب الآثار والمتاحف المصرية ملايين من السياح من جميع أنحاء البلاد ويجب أن نبذل مزيداً من الجهود لزيادة عدد السياح تلك الأيام

2- Many people say that they are too busy to go swimming or to play football. But they don't have to do special exercise to be fit. In this case, walking or even cleaning the house is just as good for them as practicing games.

١. بعض الناس يقولون أهم مشغولون بالسباحة أو لعب كرة السلة ولكن يمارسون التمارين الرياضية تجعلهم لائقين بدنيا وفي هذه الحالة فإن المشي أو حتى تنظيف المنزل يعتبر مفيداً لهم كممارسة الرياضة

٢. بعض الناس يقولون أهم مشغولون بالسباحة أو لعب كرة القدم ولكن لا يمارسون التمارين الرياضية تجعلهم لائقين بدنيا وفي هذه الحالة فإن المشي أو حتى تنظيف المنزل يعتبر مفيداً لهم كممارسة الألعاب

٣. بعض الناس يقولون أهم مشغولون بالسباحة أو لعب كرة السلة ولكن لا يمارسون التمارين الألعاب تجعلهم لائقين بدنيا وفي هذه الحالة فإن المشي أو حتى تنظيف المنزل يعتبر مفيداً لهم كممارسة الرياضة

٤. بعض الناس يقولون أهم مشغولون بالسباحة أو لعب كرة السلة ولكن لا يمارسون التمارين الألعاب تجعلهم لائقين فنيا وفي هذه الحالة فإن المشي أو حتى تنظيف المنزل يعتبر مفيداً لهم كممارسة الألعاب

3. People nowadays need to understand that learning must be lifelong. This is necessary because the world of work is changing very fast. To remain employable, people must always look ahead and learn new knowledge and skills.

١. يحتاج الناس هذه الأيام إلى إدراك أن التعليم يجب أن يكون مدى الحياة وهذا ضرورياً لأن عالم العمل يتغير بسرعة كبيرة ولكي تظل موظفاً يجب أن يبحث العاملون ويتعلموا معرفة ومهارات جديدة.

٢. يحتاج الناس هذه الأيام إلى إدراك أن التعليم يجب أن يكون مدى الحياة وهذا ليس ضرورياً لأن عالم العمل يتغير بسرعة كبيرة ولكي تظل موظفاً يجب أن يبحث العاملون ويتعلموا معرفة ومهارات جديدة.

٣. يحتاج الناس هذه الأيام إلى إدراك أن ثقافتهم يجب أن يكون مدى الحياة وهذا ضرورياً لأن عالم العمل يتغير بسرعة كبيرة ولكي تظل موظفاً يجب أن يبحث العاملون ويتعلموا معرفة ومهارات جديدة.

٤. يحتاج الناس هذه الأيام إلى إدراك أن التعليم يجب أن يكون مدى الحياة وهذا ضرورياً لأن عالم العمل يتغير بسرعة قليلة ولكي تظل موظفاً يجب أن يبحث العاملون ويتعلموا معرفة ومهارات قديمة.

4. Health is a splendid blessing that completes our happiness. It's worthy saying that we can't really enjoy our life if we are unhealthy. Healthy people are always proud of what they can achieve in the fields of sports and hard work. For an unhealthy person life is no more pain and suffering.

١. إن الثروة نعمة جميلة والتي تكمل سعادتنا وهي تستحق القول بأننا لا يمكن أن نستمتع بحياتنا إذا كنا غير أصحاء. فالأصحاء يفخرون بما يحققونه في مجال الرياضة والعمل الشاق فبالنسبة للإنسان المريض الحياة ماهي إلا مجرد الألم ومعاناته

٢. إن الصحة نعمة جميلة والتي تكمل سعادتنا وهي تستحق القول بأننا لا يمكن أن نستمتع بحياتنا إذا كنا غير أصحاء. فالأصحاء يفخرون بما يحققونه في مجال الرياضة والعمل الشاق فبالنسبة للإنسان المريض الحياة ماهي إلا مجرد الألم ومعاناته

٣. إن الصحة نعمة جميلة والتي تكمل سعادتنا وهي تستحق القول بأننا لا يمكن أن نستمتع بحياتنا إذا كنا غير أصحاء. فالأصحاء يفخرون بما يحققونه في مجال الرياضة والعمل السهل فبالنسبة للإنسان المريض الحياة ماهي إلا مجرد الألم ومعاناته

٤. إن الصحة نعمة جميلة والتي تكمل سعادتنا وهي تستحق القول بأننا يمكن أن نستمتع بحياتنا إذا كنا غير أصحاء. فالأصحاء يفخرون بما يحققونه في مجال الرياضة والعمل الشاق فبالنسبة للإنسان المريض الحياة ماهي إلا مجرد الألم وسعاده

5 Education for all. All means men and women, the old and the young, the rich and the poor and the educated and the uneducated in both rural and urban communities. Everyone needs education

suitable for the age, its changes and its requirements so that they may contribute to education and benefit from it throughout their lives

١. التعليم للجميع ونعني للجميع أى للرجال والنساء الكبار والصغار الاغنياء والفقراء المتعلمون وغير المتعلمون فى كل المجتمعات الحضرية والصحراوية . فكل فرد يريد تعليمًا يناسب عمره بمتغيراته ومتطلباته حتى يمكنه أن يسهم فى التعليم ويستفيد منه خلال حياته
٢. التعليم للجميع ونعني للجميع أى للرجال والنساء الكبار والصغار الاغنياء والفقراء المتعلمون وغير المتعلمون فى كل المجتمعات الحضرية والريفية . فكل فرد يريد تعليمًا يناسب عمره بمسئوليته ومتطلباته حتى يمكنه أن يسهم فى التعليم ويستفيد منه خلال حياته
٣. التعليم للجميع ونعني للجميع أى للرجال والنساء الكبار والصغار الاغنياء والفقراء المتعلمون وغير المتعلمون فى كل المجتمعات الحضرية والريفية . فكل فرد يريد تعليمًا يناسب عمره بمتغيراته ومتطلباته حتى يمكنه أن يستفيد من التعليم ويستفيد منه خلال حياته
٤. التعليم للجميع ونعني للجميع أى للرجال والنساء الكبار والصغار الاغنياء والفقراء المتعلمون وغير المتعلمون فى كل المجتمعات الحضرية والريفية . فكل فرد يريد تعليمًا يناسب عمره بمتغيراته ومتطلباته حتى يمكنه أن يسهم فى التعليم ويستفيد منه خلال حياته

Test unit Two

أولا الاسئلة الموضوعية التالية (كل سؤال بدرجة)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(22 Marks)

1. The Egyptian scientists have made great.....to the field of science, especially Ahmad Zewail.
a) participations b) charities c) contributions d) happiness.
2. A..... sports competition involving a number of teams or players.
a. Cup b. tournament c. contribution d) procession
3. Most youth look Mo salah and take him as their role model.
a) up to b) down on c) up with d) in to
4. All of us should try to break bias and prejudices, especially against women.
a) out b) down c) d) into
5. The feminist movements always call for the with men in all aspects of life.
a) equality b) quality c) prejudice d) survival
- 6- "I have absolute confidence in what he says". The synonym of 'confidence' here is
a. trust b. doubt c. negligence d. independence
7. Israel puts obstacles to delay the peace process. The synonym of 'obstacles' here is
a) problems b) beliefs c) traditions d) solutions
8. I for my friend Ali for two hours in the street before he came.
a) waited b) had been waiting c) was waiting d) had waited
9. He a lot to answer the difficult questions till he succeeded .
a) tried b) didn't try c) doesn't try d) had tried
- 10- A deer is not as a cheetah.
a) as fast b) fastest c) faster d) fast

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (ث ع ٢٠١١)

What is love? The writer of "The Chemistry of Love" believes that falling in love is influenced by our brain chemistry. This connection between the way we feel and the way our bodies function is his main concern. Falling in love gives you extra energy. Your heart beats faster and you feel optimistic. Love meets our emotional needs, this makes everything look possible and rosy and we work better. The book says we are programmed at birth to produce endorphins when we are in close relationships. It is nature's way of keeping us together. When the relationship ends - or we are afraid it might end - production of endorphins stops. What is remarkable in a relationship is the newness. You need newness, sharing and growth. The brain has to experience a change which creates excitement. That is why the great romances of literature are never between people who stay together.

11- Why does the world look rosy when you are in love?

- a) As love achieve our mental needs b) As love achieve our romantic needs
- c) As love achieve our passive needs d) As love achieve our intellected needs

12- Endorphins could be the name of a

- a) love story b) chemical substance c) part of the brain d) sort of literature

13- According to the passage, everlasting love

- a) must lead to marriage b) makes you pessimistic
c) uses up a lot of your energy d) is determined by inner chemistry

14- What does the underlined word refer to?

- a) we get together b) we separate c) we are happy d) we are in love

15. Producing endorphins begin when we are.....

- a) dead b) born c) help each other d) get out

16. When a person we love dies , the production of endorphins

- a) increases b) reduces c) decreases d) ends

17- The best title of the passage is

- a) love story b) a chemical substance c) a part of the brain d) brain chemistry.

18. The passage givesreasons for love.

- a) persuasive b) physical c) scientific d) literary

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (8 Marks) (ث ع ٢٠١١)

A scientific principle is often understood long before it is made into an invention. This was the case with the power of steam and steam engines, but not with laser. The word laser stands for Light Amplification by Stimulated Emission of Radiation. Simply laser is a device that produces a very strong light called coherent light or laser beam. The light derived from electric bulbs or the sun - incoherent light - moves in all directions. Laser beam moves in only one direction and is much stronger.

Laser uses are countless. One of its earliest uses was measuring distances and speeds and it was amazingly accurate. For example, the exact speed of light was determined to be 186, 282. 397 miles per second. Now laser is used in the military field, surgery, factories, supermarkets, telephone work, video disc players and so many others. The laser can truly become the light of the 21st century.

19- What does the underlined word 'its' refer to?

- a) invention b) bulb c) laser d) beams

20- Laser light is different from the familiar light as.....

- a) it moves in one or two directions only b) it moves in one direction only
c) it moves in three direction only d) it moves in all direction

21- Laser is used in video disc players to

- a) establish exhibitions b) show pictures on TV
c) record sound waves d) publish magazines

22-is more concentrated than electric light.

- a) Laser beam b) Incoherent light c) Sun beam d) Speed of light

23 One of the uses of laser that not mentioned in the passage is.....

- a) measurements b) treating people c) making cars d) exploring things

24. The opposite of " incoherent "is.....

- a) wild b) puzzling c) connected d) strong

25. Physicians can use laser during doing the

- a) processes b) operations c) plans d) attacks

26. In the past , people used steam to power

- a) rockets b) space ships c) trains d) fridges

ثانياً الاسئلة الموضوعية التالية (كل سؤال بدرجتان)

27.attending the conference, the scientist had prepared his research.

- a) While b) After c) Before d) during

28. A great number of peoplewatched the mummies of the Egyptian kings and queens in the streets of Cairo.

- a) has b) have c) has been d) have been

29- Ahmed is engineer than Hany.

- a) better b) much better c) a much better d) good

30.What is the first sentence of a paragraph called?

- a. The introduction sentence b. The topic sentence

c. The closing sentence

d. The supporting sentence

Choose the right translation:

31. Global trade leads to a big economic growth in different regions all over the world. So, all the world countries aim to develop it greatly.

- ١- التجارة العالمية تؤدي إلى نمو إقتصادي كبير في أقاليم مختلفة في كل أنحاء العالم. لذلك تسعى دول العالم لتنميتها بشكل ضعيف.
- ٢- التجارة العالمية تؤدي إلى نمو إقتصادي كبير في أقاليم مختلفة في كل أنحاء العالم. لذلك تسعى دول العالم لتنميتها بشكل كبير.
- ٣- التجارة العالمية تؤدي إلى نمو إقتصادي محلي في أقاليم مختلفة في كل أنحاء العالم. لذلك تسعى دول العالم لتنميتها بشكل كبير.
- ٤- التجارة العالمية تؤدي إلى نمو إقتصادي كبير في أقاليم مختلفة في كل أنحاء العالم. لذلك لا تسعى دول العالم لتنميتها بشكل كبير.

32. The new traffic law is extremely strict. It aims at protecting the lives of innocent citizens from the recklessness of some drivers. Punishments include imprisonment and paying a lot of money.

- ١- ان قانون المرور الجديد صارم للغاية وهو يهدف الي حماية ارواح المواطنين الابرياء من بعض السائقين وتشمل العقوبات الحبس ودفع غرامات.
- ٢- ان قانون المرور الجديد صارم للغاية وهو يهدف الي حماية ارواح المواطنين الابرياء من تهوور بعض السائقين وتشمل العقوبات الحبس ودفع الكثير من المال كغرامات
- ٣- ان قانون المرور الجديد صارم للغاية وهو يهدف الي حماية المواطنين الاحياء من تهوور بعض السائقين وتشمل العقوبات السجن ودفع النير من المال كغرامات.
- ٤- ان قانون المرور الجديد صارم للغاية وهو يهدف الي حماية المواطنين الاحياء من تهوور بعض السائقين وتشمل العقوبات السجن ودفع الكثير من المال كغرامات

٣٣- يمثل النوم حاجة بشرية للراحة وتنشيط الجسد والعقل يعتقد بعض علماء النفس انه يساهم في التطور العقلي والبدني للأطفال في بداية حياتهم.

a. Sleep is a human need to have rest and refresh the body and mind. Some. Psychologists think that it supports the human mental and physical progress for the children at the beginning of their lives.

b. Sleep was a human need to have a rest and refresh the body and mind. Some. Psychologists thought that it supports the human mental and physical progress for the children at the beginning of their lives.

c. Sleep is a human need to have a job and refresh the body and mend. Some. Psychologists think that it supports the human mental and physical progress for the children at the beginning of their lives.

d. Sleep is a human need to have rest and fish the body and mind. Some. Psychologists think that it supports the human mental and physical progress for the children at the beginning of their lives.

٣٤- جميعنا يعلم اهمية التكنولوجيا الحديثة وانها تلعب دورا فعالا في حياتنا المعاصرة ولكن يجب ان نعلم انها كما تسهم في تقدم المجتمعات فمن الممكن ان تدمرها

a. We all know the importance of modern technology. It plays an effective rule in our modern life, but we should know that as it prevents the progress to the societies, it can destroy them.

b. We all know the importance of modern technology. It play an effective rules in our modern life, but we should know that as it prevents the progress to the societies, it can destroy them.

c. We all know the importance of modern technology. It plays an effective role in our modern life, but we should know that as it contributes to the progress societies, it can destroy them.

d. We all know the importance of modern technology. It played an effective role in our modern life, but we should know that as it prevents the progress to the societies, it can destroy them.

ثالثا الاستثله المقاليه التاليه (كل سؤال بدرجتان)

35. "Then she jumped on me like an eagle on a lamb," said Pip. What did these words reflect about the relationship between Pip and his sister?

36. The house looked unused and most of the doors were closed. Everything was dark inside. Do you think this atmosphere reflected the circumstances Mrs Havisham had lived in? Why?

رابعا الاستثله المقاليه التاليه (اربع درجات)

Write six lines on the following topic:

How to develop our educational system.

Chapter 2

The soldiers ran into the marshes **المستنقعات** and we saw two men. They were fighting and covered in **mud** **طين**. The soldiers pulled them away from each other. In the light of the soldiers' torches **ضوء مشاعل الجنود**, I saw the man that I had helped. I wanted to say, 'I didn't tell the soldiers where to find you,' but all I could do was shake my head. **هز رأسي** He gave me a long, strange look which I will never forget. 'I have something to say,' he said. 'It was me. I stole the food from the blacksmith's house this morning.' He looked at **Joe** and added, 'I'm sorry that I ate your meat pie.' 'You're welcome. We don't want you to be hungry,' **Joe** replied kindly. The man turned away. Then he was taken to a boat nearby which took him to the black prison ship **سفينة السجن**, far out on the marshes. We watched as he climbed back onto the ship in the distance **على مسافة** and disappeared **اختفى**. At that moment, the torches went out.

A year passed. I worked every day, helping neighbours with small jobs, but in the evening I went to the village school. The old lady who taught me often fell asleep, leaving her grand-daughter, **Biddy**, to show me how to read and write.

One night, **Joe** saw me sitting by the fire **بجانب المدفأة**, as I was practising my writing. 'You know, **Pip**, you are very clever!' he said. 'Did you never go to school, **Joe**?' I asked. 'No, **Pip**,' he replied. 'My father didn't let me go, but he had a good heart **طيب القلب**. He taught me to be a blacksmith. And after he died, I met your sister. She's a fine woman.' I looked into the fire **النار**. 'I'm glad you think so, **Joe**,' I said at last. 'I wish she wouldn't hit you, though,' **Joe** said. 'I would rather she hit me than you! We'll always be best friends, won't we, **Pip**?' Just then Mrs **Joe** came in.

'If this boy **isn't** grateful to **شاكر -ممتن** me now, he will never be!' she said. I tried to look grateful, but I didn't understand what Mrs Joe meant. 'Miss **Havisham** wants **Pip** to go to her house,' she said. 'And he must go, or I will make him work hard here!' Everyone in the village had heard of Miss **Havisham**; she was a very rich lady who lived in the nearest town. However, most people had never seen her because she never left her large, old house. 'So how does she know **Pip**?' **Joe** asked. 'She doesn't know **Pip**. Uncle **Pumblechook** visited her, and she asked him if he knew a boy who would go there to play with a child who lives there,' Mrs **Joe** replied. 'The boy will make his fortune by going to Miss **Havisham**'s house, and he's going there tomorrow!' Then **she jumped on me, like an eagle on a lamb**. **مثل نسر على حمل صغير**. I was washed very well that night. Uncle **Pumblechook** took me to Miss **Havisham**'s house in my best clothes, the next day. We waited at the gate **بوابة** until a very pretty, but proud, young girl appeared.

'This is **Pip**,' said Mr **Pumblechook**. 'Come in, **Pip**,' she said, opening the gate. Uncle **Pumblechook** was not invited in so I left him at the gate. I followed the girl through an untidy garden **حديقة غير مرتبة**. The house looked unused and most of the doors were closed. Everything was dark inside, and we went upstairs with a candle **بشمعة**.

The girl left me at a door, telling me to enter. Inside was a dressing room lit by candles. **مضاءة بالشموع**; the curtains **الستائر** were closed, so no daylight could enter. And then I saw her: the strangest lady I had ever seen, or would ever see. She was dressed completely in white, with a long white **veil** **حجاب** and flowers in her hair. But her hair was white, the flowers were dead, and the white dress was now yellow with age. I saw a bride **عروسة** in a wedding dress **فستان زفاف**, but everything about her was old and sad. 'Let me look at you,' she said. As I stood before her, I noticed that the clock had stopped at twenty to nine.

'Do you know what I have here?' the lady continued, her hands on her heart. 'Yes, madam.' I replied. 'It's your heart.' 'A broken heart' **قلب محطم** she said. Then after a moment, she added, 'I am tired, and I am bored. Play!'

I wondered what game I could play, so I replied that I could not play alone 'Call **Estella**!' the old lady said. When **Estella** entered, I saw that she was the girl who had let me in. Now she was told to play with me.

'But he is just a **poor** working boy!' she complained. Miss **Havisham** said something to her. I could not hear clearly **بوضوح**, but I thought she said, 'Well? You can break his heart.'

And so **Estella** and I played games while Miss **Havisham** watched silently.

'What dirty hands you have!' **Estella** said, unkindly. 'And what ugly boots!' **الأحذية القبيحة** I was ashamed. Finally, Miss **Havisham** called me to her side.

'What do you think of her?' she asked, looking at **Estella**.

'I think she is very proud. And very pretty. And very rude **وقحه**,' I said. 'I would like to go now, please.' Miss **Havisham** made me promise to come back in six days. Then **Estella** led me back through the dark house and out into the garden. Before I left, **Estella** gave me some food and drink, but did not hand it to me. Instead, she put it on the ground. Tears came to my eyes. When she saw that I was crying, she smiled.

I returned home, hurt and ashamed of **مكسوف من** my simple life. In the kitchen, Mrs **Joe** and Uncle **Pumblechook** were waiting for me. They wanted to know what had happened, but I didn't want to tell them the truth **الحقيقة**. Later, when I was alone with **Joe**, I told him everything. I said that the beautiful girl at Miss **Havisham**'s house had said I was common, and that I felt ashamed. **Joe** told me to be happy with my position **مكانتي** in life, but I could not forget what had happened. I knew that this was the beginning of something that would change the rest of my life. I decided to learn as much as I could at the village school. If I had a better education, perhaps **Estella** would be kinder. Two days later, I asked **Biddy** if she would help me more with my lessons, and she happily agreed. The village school was very busy and noisy, but when I left it that evening I hoped that with hard work, I would one day leave my simple life behind and become a fine gentleman.

On my way home, I met **Joe** at the village inn. He was sitting with a man I had not met before. He looked at me strangely. 'It's bad weather tonight,' **Joe** said. 'The mist is so thick, you wouldn't know there was a prison ship out there on the marshes!' 'Oh, is there?' asked the man. 'I don't know this area. It seems very lonely out on those marshes. 'Marshes are always lonely,' replied **Joe**. 'Perhaps you're right,' said the man. The man then asked if any escaped convicts had been found recently, and I began to feel uncomfortable. Then the man stirred his cup of tea, and I saw that he was using a blacksmith's file. It was the same file that I had taken from **Joe's** workshop a year ago! But **Joe** did not notice.

Chapter two

1. What do you think might have happened if Joe had gone to school?

- He wouldn't have worked as a blacksmith.
- He might have become a gentleman.
- He wouldn't have married Pip's sister.

2. If you were in Pip's place, would you make friends with Joe? Why?

- Yes, because he treats me well and I trust him.

3. "**Then she jumped on me like an eagle on a lamb**," said Pip. What did these words reflect about the relationship between Pip and his sister?

- She doesn't treat her brother well. She had never wished to look after him. Pip probably doesn't like her.

4. **The house looked unused and most of the doors were closed. Everything was dark inside.** Do you think this atmosphere reflected the circumstances Mrs Havisham had lived in? Why?

- Yes, as she herself was depressed and never wanted to deal with others after her fiancé had left her on her wedding day.

5. "As I stood before her, I noticed that the clock had stopped at nine." What do you think the stoppage of the clock indicates?

- It indicates the stoppage of her life itself as she was shocked to discover that her fiancé had left her on her wedding day.

6. Do you think Mrs Havisham was right to let Estella break Pip's heart? Why?

- Yes, she wanted to take revenge of all men and break their hearts.

- No, Pip wasn't the one that wronged her. He didn't hurt her. She should have taken revenge of her fiancé who had tricked her into giving him most of her money.

7. Why do you think Estella didn't hand Pip the food but instead put it on the ground?

- She wasn't a kind-hearted girl. She wanted to break his heart. She thought that his hands were dirty.

8. If you were Pip, would you feel ashamed of being poor or common? Why?

- Yes, as I love Estella and I think that she treats me badly just because I'm poor.

- No, I shouldn't be ashamed of my poverty as I am not a thief or a criminal. I might work hard to achieve my goals.

9. Would you try to get a better education if you were Pip, just to make Estella change her attitude towards you? Why?

- Yes, Getting a better education would change my social status. This would make Estella change her attitude towards me.

10. Should Pip have been on good terms with Mrs Joe? Why?

- No, because she isn't kind to him. She always punishes him whenever he makes mistakes. She wished she hadn't looked after him after their parent's had died.

11- Why do you think the convict gave Pip a long, strange look which he would never forget?

- As he wanted to thank him as he helped him when he got him the food and the file.

12- Although pip was young, he was kind. Give two examples.

a. He helped the convict as he felt sorry for him. b- He used to help his neighbours with small jobs.

13- Why do you think Miss Havisham wore a wedding dress?

- Because she had never recovered from not getting married as her fiancé deceived her and left her on the day of marriage.

14- Why do you think that Pip felt ashamed of himself after meeting Estella?

- As she made him feel he was so poor and dirty. She didn't want to give him the food in his hand and put it on the ground. She described him as "common".

16- The visit to Miss Havisham's house was a turning point in Pip's life. Explain.

- In Miss Havisham's house, he was treated rudely by Estella which made him feel ashamed of himself as he was poor. He wanted to change his life to the better, so he began to learn at the village school to be a good gentleman one day. He decided that he didn't want to be a blacksmith.

17- Do you think the man Pip met in the inn knew more than he pretended?

- He was strange due to the questions he asked, and the file he stirred and the way he looked at Pip and the way he asked about escaped convicts made Pip feel he knew more..

18. Why do you think tears came to Pip's eyes in Miss Havisham's house?

- As Estella thought he was dirty and common and didn't give him the food in his hand and put it on the ground. He felt that he was too poor.

19. Why do you think Estella smiled when pip cried?

- As she wanted him to feel that he was less than her.

20- According to Pip, what might change Estelle's attitude towards him?

- Having a better education and becoming a fine gentlemen.

21. Why do you think the man in the inn had a blacksmith's file?

- To tell Joe that he knew that he helped the convict and he wanted to reward him.

22. "I'd rather she hit me than you!" What does this tell you about Joe's personality?

- This tells us that he is a kind man and loves pip so much.

23. Estella described Pip as being "common". Why does she do this?

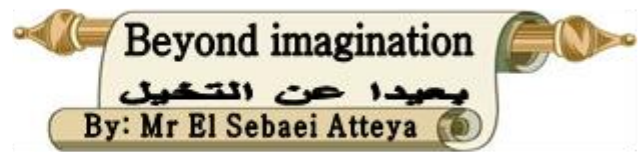
- as she wants him feel he was less than her . she was proud.

24- " Estella is cold and cruel." Elaborate.

- Estella is rude to Pip when she first meets him. She smiles when her unkind behaviour makes Pip cry.

Unit Three

Vocabulary



Key vocabulary

approach	منهج - أسلوب - يقترب	mass-produced	منتج بالجملة	mass-produce	ينتج بالجملة
astronaut	راشد فضاء	implement	ينفذ	spectacularly(adv)	بصوره مذهله
astronomer	عالم فلك	inconvenient	غير ملائم	spectacular (adj)	مذهل - جميل
planet	كوكب	surround	يحيط ب - احاطه	universe	الكون
sensor	مجس	surround sound	الصوت المحسم	spacecraft	سفينة فضاء
experiment	تجربه - يجري تجريبه	innovation	ابتداع - ابتكار	speaker	سماعه
immerse in-into	يغمر - يدمج - يحيط	surface	سطح	surgery(n)	جراحه
immersive	مبهر - جميل جدا	process	عملية طبيعيه - صناعيه	surgical(adj)	جراحي
drug	دواء - عقار	record	سجل - يسجل	solar system	نظام شمسي
surgeon	جراح	treatment	علاج	do (perform) operations	يجري عمليات جراحيه
on a bigger scale	على نطاق أكبر	on the whole	على العموم		
on balance	أجماًلا / بشكل عام	on average	في المتوسط		
on the other hand	من جهة أخرى	due to be done	متوقع القيام به		
on one hand	من جهة	below (above) average	اقل (أزيد) من المتوسط		

Definitions

astronaut	someone who travels and works in a spacecraft	راشد فضاء
astronomer	a scientist who studies the stars and planets	عالم فلك
planet	a very large round object in space that moves around the sun or another star.	كوكب
solar system	it means the sun and the planets that go around it	النظام الشمسي
spacecraft	a vehicle that is able to travel in space	مركبه فضاء
surface	the top layer of an area of water or land	سطح
universe	it is all the space including all the stars and planets.	الكون
drugs	medicines or things that make medicines	ادويه - عقاقير
operation	when doctors cut open your body to help repair it or remove something that is damaged	عملية
records	information about something that is written down or stored on computer, film etc so that it can be looked at in the future.	سجلات
sensor	a piece of equipment finding or measuring light, heat, sound etc.	مجس
apprentice	someone works for an employer for a fixed period to learn a job	صبي - متدرب
apprenticeship	the job or the period of being apprentice .	تدريب مهني
surgeon	a special doctor who is trained to cut open people to make them better	جراح
surgery	medical treatment in which a surgeon cuts open your body to repair or remove something inside	جراحه
treatment	something to try and make you feel better after an injury or when you are ill	علاج

robot	right or acceptable for a particular situation.	انسان الي
mass-produced	made cheaply and in large numbers with a machine	انتاج ضخم
process	method of producing something	عملية
experiment (v)	use scientific methods to find something out or discover something	يعمل تجربته
speaker	device through which sound is heard	سماعة
implement	start using a system	ينفذ
immerse	involve yourself deeply in	ينغمس في
approach	way of viewing or doing something	اسلوب - نهج
surround	be all round (someone or something)	يحيط
argument	A situation in which two or more people disagree with ,often angrily	جدال
spectacularly	extremely good, exciting or surprising	بطريقه مذهله
inconvenient	causing difficulty or problems	غير ملائم
Surround sound	a system that uses 3 or more speakers to make you feel like you are 'surrounded' by sound	صوت مجسم

Quickly – Quickly- Quickly Test yourself

Choose the right answers:

- means it may cause difficulty or problems.
a. Illustrated b. Inconvenient c. Mass-produced d. Essential
- To is to be all round someone or something.
a. experiment b. surround c. implement d. immerse
- To is to start using a system.
a. experiment b. surround c. implement d. immerse
- means in an extremely good, exciting or surprising way.
a. Extremely b. Hopefully c. Potentially d. Spectacularly
- A is the outside or top layer of something.
a. surface b. planet c. universe d. solar system
- A/An is a way of viewing or doing something.
a. spacecraft b. approach c. process d. innovation
- The is the Sun and the planets that go around it.
a. spacecraft b. planet c. universe d. solar system
- A/An is a method of producing something.
a. spacecraft b. approach c. process d. innovation
- A/An is someone who travels and works in a spacecraft.
a. astronomer b. astronaut c. speaker d. extremist
- To is to use scientific methods to find something out or discover something.
a. experiment b. surround c. implement d. immerse
- The is all space, including all the stars and planets.
a. spacecraft b. planet c. universe d. solar system
- A/An is a vehicle that is able to travel in space.
a. spacecraft b. approach c. process d. innovation
- A/An is a device through which sound is heard.
a. astronomer b. astronaut c. speaker d. extremist
- To is to become or make somebody completely involved in something.
a. experiment b. surround c. implement d. immerse

15- A is a very large round object in space that moves around the Sun or another star.

- a. surface b. planet c. universe d. solar system

16- means made cheaply and in large numbers with a machine.

- a. Illustrated b. Inconvenient c. Mass-produced d. Essential

17- requires at least three speakers.

- a. Innovation b. 3-D c. Solar system d. Surround sound

18- I promise to all the tips you have given me.

- a. surround b. innovate c. implement d. immerse

19- We will solve all our problems only if we encourage in all fields of life.

- a. advice b. application c. innovation d. T-ring

20. This year is a/an successful year. I set up a company and became a businessman.

- a. sadly b. unfortunately c. hopefully d. spectacularly

Lesson one and two

advance	تقدم - يتقدم	application	تطبيق	expand	يتوسع
involve	يشتمل علي	hacker	قرصان نت	issue	قضية
addicted to+ ing	مدمن	recycle	يعيد استخدام	illustrated book	كتاب مصور
addict	يدمن - مدمن	audio	صوتي	balance	توازن
addiction	ادمان	practise + ing	يمارس	compete	يتنافس
advertise	يعلن	constantly	بشكل مستمر	monitor	يراقب
advertisement	إعلان	essential	لازم	competitive	تنافسي
adverts	إعلانات	exist	يوجد	extreme	شديد
hidden	مخفي	conquer	يغزو	create	يخلق - يبدع
Celsius	مئوية	imagine	يتخيل	introduce	يقدم
data	بيانات	director	مدير	Dolby Stereo	نظام صوتي مجسم
likely	من المحتمل	liquid	سائل	local	محلي
method	طريقة	minus	سالب	packaging	التغليف - التغليف
paper-thin	سمك الورقة	permanent	دائم	potentially	من المحتمل
practical	عملي	predict	يتنبأ	printing	طباعة
quality	جوده - صفه	require	يتطلب	roll	لفه
science fiction	خيال علمي	space	فضاء	step	خطوة
survive	ينجو - يبقى حي	system	نظام	support (boost)	يؤيد - يساند
technology	تكنولوجيا	a teen	مراهق	temperature	درجه حراره
tin	عليه	curiousteen	مراهق فضولي	director	مدير
totally	كليا - تماما	curious	فضولي	visuals	بصريات
display	يعرض - عرض	fantasia	لحن	popular	محبوب
cycle lane	ممر - حاره العجل	fantasia	جماح-خيال- شغف	cancel	يلغي
explore	يستكشف	fantasound	صوت خيالي	college	كلية
shape	شكل	powerful	قوي	square	مربع
innovative	مبدع	apps	تطبيقات	constant	دائم

Lesson 3 & 4 and 5

technology	تكنولوجيا	war	الحرب	degree	درجة علمية
experience	تجربه	hide (hid) (hidden)	يخفي	nature	طبيعته
medicine	دواء - طب	types	انواع	flat	شقه
methods	طرق - مناهج	train	يدرّب - قطار	treatment (cure)	علاج
audience	جمهور - مشاهدون	trainer	مدرب	bake	يخبز
device (set)	جهاز	trainee	متدرب	impact (effect) on	تأثير
view	منظر - رأي - رؤية - مشهد	rather than	بدلا من - أفضل	pieces	قطع
difficulty	صعوبه	sheet	فرخ ورق - ملايه	lend	يسلف
cheap	رخيص	T-ring	ربّين	earth	الارض

robot	انسان الى	price	ثمن	(do-perform) tasks	مهام
global	عالمي	predict	يتنبأ	major (main) (basic)	رئيسي - اساسي
conversation	محادثه	theatre	مسرح	remove	يزيل
conditions	ظروف - شروط	real	حقيقي	injury	اصابه
hopeful	به امل	screen	شاشه	experts (on-in-at)	خبراء
scale	نطاق - تقدير	replace	يستبدل	Artificial Intelligence	الذكاء الصناعي
website	موقع	go down	يهبط - ينزل	decades	عقود
self-driving	القيادة الذاتية	step	يخطو - خطوة	assistants	مساعدين
global warming	الاحتباس الحراري	organisation	منظمه	(on)business	عمل - شركه
make comments	تعليقات	obvious	واضح	forms	اشكال
calculator	اله حاسبه	register	يسجل - سجل	skills	مهارات
disasters	كوارث	expressions	تعبيرات	Mars	المريخ
earthquake	زلزال	(do)harm	اذي	blog	مدونه
security	امن	environment	البيئه	search (look) for	يبحث عن
evidence	دليل	distances	مسافات	charge	يشحن
record	تسجيل - يسجل	benefit	فائده - يستفيد	fitness	لياقه
health care	رعايه صحيه	recognise	يتعرف على	cancel	يؤجل
advanced	متقدم	on balance	أجمالاً / بشكل عام	gamer	لاعب
case	قضيئه - حاله	complicated	معقد	dishwashers	غساله اطباق
marsh	مسيره	depend on-rely on	يعتمد على	safety	امان
accuracy	اتقان	extreme	قاسي - شديد	escape	يهرب
autonomously	بشكل	consultant	مستشار	individuals	افراد
carry out	ينفذ	dramatically	بشكل كبير	stairs	سلالم
diabetes	مرض السكر	emphasis	تاكيد	diseases	امراض
empathy	تعاطف	handle	يتعامل مع	log in	يدخل على الانترنت
opportunity	فرصه	wrap	يلف	reply	يجيب - رد
transform	يحول	inn	حانه	fuel	وقود - ينفول
throw away	يرمي بعيدا	last	يدوم	design	يصمم - تصميم
measure	يقيس	terrible	فظيع	equipment	معدات
gloomy	كئيب	pale skin	جلد شاحب	apprentice	صبي
behave yourself	احسن التصرف	fair hair	شعر أشقر	apprenticeship	تلمذة / صناعه
spider's web	نسيج عنكبوت	dusty	مترب	argument	جدال
knee	ركبه	pretty	جميلة	a pile	كوم

Expressions

as far back as	الي الوراء بقدر	play a positive role in	يلعب دور ايجابي في
takeapproach	يتبنى اسلوب	a film in 3-D.	فيلم ثلاثي الابعاد
in fact = in truth = actually	في الحقيقه	as a result of + اسم (v+ing)	كنتيجة
advanced warning systems	انظمه تحذير	مصدر to مفعول	يسمح
instead of	بدلا من	finished reading	ينتهي من قراءه
cut open patients' bodies	يجري جراحه	pass his driving test	ينجح في امتحان
make noises	يعمل ضوضاء	a piece of equipment	واحد من المعدات
a printing process	عملية الطباعة	measure light, heat, sound	يقيس الضوء- الحرارة
play music	يعرف موسيقي	self-driving cars	عربات ذاتيه
at a competitive price	بسعر تنافسي	communicate in any language	يتصل بأي لغة
on bottles	على الزجاجات	electric cars	عربات كهربائيه
successful at	ناجح في	run out of oil	ينفذ منه البنزين
look after = take care of = care for	يعتني بـ	have a degree in	لديه درجة علمية
care for	يعتني بـ (شخص	in detail	بالتفصيل
a 360-degree paper speaker	سماعه ذو ٣٦٠ درجه	stay healthy	يبقى بصحه جيده
care about	(يهتم بـ / شئ / موضوع	popular with	مشهور لدي / محبوب من
appeal to	يروق لـ - يُعجب	make flights	يقوم برحلات جوية
science fiction films	أفلام الخيال	burning questions	اسئله ملحه

sum up	باختصار	keep using	يواظب علي
special speakers	سماعات خاصه	computer hackers	مقرصني الكمبيوتر
a special process	عملية خاصه	find some evidence	يجد بعض الادله
special square cinemas,	سينمات مربعه خاصه	on the website	علي الموقع
in addition	بالاضافه الي	in groups	في مجموعات
experiment with	يجرب ب - مع	extreme temperature	درجه حراره شديده
in seats	في مقاعد	do some research	يعمل بحث
make films	يعمل فيلم	create opportunities	يخلق فرص
get on well	يتوافق مع	work out problems	يحل مسائل
warn about	يحذر بخصوص	a large, dark-haired man	رجل ضخم ذو شعر اسود
discover new cures	يكتشف علاج جديد	make predictions	يتنبأ
mean throwing away	يعني يلقي بعيدا	be connected to the net	متصل بالنت
keep in touch with	يكون علي اتصال مع	the latest phone	احدث تليفون
surrounded by	محيط ب	find out about	يكتشف بخصوص
that's your lot	هذا يعني لك الكثير	life forms	أشكال الحياة
false teeth	أسنان صناعية	security and safety	الأمن والأمان
provide شيء for	يقدم لـ	artificial limbs	أطراف صناعية
provide شخص with	يزود بـ	advantages / merits/ pros	مزايا
I couldn't put my finger on	لم أفهم ما هو	disadvantages / demerits/ cons	عيوب

Be honest , don't look at the table

Quickly – Quickly- Quickly Test yourself

Choose the correct answers:

1- Last night, I watched a film 3-D.

a. on b. for c. in d. of

2- Do you think it is right to let your son experiment different hair-cuts.

a. with b. of c. from d. about

3- The beginning of television in Egypt goes as back as the 1960s.

a. young b. old c. long d. far

4- The visuals have immersed the viewers the film.

a. on b. into c. of d. up

5- temperatures are either very high or extremely low.

a. Extreme b. Hot c. Cold d. Freezing

6- This type of mobiles is sold a competitive price on your website.

a. off b. on c. at d. from

7- average, I drink three coffees a day.

a. With b. At c. Of d. On

8- A T-ring is a 360-..... paper speaker.

a . degree b. a degree c. degrees d. degrees'

9- "I have a question". This means I have a question I need very much to get an answer to.

a. freezing b. frozen c. burning d. burnt

10- He is a different approach to that of most scientists.

a. taking b. playing c. making d. doing

11- Mr Ammar taught us how to music.

a. do b. get c. introduce d. play

12- The operation Dr Ahmed had saved the life of a 10-year-old child.

a. done b. performed c. carried out d. a, b & c

13- Modern technology some negative effects.

a. has b. uses c. cuts d. does

14- Serious damage was to the building by the earthquake.

a. done b. performed c. caused d. a , c & b

15- New cures for diseases are by scientists every day.

a. become b. solved c. discovered d. stayed

16- green technology helps nature.

a. Making b. Using c. Cutting d. Doing

17- It was so complicated a problem that I couldn't it on my own.

a. work out b. solve c. discover d. a & b

18- The task has perfectly been

a. done b. performed c. a & b d. caused

19- A surgeon has to open patients' bodies to save their lives.

a. have b. use c. cut d. do

20- Building new factories job opportunities for citizens.

a. performs b. creates c. does d. monitors

21- Don't leave your children playing computer games for long or they will becometo it.

a. keen b. interested c. fond d.addicted

22. Scientistsa lot of research to discover new effective medicines for fatal diseases.

a. make b. discover c. do d. carry on

23. We should in touch with all our relatives as we need to support each other.

a. lose b. miss c. support d. keep

25. We should people to use.....cars to reduce pollution.

a. electrical b. electric c. agricultural d. cultural

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
create	يخلق - يبدع	creation-creator	خلق - الخالق	creative	مبدع
innovate	يبدع	Innovate - Innovation	إبداع	innovated	مبدع
compete	ينافس	competiton	منافسة	competitive	تنافسي
produce	ينتج	Production- producer	إنتاج - منتج	productive	إنتاجي
immerse	ينغمس في	immersion	انغماس	immersed	منغمس
surround	يحيط ب	surround	احاطه	surrounding	محيط ب
approach	يقترب من	approach	اقتراب - نهج	approachable	قابل للاقترب منه
predict	يتنبأ	prediction	تنبؤ	predictable	يمكن التنبؤ به
design	يصمم	design- designer	يصمم - تصميم	designed	تم تصميمه
popularise	يروج	popularity	شعبية	popular	شعبي
develop	يطور	development	تنمية - تطوير	Developing- developed	متطور - نامي
train	يدرّب	trainer - trainee	مدرب - متدرب	trained	متدرب
advertise	يعلن	advertisement	إعلان	advertisable	قابل للنصح
succeed	ينجح	success	نجاح	successful	ناجح
practise	يمارس	practice	تدريب	practical	عملي
exist	يوجد	existence	وجود	existent	موجود
conquer	يغزو	conqueror	غازي	conquering	غازي
treat	يعالج	treatment	علاج	treatable	قابل للعلاج
summarise	يلخص	summary	ملخص		
explore	يستكشف	exploration	استكشاف	explored	مستكشف
measure	يقيس	measurement	قياس	measured	تم قياسه
assist	يساعد	assistant- assistance	مساعد- مساعدة	assistant	مساعد

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonyms	Antonyms	Meaning
convenient	ملائم	suitable – appropriate - proper	inconvenient	غير ملائم
practical	عملي	feasible - pragmatic	impractical	غير عملي

essential	لازم	necessary - obligatory	inessential	غير لازم
conquer	يغلب - يهزم - يتغلب علي	defeat- overcome -beat - get over	surrender - assist- lose to	يستسلم- يساعد
approach	اسلوب- نهج	attitude -method- technique	unpopular- unknown	غير معروف
traditional	تقليدي	conventional - classic - imitative	nontraditional	حديث
implement	ينفذ - يجري	carry out- perform -do -start doing	cancel – give up- exempt	يلغي - يؤجل
gloomy	كئيب	dull – dark – dim- miserable	bright –cheerful- pleasant	لامع - مرح
spectacularly	بشكل رائع	amazingly – stunning -extraordinary	badly – poorly	بشكل سيء - يقدم
innovation	ابداع	creativity	tradition imitating	تقليد
require	يتطلب	need –desire	dislike - refuse	يرفض
survive	ينجو	remain- last	die	يموت
permanent	دائم	lasting- constant- continuous	Temporary-tentative	مؤقت
totally	كلياً- تماماً	entirely - absolutely	incompletely – partially	جزئياً
complicated	معقد	complex - difficult	easy- simple	سهل - بسيط
intelligence	ذكاء	wisdom - wit	foolishness - stupidity	غباء - حماقة
immerse	ينغمس في	involve-engage	reject	
monitor	يراقب	control - observe	neglect	يهمل
perform	يؤدي	do- carry out- accomplish	avoid-forget	يتجنب - ينسى
benefit	فائدة	advantage- profit	disadvantage- harm	عيب - ضرر
task	مهمة	duty –work -mission		
safety	امان	security – protection	danger - risk	خطر
curious	فضولي	interested –nosy	unconcerned	غير مهتم
artificial	صناعي	synthetic – made up – fabricated - invented	natural	طبيعي

Be honest , don't look at the table

Quickly – Quickly- Quickly Test yourself

Synonyms and antonyms

Choose the correct word from a, b, c or d :

1- "The artificial intelligence is used in all fields of life". The synonym of 'artificial' is

- a. natural b. invented c. safe d. genuine

2- This problem is complicated . We can't answer it. The antonym of 'complicated' is

- a. complex b. clear c. easy d. spectacular

3- "We all like to live in safety". In this utterance. 'safety' is antonymous with

- a. security b. risk c. dangerous d. difficult

4- "I'm following a new approach to solve my problems". In this context, 'approach' is a synonym of

- a. leave b. go near c. attitude d. proposal

5- "You need to conquer your fear". In this sentence, the antonym of 'conquer' is

- a. overcome b. beat c. defeat d. yield to

6. "He tricks customers with his artificial kindness". In this sentence, 'artificial' is an antonym for
- a. natural b. unnatural c. pretended d. genuine
- 7- Your suggestion requires some precautions. The opposite of "require" is
- a) demands b) needs c) offers d) asks
8. There was a spectacular sunrise yesterday. The antonym to the word 'spectacular' is
- a. phenomenal b. extraordinary c. invaluable d. unimpressive
9. Most husbands immerse in working hard to feed their families. The synonym of 'immerse' is
- a. soak b. involve c. contain d. avoid
10. The government will implement new measures to reduce prices. The synonym of 'implement' is
- a. finish using b. stop using c. avoid using d. start using
11. The phrasal verb 'depend on' is synonymous with
- a. rely on b. focus on c. insist on d. operate on
12. The benefits of technology are obvious. The antonym of 'benefits' here is
- a. advantages b. drawbacks c. upsides d. merits
13. 'On the whole' could best be replaced by
- a. interestingly b. particularly c. generally d. specifically
14. There is essential work to be done. The opposite of 'essential' is
- a. unimportant b. unacceptable c. unaffected d. unannounced
15. It was a gloomy room that was poorly lit by oil lamps. "Gloomy" is an antonym for
- a. pleasant b. dull c. depressing d. pleased
16. Archaeologists implemented the evacuation plan well. "Implement" here has the meaning of "....."
- a) put off b) carry out c) count on d) aim at
17. Scientists have discovered permanent liquid water on Mars. "Permanent" is an antonym for
- a) renewable b) temporary c) continuous d) everlasting
18. On the whole, I think that technology is a double-edged weapon. "On the whole" is similar in meaning to
- a) on purpose b) on duty c) in general d) in particular
19. It's really inconvenient that the store closes so early on weekends. The word "inconvenient" can be replaced by
- a. suitable b. troublesome c. convenient d. constant
20. She changed her approach after getting feedback from her manager. The word "approach" is a synonym for "....."
- a. technology b. necklace c. technique d. impact
21. The pharmacy was out of the drug I needed. "drug" is a synonym for
- a. toxin b. poison c. medicine d. illness
22. She has a high level of intelligence. The antonym of "intelligence" is
- a. intellect b. stupidity c. brilliance d. smartness

~~~~~

## **Language Notes**

### **1- make (مفعول) + مصدر**

- The strict teacher **makes** his students **respect** him.

**make (مفعول) + صفة**

- Your success **makes** me happy.

### **be made (مجهول)**

- I was made **(to go - go)** to school as there was an important exam. (to في المجهول تأخذ)

- **allow** + مفعول + **to** + المصدر                      \* **allow** + ing + الفعل + مفعول بدون مفعول \* **let** + مفعول + **to** + مصدر بدون

- He didn't **allow** them **to smoke**.    - He didn't **allow smoking**.    - He didn't **let** them **smoke**.

### **Test yourself**

1- Ali was made (do - to do -doing- have done) his homework again.

2. The teacher made Ali (do - to do -doing- have done) his homework again.

3. The teacher allowed the sick student ( leave- to leave- leaving- leaves) the room.  
 4. The sick student was allowed ( leave- to leave- leaving- leaves) the room.  
 5. Our teacher doesn't allow ( to laugh- laugh- laughing- laughs) during the lesson.

## 2- too.....to

جدا للدرجة أن لا ( نفي) مصدر to ..... (صفة / ظرف) -too ..... فعل + فاعل 1-

- 'Surround sound' was **too expensive to implement** on a big scale
- The test was **too difficult to answer**.
- He speaks **too quietly to hear**

جدا للدرجة أن جملة نتيجة ( فعل + فاعل ) ..... that (صفة / ظرف) so ..... فعل + فاعل B

- 1- The boy was **so clever that** he got high marks.  
 2- The play **was so good that** I watched it all.

جدا للدرجة أن جملة نتيجة that ..... (اسم جمع / مفرد / اسم لا يعد) + صفة such ..... فعل + فاعل C

- 1- She is **such a tall girl that** she claimed the tree easily  
 2- It is **such expensive furniture that** we can't buy it.  
 3- They are **such clever players that** they can beat any other team.

بدرجه كافيه فعل في مصدر + enough to (صفة / ظرف) + فعل + فاعل D.

- 1- He is **clever enough to succeed** easily.  
 2. He **ran quickly enough to** catch the train.  
 3- He isn't **fast enough to** win the race.

## Test yourself

- 1- They are ..... long questions that we don't have time to answer them all.  
 a such a                      b so                      c enough                      d such  
 2. This book is ..... famous that nearly everyone has read it.  
 a) very                      b) quite                      c) so                      d) such  
 3. The phone is ..... for her to buy. She doesn't have enough money.  
 a) expensive enough                      b) too expensive                      c) so expensive                      d) such an expensive  
 4. It is ..... big car that all the family can travel in it.  
 a) so                      b) such                      c) enough                      d) such a  
 5. Ahmed thinks that it is ..... hot to play tennis in the park today.  
 a) so                      b) such                      c) enough                      d) too  
 6- This soup is ..... hot to eat.  
 a such                      b enough                      c so                      d too  
 7- The question is ..... for the little boy to answer.  
 a such difficult                      b difficult enough                      c so difficult                      d too difficult  
 8- It's ..... an amazing play that you can't miss it.  
 a such                      b enough                      c so                      d too  
 9. It is too dangerous ..... that mountain.  
 a) climb                      b) climbs                      c) climbing                      d) to climb  
 10- The stadium is big ..... to hold 50,000 spectators  
 a such                      b enough                      c so                      d too

## 3- ALL

١- يأتي بعد (all) اسم مفرد لا يعد أو اسم جمع و تشير إلى المجموعة ككل و بوجه عام.

- **All cheese** is good.

٢- الفعل بعد (all) مفرد أو جمع علي حسب الاسم الذي يأتي بعدها.

- All **water** in the fridge **was drunk**.

- All my **friends are** helpful.

٣- إذا جاءت (the) أو (صفة ملكية) أو صفة إشارة بعد (all)، يمكن أن نضع بينهما (of) و تشير إلى اسم محدد.

- **All of the birds** flew away.

- I've invited **all my friends** to the party.

- I like all my friends.

## - whole

- He ate **the whole cake**

I spent **a whole day** on the beach

**A whole new approach** has been developed by scientists at a university in Germany.

( كل الشيء ) كامل ( ليس ناقص )

معناها هنا انه اكل كيكه واحدة كاملة لم اترك منها شيء

يمكن يجي قبلها **the** او **a** عادي فصح نقول

A printing process can print **whole rolls** of the paper-thin speakers.

**my whole life**

ممکن نستخدم قبلها صفات الملكية

### Test yourself

1. We ate the (all - whole ) food in about ten minutes.
2. I can't believe that she's telling us the (all- whole) truth.
3. I have done ( all- whole) my homework.
4. I have worked (all-whole) my life in one school.

4-

Because  
as ( فعل + فاعل ) الجملة الثانية +  
Since  
الجملة الأولى (النتيجة)

- 1- Ali was very unhappy **because** he **didn't succeed**.
- 2- **As he was ill**, he went to the doctor.
- 3- **Since she was wise**, she could solve the problem.

ولكن

→ الجملة الأولى } **because of / due to/ owing to /  
for / on account of / thanks to /** } **Noun  
v. ing**

- 1- He went to the doctor **because of being ill**.
- 2- She could solve the problem **due to her wisdom/ being wise**.
- 3- The film was very successful **because of the amazing sound quality**

### Test yourself

1. (Because - Although - Because of - As) being 60 years old, Ali has retired.
2. (Though - Because - so - Despite) I was very tired, I took a permission to leave my work.
3. (As - In spite of - Because of - So) we ran fast, we caught the bus.
4. We didn't enjoy our holiday (due to - although - in spite - since) the rain.
5. (Despite - Because - Though - Due to) the pain in his leg was great, he didn't complet the race.
6. (To be-Being- Have been-Be) ill, he failed to pass the exam. ( 2023-ث ع )

### 5 - Thank you for asking your question

- We can get a lot of information **thanks to the internet**.
- We can get a lot of information. **Thanks for** your help . ( لاحظ )

6 - like / unlike / as / alike / such as:

- **like +** ( مثل ) ( للتشبيه شيء غير حقيقي ) ضمير/اسم + صفة /اسم  
\* He works **like a machine**. \* She ran **like a mad dog**. \* Ola sings **like Om kolthom**.
- **unlike :** على عكس  
\* **Unlike her sister**, Salma is hard-working and studious.  
\* She has blue eyes **unlike her mother**.
- **as +** ( حقيقة ) + وظيفة  
\* My father works **as a doctor**. \* Do this experiment **as I do it**.
- **train / work / act + as + :** وظيفة  
\* He trained **as a lawyer** for three years.
- **such as = like +** مثل- كذكر امثله  
\* Team sports like **(such as) football and basketball** are based on teamwork and cooperation  
- They forget about simple things **like walking in nature** and being with friends.  
- Taha Hussein wrote a lot of books **(like - as )** " The days "
- **alike** مشابه - على السواء  
- The two children are very alike
- **like** ( مثل ) للتشبيه **as** ( ك ) للحقيقة

### Test yourself

1. Vegetables ( like- as) peas are very useful for our health.
2. Ismail Yassen made a lot of films ( like-as) Adam's Apple.

3. The two girls are ( like- as -alike). Although they aren't twins.
4. ( Like- Unlike ) other animals , the elephant has a trunk.
5. My brother works ( as -like) a supervisor in a food factory.

## 7- One of + اسم جمع + is to المصدر

One of the most important things (is – are )to find a planet with water

## 8 - But – however – yet – still

**Although** . هذه الروابط لابد أن تأتي في وسط الجملة قبل شيء مختلف أو على النقيض من شيء قد جاء قبله و هي عكس و تعني لكن أو مع ذلك

**Although I studied hard, I only got 70%.**

① I studied hard, **but** I only got 70%.

② He studied hard. **However**, he got low marks.

③ He is short, **yet** he joins the army.

④ You aren't rich, **still**, you could do something to help him

Mars is the closest planet to Earth. **However**, the temperature on it is minus 60 degrees Celsius

**However** تأتي في أول الجملة بمعنى بالرغم من

**However** + الجملة الثانية + فعل + فاعل + ظرف أو صفة

1- **However clever he was**, he couldn't answer the question.

2- **However fast he ran**, he missed the record.

## Test yourself

- 1-He won the match (but – so – if –though) he didn't play well.
- 2.(As – Although – So – However) I have not seen him before, I knew who he was.
3. (Due to – Although – Despite – As) being 60 years old, Ali still plays football.
4. (Though – Yet – But – Despite) being very tired, I continued working.
5. (But – In spite of – Although – So) we ran fast, we missed the bus.
- 6.We enjoyed our holiday (yet – although - in spite – despite) the rain.
7. (However – As - Though – Despite) hard he worked, he failed to pass the exam.
- 8.The holiday was great (although – despite – as- the hotel wasn't very nice.
9. (In spite of – Although – As – But) the difficulty, he could solve the problem.
10. Well (though - in spite of- because - as) he studied , he got low maks.
11. (Despite – Whatever – However – As) the company he has , he was poor
12. (Because – Therefore - In spite of – However) his illness, he went to school
- 13.I've felt really tired today, (because – so – despite – although) I went to bed early last night.
14. (Although – Due to – So – Despite) being known as a difficult man, I got on very well with him.

## 9 - help ( مصدر فقط ) أو ( مصدر ) + to + ( مفعول )

- The teacher **helps the society to build** ( **build** ) it. -Technology has **helped save** lives in Mexico
- I can't help **watching** Zamalik's match on TV لا استطع امنع نفسي من

## 10 - astronaut رائد فضاء

- The person who travels into outer space.

- **astronomer** عالم فلك

- The person who studies stars and planets.

- **astrologer** مُنَجِّم

- The person who predicts the future.

## 11- electrical ( صفه ) كهربائي او يتعامل مع الكهرباء لوصف الاعطال ( اشخاص – معدات )

- **electrical** (equipment / wires /appliances /fault /engineer /device /fuse)/storm

- **electric** ( صفه ) الاجهزه التي تعمل بالكهرباء

- **electric** ( car / washing machine /kettle /guitar /current / light/ oven /iron /fan / fire)

- **an electrician** فني كهرباء (اسم)

We need an electrician to repair our electrical equipment.

- **electricity** الكهرباء

We can't do without electricity in our life.

12 - **contact** (يتصل بدون حرف جر) - **contact with** (اتصال ب ويأتي بعدها حرف جر)

- I **contacted my friends daily**.

- She moved to Spain and I **lost contact with** her.

- **connect** يربط بين شيئين - يوصل بسلك

She **connected** her computer **to the printer**.

Cairo metro **connects** many parts of Cairo together

13 - **explore** يستكشف - I want to explore that old desert building .

- **invent** يخترع - Graham Bell invented the telephone.

- **discover** يكتشف - Isaac Newton discovered gravity.

### Test yourself

1- Nasa will send five (astronauts- astronomers-astrologers- assistant ) to repair the broken pump in the shuttle.

2. The (astronauts- astronomers-astrologers-assistant) can state the eclipse of the sun and the moon accurately.

3. We have an ( electric- electrical - electrician –electrician) kettle for making tea.

4. the fire was caused by an (electric- electrical - electrician –electrician) fault.

5. My brother is an (electric- electrical - electrician –electrician) engineer.

6. My father called an (electric- electrical - electrician ) to repair the (electric- electrical) wire.

7. After the war, there is very little ( contact- connect- communicate ) between the two countries

8. After the earthquake , our town was cut off from ( contact- connect) the outside world for a week.

9. The new road will ( contact- connect) our town with the capital.

10. My mother is ill and she wants to( invent- discover- explore) the possibility of a part time job.

11. Cairo is a nice city to (invent- discover- explore).

12. My sister (invented- discovered- explored) that she was pregnant. Her husband was very happy.

14. **device** تطويرات - **advances** ينصح - **advise** نصيحة - **advice** يبتكر - **devise** جهاز

- Mobiles are excellent devices

- Scientists devised a new way to diagnose cancer

15- **process** عملية تغييرات - أحداث (صناعية- طبيعية- كيميائية - تعليمية ) سلسلة خطوات لاتمام شيء

- **process** - عملية البناء لضوئي **Photosynthesis process** - عملية (طبيعية أو صناعية) **process**

Steel forms by **a slow process of chemical change**.

Tablets can help the **learning process**.

- **Operation** عملية انجاز لشركة او منظمة ( نشاط او عمل - عملية جراحية - عملية تشغيل

- **operation** - يجري عملية علي **operate on** - عملية جراحية / عسكرية / تجارية

- **operate machines** عملية مخابرات **intelligence operation** - عمل / تشغيل **operation** - يشغل الات

She's going to need **an operation on her ankle**.

The firm set up its own property **development operation**

The device has a single button, **allowing for easy operation**.

16. - **Special** (= not ordinary) خاص - مميز ( لا يمتلكه الانسان )

**special care** رعاية خاصة **special attention** اهتمام خاصا **special occasion** مناسبة خاصة

- The government gives **special care** to reclaiming the desert.

- This is a special kind of cloth.

- **private** (ملكه خاصة ) خاص ويمتلكه شخص (opposite: public عام)

**a private school** مدرسة خاصة بفلوس **a private hospital** مستشفى خاص بفلوس

Our house has **a private garden**. He didn't want to discuss **his private life**.

17- **rob** + يسرق شخص - مكان **rob somebody of something**

- A gang **robbed the bank** yesterday. They **robbed him** of his money.



- **steal** + مفعول

يسرق الشيء كاملاً

The thief **stole her bag** The thief stole my money

18. **degree** درجه جامعيه او درجه حراره **grade** درجه في امتحان او تقدير **graded** متدرج

I have a degree in biology from Alexandria University

She always gets good grades. Jack is in the sixth grade.

These exercises are graded . Some of them are easier than others.

19 - **audience** ( تأخذ فعل مفرد أو فعل جمع ) الجمهور - The audience **is ( are )** happy .

20- **experimental** تجريبي - **experimental** تجريبي **( do / carry out / conduct / perform ) an experiment** يجري تجربة

21 - **rather than** بدلا من - We should consider nuclear energy peaceful rather than destructive

- **other than** غير / بخلاف - None is at home other than Ahmed. لا أحد في البيت غير أحمد

- **other than** بالإضافة الي - Nuclear energy is a peaceful means other than destructive ones.

22- **space** فضاء - **a space = a place** مكان - **a space of two hours** في مدي / مدة ساعتين

### Test yourself

1. My friend got his ( grade – degree - mark) in engineering from Cairo University.
2. Ali ( stole – robbed) his friend's mobile.
3. A gang ( stole -robbed ) my company in the new capital yesterday.
4. Students with 90% are( marked- graded-processed) A.
5. My father had a-an ( process-operation) on his eye last week.
6. Egypt is the supporter of the peace (process-operation) in the Middle East.
7. My friend has a broken led. He needs a( special- private) care.
8. Iphone is one of the best ( devices- advice- advances) in USA.
9. ( Space – A space) exploration is costly.
10. There is ( space – place – a space ) beside you. Can I sit in it?
11. We should go home earlier (other- rather- less) than risk the crowded roads.
12. No player did his tasks well ( rather- other – less) than Afsha . He scored two goals.
13. Students should be careful when they ( make – do – carry on ) their experiments.
14. The questions of the test should be ( grade – degree – mark- graded).
15. She likes physics and always gets good ( grades – degrees - certificates).



## Lesson one and two

### LISTENING

**Earth** is one of the eight planets of our **solar system**. **Astronomers** have been able to study most of these planets for many years. However, we will start to learn more about them when we can send astronauts **further than** the moon, where they have been already. Scientists have already sent **spacecrafts** onto the surface of planets such as Mars, and with each journey, we can learn more and more about the universe around us.

+++++

Journalist : Today, I'm talking to a space scientist and **astronomer**, Professor El-Taweel, about where we are most likely to find life in our solar system. So, professor I **suppose** most people think we'll first find life on Mars, is that right?

Professor : Well, many countries are sending spacecraft to that planet at the moment, so it's possible, yes. I think we'll certainly find water. But once we've **finished exploring** Mars, I think that we'll find other places that are

**Journalist : Really? Can you give me an example?**

**Journalist :** That's amazing. Are there any other places like this?

**Journalist : Anywhere else?**

## Reading

[illegible]

**Curious Teens ( Teen Astronomers)** is a website for young people who are interested in finding out about the world they live in. If you have any **burning questions**, please email us at **[curiousteen@theconversation.edu.au](mailto:curiousteen@theconversation.edu.au)**.

Thank you for your question Tariq. Astronomers like us are constantly searching for planets which may support human life, but they're not easy to find. To start with, it's likely that if such a planet exists, it will be outside our solar system. Until we have invented the technology to

get us to these planets, We won't be able to study the **conditions** there. But we'll keep using the technology we have to find out what we can until we have found **some evidence**. One of the most important things is to find a planet with water, because it is **essential for** all life forms. Scientists recently discovered that there is **permanent liquid** water **on Mars**, which made a lot of people excited. After all, it is the closest planet to Earth. However, **on average**, the temperature on Mars is about minus 60 **degrees Celsius**. In winter it can go down as low as 125 degrees below freezing. When we've found a way for astronauts to survive these extreme temperatures, they'll be able to spend enough time on the surface of Mars to collect useful data. Mars is hopefully just one **step** into the **universe**. **Once** we've **conquered** Mars, it will be easier to expand into the universe beyond, with future **advances** in space technology.

## **WB**

### **Technology in the cinema**

When you watch a good film, it is easy to forget where you are. Technology, however, is making the film **experience** even more real. In the 1970s, **a company called IMAX took a different approach**. Large, **tall screens**. **Special speakers** were put behind the screen, which **helped to make** the sound better and louder. **In addition**, the films were made using **a special process** which made the pictures look much more 'real'.

The problem with these **types of films** was the cost. They had to **build special square** cinemas, because people **needed to watch** the film **in seats** which all **faced** the screen. You also needed **special cameras** and couldn't **make films** of more than an hour long. So these films were nearly all **educational**, often about **nature**. One of the most popular was about climbing Mount Everest and when you watched it, you really felt you were surrounded by snowy mountains. Since 2000, however, similar technology has **allowed traditional films to be made** in the same way. These are **mass-produced** and shown **in traditional cinemas**. **As a result**, many modern films sound great. Many are in 3D, so that the pictures look real and not flat. Some cinemas even have seats that move while you watch the film to **immerse** you even more into the **experience**. Other cinemas have even experimented with allowing you to '**feel**' the film using smell, rain and wind. However, the cost of this will probably mean this technology won't be in most cinemas.

## **Video script**

**Presenter** : We asked three students to **research the latest inventions** and come back and tell us about their favourites. OK, first Omar... what did you find?

**Omar** : The best invention I read about were these **smart trainers**. They have '**smart**' transport tickets sewn into the insides of the shoes. This means if you're travelling **on public transport** and you're wearing the **trainers** you can just get on the bus, tram or **underground without having** to show your ticket. At the moment, they cost about \$140, so I don't think a huge number of people will be wearing them yet. But there were big **queues** outside shoe shops when they first went on sale.

**Presenter** : Eman ... how about you?

**Eman** : I found out about some amazing inventions, but my favourite invention is this robot bird. It's already been used at the Edmonton International airport in Canada. It's **a robot bird** which **chases** away real birds. It seems that in the past real birds have caused problems for planes **taking off and landing**. These **robotic birds** look like **real falcons**, which are hunting birds, and scare other types of birds away. They can even move their **wings up and down** like real birds. They'll make airports much safer.

**Presenter** : Samir... what did you discover?

**Samir** : The best invention I found for sure is a high-tech robot tutor. It's about 16 inches tall and has arms, legs and a face. It has a camera which can tell if the student is **losing attention**, and will **adapt its style** so you don't get bored. The best thing is that it dances when you get a question right!

## **Lesson three and four**

### **LISTENING**

**Presenter** : in the last 70 years, Technology has changed dramatically in the field of medicine. Back then they didn't have computers, smart phones or even the internet. These days, robots are used to carry out operations. They are still controlled by humans but using robots **allows doctors to perform the operations** with more **control and accuracy** . But will robots be **performing operations** completely on their own one day? Let's ask our medical expert, Reuben.

**Reuben** : One thing you may've heard about is **Artificial intelligence** or **AI** . A number of companies think within the next year or two, robots will have started to perform some **very simple operations** autonomously run by computers. Soon surgeons won't even need to be in the room. It'll even be possible to perform an operation from another country.

**Presenter** : Wow! Incredible! Another really exciting development; is how we can use our smart phones to monitor our health. What have you got here?

**Reuben** : Well, this app is **connected to a little sensor** on my arm. It tells me my blood sugar level . I click a button on my phone and place it near the sensor. It makes little sound, and there you can see my **glucose level** is 7.3. It's especially helpful for people with diabetes which is a disease which occurs when your blood sugar is too high.

**Presenter** : Amazing! So, what next?

**Reuben** : Well, it's my beliefs that by the next decade , AI in particular will have transformed health care completely, and will be saving lives. Using data\*27' from patient's medical records , AI will be able to identify and name **illnesses, design treatment plans**, and **create new drugs** way faster than any doctor or **consultant**. Some people worry that AI systems will **replace** doctors and nurses, but I don't think so. They'll be able to **concentrate on** tasks which depend **uniquely** on human skills instead , such as **empathy** . But what is certain is that we'll all be healthier and living longer due to new technology.

### **Posted 8 Sept2021,17.30**

Technology is very important for us here in Mexico City. We **depend on** smartphones, **tablets**, computers and especially the internet. I am lucky to have a computer in my house, because my father doesn't live with us, so it **helps me keep in touch with** him. **On a bigger scale**, technology has helped save lives in Mexico. We have very **advanced warning systems** which give people more time to **escape to safety** if an **earthquake** is coming. **On the other hand**, **cyber security** has become **a big issue**. **Computer hackers** can **cause** serious **damage** to **individuals** and **organisations**. Important information **can be stolen**. There have been many cases where this has happened in Mexico, and I'm sure there will be more in the future.

Technology **surrounds** us. It's everywhere. It's hard to **imagine** a life without technology. But, of course, we could **live without** it. Only forty years ago people **survived** without smart phones or the internet. On the whole, I think technology can be dangerous because people can become **addicted to** it. They forget about simple things **like walking in nature and being with friends**.

I don't agree with the last comment. The **benefits** of technology in medicine are **obvious**. People's lives are saved every day because of new technology in hospitals! In the future, it'll

be even more important. It will help us **discover new cures** for lots of diseases. Of course, technology has some **negative effects**, but **on balance**, we can't live without it now.

[Log in or register to post comments](#)

~~~~~

Possible future uses of AI

Experts all agree that we will see more **artificial intelligence** (AI) in the future, but how will this **affect** our lives? Factories already use **AI** to build cars and machines. Work that **used to be done** by factory workers is now done by computers. In the next few decades, computers will also do some work that is now done by office workers and shop **assistants**. That means many shops and **businesses** won't need to close: they will be open for 24 hours. When you use the internet, AI quickly knows what you are interested in and sends you **advertisements** to sell you things. In the future, AI will know enough about you to be able to tell factories to make things just for you: the things won't need **to be mass-produced**. Many people think that **self-driving cars** **will have replaced traditional cars** within the next few decades. We will all be calling **self-driving cars** to take us where we want to go, just like we call a taxi today. Soon, AI will also be helping us to learn new skills. It will help people produce amazing art or music. **AI** will also help us to **communicate in any language**. Mobile phones have changed the way we live in just a few years. In the near future, our lives will have changed again thanks to AI.

The advantages and disadvantages to evolving technology

Technology is always changing. Every few years, you can buy televisions that have larger screens or better pictures. Mobile phones can do more and more things. **On a bigger scale**, computers in **businesses**, at airports and in almost every organisation become more and more **powerful**. We now depend on everything becoming better, bigger and faster.

On the one hand, this makes things easier for all of us. It is not very expensive to buy televisions that are almost as good **as cinema screens**. Mobile phones mean that you can be **connected to the internet** anywhere, so you can always find out information or know where you are. Planes and cars are safer and businesses work better.

On the other hand, new technology is very bad for the environment. We all want to buy the latest phone, television or computer game, but that often **means throwing away** the old ones. You can **recycle** some parts of old **equipment**, but a lot of it is never used again. Who wants an old phone that does not connect to the internet?

On the whole, it is good that technology changes. We all want to have things that can improve **our everyday lives**. **On balance**, however, I think that we have to find a way to use new technology **on old equipment**. It is terrible that we have to throw away good equipment just because it does not use the latest technology. If we could build phones, TVs and computers that could last for decades, we could have a cleaner, greener world.

~~~~~

## Exercises

### Lesson one and two

أولا الاسئلة الموضوعية التالية ( كل سؤال بدرجته )

#### Choose the right answers:

1. Our new villa is -----by a large garden.

- a. surrounded                      b. appeared                      c. separated                      d. disappeared

2-My older brother has a ..... in Maths from Cairo University.

- a. decree                      b. degree                      c. licence                      d. permission

3-Oxygen is released in the ..... of photosynthesis.

- a. result                      b. series                      c. process                      d. sequence



- 4-My parents ..... me to work hard at school.  
a. disappointed                      b. depressed                      c. discouraged                      d. encouraged
5. Some people believe that ----- on animals is cruel behaviour.  
a. running                      b. feeding                      c. experimenting                      d. implementing
6. She usually works hard; she ----- herself in her work.  
a. avoids                      b. immerses                      c. imagines                      d. frees
7. The manager wants to ..... the new safety procedures inside the factory.  
a. carry                      b. appear                      c. avoid                      d. implement
8. Today, some manufacturers use robots to mass ..... goods to increase sales and achieve big profits.  
a. use                      b. reduce                      c. produce                      d. replace
- 9-Students in the secondary schools are far too ..... in their studying. They can't find time for fun.  
a. immersed                      b. plunged                      c. skided                      d. busy
- 10.You can ..... orange by mixing red and yellow.  
a. do                      b. create                      c. find                      d. fix
11. .... produced "is a product made cheaply and in large numbers with a machine  
a. Mass                      b. Miss                      c. Much                      d. More
- 12.Allah are the theof all the universe.  
a. maker                      b. creator                      c. carter                      d. inventor
- 13.Thieves ..... the money they robbed in a cave.  
a. do                      b. create                      c. find                      d. hid
- 14.There is now a large selection of portable Bluetooth---available on Amazon in Egypt.  
a. readers                      b. speakers                      c. listeners                      d. writers
15. The ----- system consists of the Sun and the planets that orbit it.  
a. outer                      b. geothermal                      c. lunar                      d. solar
16. There are extinct volcanoes, impact craters, and lava flows on the moon's----  
a. surface                      b.top                      c. depth                      d. width
17. Galileo Galilei was the first ----- to investigate the surface of Mars.  
a. astrologer                      b. astronaut                      c. astronomer                      d. artist
18. In the past, a lot of people thought that the Sun was a/an-----  
a. planet                      b. plant                      c. desert                      d. ocean
19. The ----- is no longer mysterious, thanks to scientists who have clarified the world to us.  
a.plant                      b. island                      c. desert                      d. universe
20. The world is no longer mysterious. Thanks ....scientists who have clarified the world to us.  
a.for                      b. to                      c. by                      d. with
- 21-I found work very difficult, but my friends were very .....  
a. mess                      b. encouraging                      c. managing                      d. helping
- 22- Most of the food we buy is ..... in some way  
a. process                      b. processed                      c. pros                      d. processing
23. There were not any ..... copies available from the publisher.  
a. printed                      b. printing                      c. oral                      d. writing
- 24.Printing is a ..... of writing when you write each letter separately rather than joining the letters of a word.  
a. method                      b. style                      c. away                      d. shape
- 25.We stopped at the top of the mountain to admire ..... of the sea.  
a. review                      b. sight                      c. view                      d. look
26. ...., the old man died after a long term illness.  
a. Personally                      b. Luckily                      c. Unfortunately                      d. Fortunately
- 27-A ..... is a vehicle or machine that is intended to travel through space.  
a. spaceward                      b. spacecraft                      c. train                      d. bus

28. Since the landing of Apollo 11 in 1969, twelve -----walked on the Moon.

a. astrologers      b. astronauts      c. astronomers      d. artists

29. There are modern cameras in the mall that (see-list-monitor-compare) everything that happens.

30- For his birthday party, Ali had a ( spectacularly -nervously -spectators -spectacles) big cake in the shape of the pyramids !

31. Unlike in the cinema, actors in the theater are in direct contact with their ( kids-fan-adore-viewers).

32. I invited 300 people to my sister's wedding. The party was on-----

a. the whole      b. balance      c. the other hand      d. a large scale

33. A/An (operation – experiment – process - illness) is a series of events or changes that happen naturally.

34. "The Days" written by Taha Hussein is its 10th ( copies- printed-printing-inversions). It is a successful book.

35. Big food companies use ( tens-tins-canz-pots) to keep their products attractive and healthy.

36. She ( deny- admitted-accused-imagined) that the man wanted to kill her. It wasn't true.

37. Parents should have a great ( affect- affection- impact-trustee ) on their children. They should try to persuade them to be polite with others.

38. The surround ( voice- noise- sound-cry ) makes us enjoy going to the cinemas. They add fun to the movies.

39. The president tries to ( applicant- implement-obey-carry ) a vital economic policy . It will improve our economy.

40. The hammer is the ( tools- equipment- implement-way) that the criminal used to kill his victim.

41. Factories want to earn more , so they use machines to (miss- mass-most- mess ) produce goods to make it in large quantities.

42. In 1980, Toyota launched the first (mess produced –mass production-mass produced-miss production ) mountain car. It has become popular.

43. It was my father's habit to ( meet- solution- go-approach ) every problem cautiously. He was careful enough not to cause any harm.

44. The Olympic committee should (contain - introduce - deduce - reduce) squash into the Olympic Games.

45. The company should arrange a ( suit- convenient-disturbed-late ) place and time for the meeting. All the members should attend.

46- ( Especially -Spectacularly -Boring –Terrifying) means extremely good ,exciting or surprising.

47. The company hired a powerful ( spokes- speaking- speaker-spoken ) to make all the members hear the financial budget.

48- A technician is someone who does ( physical-practical –oral- written )work in science or technology.

49- A ( producer -director -manager –principal) decides how a play, film etc. should be made.

50. ( Persian – Mandarin –English – Spanish ) is the language of the people of Iran.

### Exercises

### Lesson three, four and five

أولا الاسئلة الموضوعية التالية ( كل سؤال بدرجة )

#### Choose the right answers:

1. Which of the following means in general?

a. On the other hand      b. On balance      c. On the whole      d. On a bigger scale

2. My father likes classical music. -I, on ----- like jazz.

a. the one hand      b. the other hand      c. balance      d. duty

3. We considered all factors; ----- , the project has achieved high profits.

a. on demand      b. on the one hand      c. on balance      d. on the other hand

4. When Mazen's father died, Mazen ----- a lot of money as inheritance.

a. earned                      b. won                      c. beat                      c. gained

5, It was a gloomy room that was poorly lit by oil lamps. Gloomy is an antonym for.....

a. pleasant                      b. dull                      c. depressing                      d. pleased

6. The young child is serving a/an-----as a carpenter.

a. scholarship                      b. apprenticeship                      c. hardship                      d. membership

7. This -----place isn't suitable for me; I have an allergy, especially in spring.

a. airy                      b. rainy                      c. dusty                      d. sunny

8. We backed her up when she complained about working conditions. This means we..... her.

a. ignored                      b. supported                      c. punished                      d. rewarded

9. As soon as you push this button, the door-----.

a. going to open                      b. has opened                      c. open                      d. will open

10.This product is selling very well because the ( coverage- packaging-rolls-rules) is so attractive. People like it.

11-These bacteria are (visible - feasible - practical - invisible) unless viewed with a microscope

12-Exercise can have a (positive - negative -conductive-destructive) effect on your health and fitness.

13-It was a great football match. The teams played very (negatively- badly- positively-cowardly).

14-The products of Toshiba are sold on a big (scale-scales-height- expand) all over the world. They are reliable.

15.Water will be the cause of many (worms-wars-spaces-dispute) among a lot of countries in the future. It has become rare.

16.I'd like to go home early (other-rather-farther-worse) than risk the roads at night.

17.Bridges are designed to connect places rather than( dividing-divide-to divide-divided) them

18- Water is essential for all life ( forms - plants - animals - things ). All creatures can't live without it.

19.The money I paid to the hotel ( included-consisted-contained-constituted) the continental breakfast which I used to have every day.

20.We couldn't go out because the rain was( failing-pooring-sheeting-feeling) down all day long.

21.The ( papers-newspaper-sheet-peace) is a piece of paper for writing on or containing information.

22- On ( balance - bias - business - duty ) we can't do without technology now.

23.My mother bought a-an ( devise- device- advice-equipment ) for catching mice. Now we all feel calm

24.My friend is deeply ( contained- include- involved-gone) in debt. The bank will inform the police about him.

25.You shouldn't ( put - contain- place -involve ) yourself in unnecessary expense. You need every pound for your daughter's marriage.

26.In the theatre, I changed my seat to get a complete ( review- view- sight- accident ) of the stage.

27- ( In- On -At - Of ) the whole I think technology can be dangerous if you are addicted to it.

28-Technology helps us discover new cures ( of - with - for - about ) new diseases .

29.Some people's (reviews- views- sights- accidents ) on evolution is based on religion, not on scientific findings.

30.The criminal's video was (reviewed -sight- saw- viewed )by millions of people.

31. The Egyptian Opera has expanded its ( reviewers- audiences-listeners-speakers) by singing songs from the shows.

32.-Some people are interested in finding out ( about- for-out-in ) the world they live in.

33- The synonym of need is ( acquire - inquire - enquire - require )

34-The machine automatically ( downloads -carries -holds -bears ) the required information to his fax.

35- The officials in the airport ( monitor- conduct- make -notice ) planes on the rader for any sudden problems.

- 36-The government is trying to provide ( health- healthy-orally-regularly ) care to all the Egyptian people.
- 37- ( Drugs -Plants-Herbs-Cures ) are medicines or things that make medicines
- 38- ( Cure -Process -Operation -Diagnose)is when doctors cut open a body to help repair it or damaged part in it.
- 39-In the past, strong nations used to ( hit-attacked- conquer-help ) the weak ones and control them.
- 40- Nowadays, most young people try to have good physical ( fatness- fitness-obesity-height ) by going the gym a lot.
- 41- A lot of young people like reading science ( faction-fictional-fiction-factual) stories. They think they are interesting.
- 42-The company should encourage ( fiction-innovation-laziness- treatment) if it is to remain competitive.
- 43-Many people feel bewildered **بمربك** by the speed of technological (innovation-creation-advanced- experiences ) . They can't keep up with them.
- 44- On a bigger ( scales – scale – school – scholar ), technology helped save lives in a lot of countries all over the world.
- 45-On the other ( hand – foot – arm – leg ) cyber security has become a big issue.
- 46- The boy works as an ( apprentice – engineer – electrician – architect ) for a carpenter. He wants to learn all the skills.
- 47- The Egyptian ( approach- progress- operation - experiences) to the crisis of corona virus was wise. It could treat with it wisely.
- 48- My father likes going to the ( cinema- theatre-beach-opera). He enjoys watching the plays of Adel Emam.
- 49- All over Egypt, you can see a lot of ( advertisements-pictures-reviews- views ) of films on the walls of houses in all streets.
50. Jobs can give writers ( experiences- experienced- experiments- experts) that they can use in their writing.
- 51.She has a ( visible- visual- seen- sight ) memory. She can remember well what she sees
- 52- As I ( approached - approximated -demolished -preached ) the house , I noticed a light on upstairs .
- 53-In ( factual – fact – actually – really ) , the technology is first introduced in 1940 .
- 54- A new ( punishment -bunch -bench -approach ) has been developed by scientists to use paper instead of speakers.
- 55- The adjective ( inconvenient -patient -cheerful -delighted) means causing difficulty or problems
- 56- A / An ( possess -confess –operation-process) is a series of actions or method of producing something
- 57- The ( process –covers- -cameras –speakers) on most phones are very good now. Music sounds loud and clear on them.
- 58-We are in need of a real reform in our educational ( surround -process -immerse –operation)
- 59-The enemy troops were ( around- surrounded-roll-ruled ) by our troops from all the sides They can't escape.
60. Some people are afraid that the light from the sun might go out ( permanent-permanently-temporary- temporarily) during an eclipse.
- 61.My brother wants a ( permanent- temporary –quick- possess) job for the months of summer in a hotel in Sharm.
- 62.Printing is a method of writing when you write each letter separately rather than (join-joining – joined-joins )the letters of a word.

63. Ali drew some unknown figures on the ( papers-newspaper-sheet-peace) given to him.
64. This product has become edible due to the damaged( coverage- packaging-rolls-rules)
- 65- A/An (collector - inspector - conductor - investigator) is someone whose job is to check that something is of a good enough standard and that rules are being obeyed
- 66- That film was made by a famous ( directions- director - directory - directive ).
- 67- Our children should ( blame - become - behave - be half ) well in front of the strangers and try not to make noise .
- 68- The spider uses his ( web - leg - tail - nose ) to catch insects.
- 69- A bee stung me in the face, so I got( brown - green -black - red ) eye .
- 70 - My father had an (argument -fights - arrangement - encouragement) with my mother about home expenses so she was sad.
- 71-The rural environment has a (positive -possessive - repressive - stressful) effect on children's health.
- 72-Parents play an important (rail - reel - rule - role) in their child's learning.
- 73-The house is not really (convient -syllable - recyclable - suitable) for a large family.
- 74-Public health officials were called to (respect - inspect - reveal - destroy) the building.
- 75-Dr Aisha wrote many books and articles (on - of - for - in ) cultural and religious matters.
- 76- We saw a film being made by a famous (writer - author -director - plumber ) today!
- 77 .( Astronomers-Astronauts- Astrologers- Pilots)travel into space by spaceships .
- 78- He is specialised in physics .He is a (physician - physicist - physical - psychologist )
- 79- This phone doesn't work. It is completely ( useful - use - used- useless )
- 80- Ahmed worked really hard for the exam. We are ( useful-hopeful- hopeless - useless ) that he has done very well.
- 81- My grandfather was ill, but the doctor gave him some ..... medicine and now  
a) powerful                      b) power                      c) powerless                      d) powder .
82. 156. A-An ....is a person who works for a skilled man to learn a skill for low wages.  
a) partner                      b) apprentice                      c) sponsor                      d) thief
83. (As - The same - Like - Likely) most people, he thought that plants get their food from soil.
84. Ageing الشيخوخة is the natural (operation - recess - process - experience) of getting old.
- 85-(Astronomers- Astrologers- Doctors-Astronauts) usually work in weightless conditions.
- 86(Astronomers- Astrologers- Doctors-Astronauts )can predict when the eclipses happen and also the climatic conditions..
- 87- Most of the students depend ( in - on - about - of ) the internet to do research .
- 88-The internet helps me to keep ( in - on - of - at ) touch with my relatives abroad.
- 89-If you get an -----, you learn while you are doing a job.  
a) application                      b) apprenticeship                      c) archaeology                      d) identity
- 90- Technology ( evolves - revolves - solves - dissolves ) ever day .



# أشكال و أزمنة المستقبل FUTURE FORMS AND TENSES

## 1) WILL + INF.

١- تستخدم (Will) للتنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلا في حالة عدم وجود دليل

- I expect she **will get a good job** soon.
- I think it **will rain** tomorrow..
- I expect Egypt **will achieve** progress in all fields.
- I think Ali **will buy** the computer.

٢- تستخدم أيضا للتعبير عن الحقائق المستقبلية (متغيرة)

- This school **will be 50 years** old next year
- I am 18. Next year, I **will be** 19 years old.

٣ - كما تستخدم لاتخاذ قرار سريع بعمل شيء ما

- Someone's at the door. **I'll see** who it is
- I'm hungry. I think I **will have** a sandwich..
- That's the phone. I **will answer** it.

لاحظ أيضا ان اتخاذ القرارات **السريعه** تأخذ مستقبل بسيط وليس (going to)

- I have decided now that I (~~will-am-going-to~~) **travel to Cairo.**

٤- عند عرض عمل شيء أو تقديم خدمة ما

- **I'll wash** the dishes
- **I'll fix** the car for you.

٥ - عندما نطلب من شخص عمل شيء

- **Will you help** me carry this bag, please?
- I **hope you will look** after the baby.

٦ - الترتيب لعمل شيء وقت الحديث دون تخطيط مسبق

- I **will meet** my friends this evening.

٧ - عمل الوعود والتهديدات

- **I'll buy** you a computer when you **pass** the final exam.
- You **won't get** your prize if you **come** late.

٨- كما يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل بعد أدوات الربط الزمنية و أدوات الشرط.

يستخدم بعد الروابط الآتية:

أمر or **will + inf.** , مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام + **When/As soon as/After/Before**

مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام + **when/as soon as/after/before** + **will + inf.**

مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام + **till/until+** مصدر + **will (won't)** + فاعل

- I **won't be able to write** the report **until I've done** the research.
- **Once I've done** the research, **I'll start** the report.
- Normal people **won't travel** in space **until it has become** less expensive.
- People **won't buy** electric cars **until they have known** they are sustainable.
- When **I've fixed** my computer, **I'll help** you with your research.
- **As soon as / When** Ali **gets** home, he **will have** dinner
- He **won't leave until** his sister **arrives / has arrived**-
- **Don't press** this button **until the light turns** green.-

٩- توزيع الوظائف و المهام والادوار (بين المتحدث و افراد آخرين)

- \* You sweep the floor and I **will cook** the dinner.
- \* You do the typing and I **will check** it later.

## 10. الكلمات الدالة

-نستخدم **will** بعد الافعال والظروف والتعبيرات الآتية :

predict-expect -hope- think – believe – promise – wonder - suppose

افعال

Probably-possibly- certainly- perhaps – maybe - Be sure –be afraid –it is probable –it's certain –it's possible- I don't think

ظروف  
تعابير

tomorrow - next (week/month/year) – in the future - soon - in 2030 -

كلمات

## 2) FUTURE CONTINUOUS

المستقبل المستمر

**Form :** will be + v.ing

- This time next week, I **will be travelling** to Cairo.
- Don't ring at 8 o'clock. **I'll be having** dinner with my family.
- You'll recognize me when you get there. **I'll be wearing** jeans and a white t-shirt. **I'll be sitting** at a table at the corner and **reading** a newspaper.

١- يستخدم المستقبل المستمر للتنبؤ بحدث سوف يكون مستمرا في وقت ما أو خلال فترة محددة في المستقبل

- **I'll be playing** tennis from 7 to 9 p.m.
- The government **will be trying** to reduce the effects of climate change.
- ٢- كما يستخدم المستقبل المستمر للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون مستمرا عندما يقطعه حدث آخر أو عندما يتم حدث آخر في المستقبل. (تقاطع)
- **I will be waiting** for you when your bus arrives.
- **I'll be staying** at Madison Hotel, if anything *happens* and you *need* to contact me.
- **He will be studying** at the library tonight, so he will not see Ola when she *arrives*.
- ٣- كما يستخدم المستقبل المستمر للتعبير عن حدثين سوف يكونان مستمران معا في نفس الوقت في المستقبل. (توازي)

- At the party tomorrow, Ahmed **will be singing** while Sarah **will be dancing**.
- I **will be working** hard next week **while** you **will be relaxing** on the beach.
- ٤- يستخدم المستقبل المستمر أيضا عندما نخمن ما يفعله شخص الآن
- Don't call him now, **he'll be doing** his homework.
- I don't want to disturb them. I'm sure they'll **be cleaning** their house at the moment.
- ٥- لا يستخدم المستقبل المستمر مع الأفعال التي تعبر عن حالة ( أفعال الحواس والادراك والفهم ----).  
(Not: will-be-being)
- Maher **will be** at my house when you **arrive**.
- (Not: will-be-knowing)
- **After I study**, I **will know** all the answers for the test.

## MAY BE + V.ING

- يستخدم (**may be v.ing**) للتعبير عن أحداث محتملة الحدوث (أحداث غير مؤكدة) ستكون مستمرة في المستقبل

- I can't visit you because I **will / may be doing** my homework this evening.
- In 100 years, people **may be living** in space.
- When she's 21, she **may be working** in London.

## 3) THE FUTURE PERFECT

المستقبل التام

١- يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد انتهى أو تم قبل وقت معين في المستقبل

- By the end of next year, the government **will have built** a new school in the village.
- The population of the world **will have grown** to about nine billion by 2050?
- They **will have finished** the English course in two months' time.
- ٢- يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد انتهى أو تم قبل حدث آخر في المستقبل
- Before they come, we **will have cleaned** up the house.
- John **will have eaten** the whole cake, by the time the birthday party starts
- ٣- يستخدم المستقبل التام مع تعابير زمنية مثل:

- In (a year's / four months' / five weeks' / an hour's / ten minutes' /.....) time
- By next Monday / by 2025 .... حينئذ etc.)
- Before (four o'clock / tomorrow morning / next Monday.... etc.)

- By next Wednesday, I **will have done** a science test.
- **By the time** I am twenty-two, I **will have finished** my university degree.  
( **will have been + pp** )      ٤- يتكون المستقبل التام في المبني للمجهول من
- This school **will have been built** by 2030.

#### 4) BE + GOING TO + INF.

- ١- التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلا في حالة وجود **دليل**. نראה أو نعرفه أو نسمعه مع كلمات **believe/ /think**
- The other team's players are very big. **It's going to be** a difficult match.
  - I think **it's going to rain** because the sky seems very cloudy.
  - There are a lot of clouds. I think **It is going to rain**.
  - Look at this reckless driver! He **is going to crash** into the car in front.
  - Hassan's playing really well. **He 's going to win** the game!
  - It's near the end and it's 3-0 for Egypt. **We are going to win the game!**.
  - It's six a.m. and it's already 25°C. It **is going to be very hot today**.
- ٢- تستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن أحداث تم اتخاذ قرار بشأنها من قبل.
- **My plans** for tomorrow is that **I'm going to play** computer games.  
/ take care /look!/ watch out ! /lookout /التنبؤ أو التحذير أو التنبيه
  - **Watch out!** The baby **is going to fall**.
  - How pale **that girl is!** **I believe / I think/ she is going to faint** شاحبة الوجه
  - He can't swim. He **is going to drown**.
- ولكن الصفات الثابتة والمهارات للانسان ليس دليلا على حدوث الفعل فناخذ **Will**
- 1- Messi is **a clever player**. I think he **will score** a goal the next match.
  - 2 - Hamdi is very fast. I think **he will be** in the Olympic Games one day!
  - 3 - Sara is **a good student** .I think she **will pass** all her exams.
- ولكن لاحظ المواقف المؤقتة تعتبر ادلة واضحة
- \* My brother is revising well. I think he's going to pass the test.

3- يستخدم عند وجود كلمات

( **made up...mind intend /intention/plan /decide/ made decision/** )

Ex- A: What are your **plans** for the next weekend?

- B: **I'm going to play** computer games.

#### 5) THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS المضارع المستمر

( **am / is / are + v.ing** )

- ١ - يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حالة وجود ترتيبات مسبقة ، ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل **arranged /made arrangements / prepared / booked /packed reserved / got / bought**
- He has **arranged** everything. **He's spending his holiday in Paris**.
  - They are flying to Paris next Friday. They bought the tickets**.
- لاحظ أن المناسبات الاجتماعية من حفلات وأعياد ميلاد وغيرها تستلزم **ترتيبات** ، لذا يستخدم معها المضارع المستمر

- **He's getting married** next Friday.
- **We are giving a party** tomorrow for Ali's birthday.

The school inspector **is coming** on Thursday.

3- يستخدم المضارع المستمر مع هذه الافعال التي تستلزم ترتيبات

**leave/(have/give) a party** /قيم /go /come/ visit=see /meet/ travel /see/ stay/fly /arrive)

- **I'm meeting** them on Saturday.
- **They're going** tomorrow.
- **I'm doing a test** next Monday.

- Our class **is visiting a museum tomorrow**
- We're eating dinner in the restaurant carriage this evening

## 6) THE PRESENT SIMPLE

## المضارع البسيط

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل بجدول مواعيد ثابتة : وسائل المواصلات و المسرح و السينما و المدرسة .....الخ

- The train **leaves** at six o'clock tomorrow.
- The night programme of the cinema **starts** at 12 am.

**Note:**

- There is abus ( leaves – will leave- leaving- is going to leave ) at 5 a m.
- I think the bus( leaves – will leave- leaving- is going to leave ) at 5 a m.

+++++

=====

**Choose the right answers**

(جمل سهله لتثبت القاعده بسرعة)

- It's arranged. We ..... to the Red Sea this summer.  
a. will go                      b. go                      c. are going                      d. may go
- We .....tennis after school today.  
a. are playing                      b. will play                      c. shall play                      d. going to play
- I can't talk at the moment. I ..... my homework.  
a. do                      b. will do                      c. am doing                      d. have done
- We ..... probably be there for two weeks.  
a. will                      b. may                      c. are going to                      d. are
- I think my cousin ..... engineering.  
a. will study                      b. studies                      c. going to study                      d. would study
- I expect that he ..... the match.  
a. wins                      b. will win                      c. is going to win                      d. is winning
- Perhaps they ..... us next Saturday.  
a. are visiting                      b. are going to visit                      c. will visit                      d. may visit
- Somebody is knocking on the door. I ..... and open it.  
a. am going                      b. will go                      c. have gone                      d. go
- Don't worry. I ..... you the money you need.  
a. lend                      b. am lending                      c. will lend                      d. should lend
- Look at those black clouds. It.....  
a. rains                      b. is raining                      c. is going to rain                      d. isn't raining
- She has decided that she .....  
a. is studying                      b. is going to study                      c. will study                      d. will be studying
- She has decided **now** that she .....  
a. is studying                      b. is going to study                      c. will study                      d. will be studying
- My sister is pregnant. She .....a baby.  
a. is going to have                      b. will have had                      c. will have                      d. will be having
- Don't phone me at 8.00 a.m. tomorrow. I..... the kids to school then.  
a) drive                      b) will be driving                      c) have driven                      d) would drive
- Don't come round at six o'clock. I will still .....my homework.  
a. will do                      b. will be doing                      c. will have done                      d. am going to do
- My English lesson ..... at four o'clock this afternoon.  
a. is stating                      b. starts                      c. has been starting                      d. start
- The launch of the satellite ..... at 7.50 tomorrow.  
a. is being                      b. are being                      c. is                      d. was
- I think the final match .....at 7 tonight.  
a. starts                      b. will start                      c. is going to start                      d. is starting
- By ten o'clock tonight, I ..... all my homework.  
a. finish                      b. am finishing                      c. will finish                      d. 'll have finished
- By 2030, scientists ..... glasses on which we watch videos.

a. will invent      b. will have invented      c. will be inventing      d. are inventing

20- In 2030, we ..... the same clothes.

a. will wear      b. will have worn      c. will be wearing      d. wear

أولا الاسئلة الموضوعيه التاليه ( كل سؤال بدرجة )

### Choose the right answers

1. I expect our National Team ..... the match tomorrow.

a. win      b. will win      c. are winning      d. are going to win

2. Sama ..... five next month.

a. is going to be      b. will be      c. is being      d. will be being

3- Banks typically ..... at 8 a.m.

a. open      b. are going to open      c. is opening      d. will open

4- We predict that scientist ..... cancer in the future.

a. are treating      b. will treat      c. are going to treat      d. will have treated

5- A : We've run out of salt. B : I ..... to the shops and get a bag.

a. will go      b. have gone      c. go      d. went

6- I'm so hungry . I ..... my lunch.

a. will eat      b. am going to eat      c. am eating      d. eat

7- A : Can you come on tomorrow evening ? B : I wish I could, but I ..... tennis with friends.

a. will play      b. shall play      c. played      d. will be playing

8- I ..... my father to repair the car, so I can't visit you at five.

a. will be helping      b. will help      c. will have helped      d. will be helped

9- By the end of this month, the new flat will ..... for us to move in.

a. be furnished      b. have been furnished      c. have furnished      d. furnish

10- I expect Nada ..... an engineer. She's very clever at maths.

a. is      b. is going to be      c. is being      d. will be

11- From 9 to 11 tomorrow, I ..... an important business meeting.

a. will have attended      b. will be attended      c. will be attending      d. am going to be attended

12- She ..... probably do the shopping tomorrow.

a. will      b. should      c. is going to      d. may

13- Don't be late , the bus ..... At exactly ten o'clock.

a- Leaves      b- going to leave      c- has left      d- left

14- It's 35 degrees and it's only 7 a.m. It ..... very hot today.

a was      b is going to be      c is being      d will be

15- They ..... a party next week. Everything is arranged.

a. have      b. are having      c. are going to have      d. have had

16- Our last lesson ..... at two o'clock this afternoon.

a- is finishing      b- will finish      c- finishes      d- going to finish

17- There are a lot of people in the room. It ..... difficult to find a chair.

a- is      b- will be      c- is going to be      d- will have been

18- Look, there's a sandstorm. I ..... the windows.

a- will close      b- close      c- am going to close      d- am closing

19- There are no clouds in the sky today. I think that it ..... very hot.

a- is going to be      b- will be      c- is being      d- is

20- I feel terrible with a severe stomach. I think I ..... be sick.

a should      b am going to      c am to      d. will

21- We ..... married next month. Would you like to come to the wedding?

a- will have got      b- are getting      c- will get      d- got

22- I think it ..... be hot tomorrow.

a is      b is going to      c will be      d going to

23- He ..... work in an hour. He has arranged it with his boss.

a. is leaving      b. is going to leave      c. will leave      d. leaves

24. The film ..... at 7.30 this evening.

a- starts      b- will start      c- started      d- is starting



- 25- She.....an engineer when she leaves university. That is her plan,  
a- will become    b- has become    c- is going to become    d- becomes
- 26- Someone's at the door. I.....who it is  
a- am seeing    b- will see    c- am going to see    d- see
27. 88. I'll call you when I ( arrive- arrives- will arrive-am arriving) at my hotel.
28. The train to Cairo is on platform four and it .....in thirty minutes.  
a) is leaving    b) will be leaving    c) leaves    d) will leave
29. We.....a family party on Saturday. Would you like to come?  
a) will have    b) going to have    c) are having    d) have
- 30-Take your umbrella with you or you ..... wet.  
a) get    b) will get    c) are getting    d) would get
31. He hasn't studied hard. I think he.....this exam.  
a- will fail    b- fails    c- is going to fail    d- failed
32. I expect Ahmed .....through his exams.  
a- is getting    b- is going to get    c- will get    d- would get
33. Go and see that film. I'm sure that you.....it.  
a- will enjoy    b- are enjoying    c- are going to enjoy    d- enjoy
34. Look out! The rock is loose. It.....on your head.  
a- is going to fall    b- will fall    c- is falling    d- falls
35. I think it ..... rain because the sky is really dark.  
a) is going to rain    b) is raining    c) rains    d) will rain
36. The earth is very crowded. People.....on the moon.  
a. are living    b. will live    c. live    d. are going to live
37. Watch out! The baby .....  
a. will fall    b. is falling    c. is going to fall    d. will be fallen
- 38- I'm sure the match.....really exciting.  
a. will be    b. is being    c. is going to be    d. would be
- 39- I've have decided that I .....part in the next competition.  
a. going to take    b. will take    c. am taking    d. take
- 40.Drive faster! If you don't hurry up, she..... the baby by the time we get to the hospital.  
a) will have    b) will have had    c) will be having    d) is having
- 41.The mechanic .....repairing your car by the end of the week.  
a) will finish    b) will have finished    c) will be finishing    d) is finishing
- 42.We ..... studying this book by the end of this year.  
a) finish    b) will be finishing    c) will have finished    d) are finishing
- 43.Tomorrow we're playing tennis from 3 o'clock until 4.30. So at 4 o'clock, we..... tennis.  
a) are playing    b) will be playing    c) will have played    d) played
- 44.Tomorrow we're playing tennis from 3 o'clock until 4.30. So at 5 o'clock, we..... tennis.  
a) are playing    b) will be playing    c) will have played    d) played
- 45.I predict that in the future mobile phones..... much smaller.  
a) were    b) are going to be    c) are    d) will be
- 46.I'm going on holiday on Saturday. This time next week I..... on a beach.  
a) am going to lie    b) am lying    c) will lie    d) will be lying
- 47.At one o'clock tomorrow, I..... lunch with my friends.  
a) was eating    b) eating    c) will be eating    d) ate
- 48.By ten o'clock tonight, I..... all my homework.  
a) will do    b) will have done    c) do    d) will be doing
- 49.Let's eat dinner when John..... here.  
a) gets    b) will get    c) will have get    d) get
- 50.Experts think that Cairo ..... by more than half a million people next year.  
a) will grow    b) will have grown    c) will be growing    d) grows
- 51.I'm going to the airport in a minute. My plane ..... at ten o'clock.  
a) leave    b) is leaving    c) leaves    d) will leave
- 52.Wake me up by nine o'clock - I..... long enough by then.  
a) will sleep    b) have slept    c) will be sleeping    d) will have slept
- 53.Look, I can give you a lift to the station because I.....that way anyway.

- a) won't drive      b) will have driven      c) drives      d) will be driving
54. My family ..... me out today for passing my exams.
- a) are taking      b) take      c) will take      d) had taken
55. My brother Karim ..... law at Cairo University next year.
- a) has studied      b) will study      c) is going to study      d) will have studied
56. By the time my brother is 30, he ..... a successful lawyer!
- a) is becoming      b) becomes      c) will have become      d) has become
57. In the future, computers ..... traditional books.
- a) will replace      b) will be replaced      c) will be replacing      d) will be replaced
58. In the future most of our work ..... by machines.
- a) will be doing      b) has been done      c) will be      d) will be done
59. By the time we get to the stadium. The match .....
- a) will have started      b) was starting      c) is starting      d) had started
60. In the future, every new book will probably be ..... as an e-book.
- a) publish      b) publishing      c) published      d) publishes
61. We hope that the road ..... early morning traffic.
- a) is reducing      b) will have been reduced      c) will be reduced      d) will reduce
62. She's going to look for a job as soon as she ..... in London.
- a) arrive      b) have arrive      c) will arrive      d) arrives
62. There won't be anyone in the office. Everyone ..... home.
- a) will be going      b) will have gone      c) go      d) have gone
63. This time tomorrow, we'll be celebrating because we ..... our exams.
- a) will finish      b) will have finished      c) will be finishing      d) are finishing
64. By the time you get home, I ..... the house from top to bottom.
- a) will clean      b) will be cleaning      c) will have cleaned      d) am cleaning
65. I expect that our team ..... the league. They have won the last three matches with high score.
- a) win      b) are going to win      c) will win      d) are winning
66. For being strong-minded, she ..... easily.
- a) won't persuade      b) won't be persuaded      c) isn't going to persuade      d) is being persuaded
67. I'm sure you (spend-will spend-are spending-will have spent) a lovely time in Italy next year.
68. I can't meet you this afternoon. I (am doing - do - have done - may do) the shopping.
69. When you get off the train, I (are waiting- will have waited- will be waiting) for you by the ticket machine.
70. My plane (is leaving - shall leave - leave - leaves) at 10 o'clock tomorrow.
71. I am studying medicine. I (may be - am going to be - am being - be) a doctor.
72. She (is flying - flies - fly - would fly) to Spain next Monday. Everything is arranged.
73. I (am going to play - play - will play - should play) tennis with a friend. That's my plan.
74. He drives at breakneck speed. He (has - will have - is going to have - is having) an accident.
75. Watch out! You (are dropping - drop - are going to drop - would drop) the glasses.
76. (Will you - Are you going to - Do you - Should you) help me with this heavy bag, please?
77. I (am going to be - will be - am being - be) 25 next Monday.
78. I can't see you tomorrow. I ( am meeting - meet - am going to meet - will meet) my cousin.
79. She (will - should - might - ought) probably be a great success.
80. Be careful! You (will spill - are spilling - are going to spill - spill) your coffee.
81. That's the phone. I (answer - am answering - would answer - will answer) it.
82. The bridge ( will be built- will have been built- will build) across the river by next January.
83. It is very hot in the house. I ( am turning -turn- will turn - am going to turn) on the air conditioner!
84. A lot of people are waiting for the museum to open. It (will be- is-was- is being ) busy today
85. Your bags look heavy. I (will help-am helping-help-will be helping) you to carry them.
86. The teacher says that we (study-are studying-are going to study ) relative clauses next week.
87. My grandfather (is being- will be-is going to- wil have been ) 70 on his next birthday!

أولا الاسئلة الموضوعية التالية ( كل سؤال بدرجتان)

### Choose the right answers

A. 1. We can't use classroom 5 tomorrow as they the walls.

a. will paint                      b. will have painted                      c. are painting                      d. paint

2. There's a book club meeting after school and everyone.....there.

a) is going to go                      b) will go                      c) are going to go                      d) goes

3- I've have decided now that I .....part in the next competition.

a. going to take                      b. will take                      c. am taking                      d. take

4.Hello, Ahmed. I (go - am going - have gone - would have gone) to the airport in a minute.

B. 1- Which of the following is correct ?

a. While you are checking the report I will fix the printer.

b. While you are checking the report, I fixed the printer.

c. While you checked the report, I will fix the printer.

d. While you are checking the report, I will fix the printer.

2- A : When are you going to move to your new villa ? B : .....

a. After it had been decorated.

b. After it was decorated.

c. After it has been decorated.

d. After it is going to be decorated

3- After ....., the car will be ready for the long drive.

a. checking it

b.it checks

c. you had checked it

d. you have checked it

4- ..... return my money back, I will give you the loan papers.

a. Today you

b. The day you

c. On you

d. You

C. 1- By the time you return home from school tomorrow, I ..... to London.

a. am going to fly

b. will be flying

c. have flown

d. am flying

2- My aunt will call us immediately she ..... to the station.

a. will get

b. had got

c. has got

d. will have got

3- All Egyptian schools ..... E-learning by 2030.

a. will apply

b will have applied

c. will be applied

d. will have been applied

4- I think the global warming ..... worse in the future.

a. will still be getting

b. will still have got

c. is still getting

d. still gets

D. 1- This time tomorrow, this flat ..... to us.

a. will be belonging

b. is belonging

c. will have been belonged

d. will belong

2- When I go to Aswan next winter, I ..... to five of Egypt's

a. have been

b. will go

c. will be going

d. will have been

3- I haven't seen Mariam for ten years. I'm sure she ..... very tall!

a. will grow

b. will be growing

c. will have grown

d. will have been grown

4- Our team are known to be very fit and talented. They ..... the championship

a. will win

b. will be winning

c. are going to win

d. will have won

E. 39- "It is the doorbell. I will open it". This is a/an .....

a. request

b. quick decision

c. promise

d. threat

2- "Will you be using your calculator next lesson" ? This is a/an .....

a. request

b. quick decision

c. promise

d. threat

3- "I'm sure everything will be OK soon." This is a/an .....

a. arrangement

b. timetable

c. intention

d. prediction

4- "The plane takes off at 13:00." This is a/an .....

a. arrangement

b. timetable

c. intention

d. prediction

F. 1- "I'm flying on the plane that takes off at 13:00." This is a/an .....

a. arrangement

b. timetable

c. intention

d. prediction

2- "I am going to have lunch outdoors." The speaker of this sentence expresses a/an ...

a. arrangement

b. timetable

c. intention

d. prediction

3. "Leave my house now or I'll call the police!" shouted the lady to the man. This means.....

a. The lady threatened to call the police if the man didn't leave her house.

- b. The lady said that she would call the police if the man didn't leave her house.  
 c. The lady told the man that she would call the police if he didn't leave her house.  
 d. The lady informed the man that she would call the police if he didn't leave her house.

4. It takes Mr. Ali 15 minutes to get to the field. This means.....

- a. Mr. Ali wastes 15 minutes on the way to the field  
 b. Mr. Ali spends fifteen minutes getting to the field.  
 c. Fifteen minutes is too short for Mr. Ali to get to the field  
 d. Mr. Ali leaves the house at a quarter to five and arrives in the field at 5.30

1. It's possible that we won't go camping this week This means.....

- a. We may not go camping this weekend                      b. We will not go camping this weekend  
 c. We must not go camping this weekend                      d. We will probably go camping this weekend.

2. Which of the following is structurally correct?

- A. When I had finished work, I will travel to Ismailia.  
 B. When I have finished work, I will travel to Ismailia.  
 C. When I have finished work, I travelled to Ismailia  
 D. When I finished work, I will travel to Ismailia.

3- "My father will call you as soon as his guests have left". This means that.....

- a. the guests have left                      b. the guests haven't left you  
 c. the guests had left                      d. the guests won't leave

4- "Omar will go back to work once he has got better". This means .....

- a. he has already got better.                      b. he isn't supposed to get better.  
 c. he is still unwell.                      d. he has gone back to work.

## Translatin

**يعكس تحسّن اقتصادنا نتائج إيجابية على حياة المواطن المصري**

- 1.Improving our economy reflects positive results on the lives of the Egyptian citizen.  
 2.Improving our economic reflects positive results on the lives of the Egyptian citizen.  
 3.Improving our economy reflects negative results on the lives of the Egyptian citizen.  
 4.Improving our economy reflects positive results on the life's of the Egyptian citizen.

**يجب أن لا نقف مكتوفى الأيدي ونلقى بالعبء على الحكومة وحدها فى حل المشاكل..**

- 1.We should stand idly and put the burden on the government alone to solve problems.  
 2.We should stand idly and put the burden on the government lone to solve problems.  
 3.We shouldn't stand idly and put the burden on the government alone to solve problems.  
 4.We shouldn't stand ideal and put the burden on the government alone to solve problems.

**تجتنب الأديان السماوية على التسامح والخوة وبند العنف.**

- 1.Heavenly religions urges us for tolerance, brotherhood and non-violence.  
 2. Heavenly religions urge us for tolerance, brotherhood and violence.  
 3.Heavenly religions urge us for tolerance, brother and non-violence.  
 4.Heavenly religions urge us for tolerance, brotherhood and non-violence.

**يجب أن نرشد استهلاكنا من المياه و الاسوف نواجه مشكله خطيرة فى المستقبل القريب.**

- 1.We must rationalize our consumption of water, or we will face serious problems in the near future.  
 2.We must not rationalize our consumption of water, or we will face serious problems in the near future.  
 3. We must rationalize our consumption of water, or we will not face serious problems in the near future.  
 4. We must rationalize our consumption of water, or we will hand serious problems in the near future.

**تعد المشكلة السكانية أخطر المشاكل التى نواجه بلدا فى الوقت الحالى**

- 1.The population problem are the most serious problem facing our country at this time.  
 2.The pulsations problem is the most serious problem facing our country at this time.  
 3. The population problem is the most serious problem facing our country at this time.  
 4. The pollution problem is the most serious problem facing our country at this time.

**Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

1. Today tourism has become a huge business. It is a good source of national income for countries on the Mediterranean coast. Hence, we have to attract more tourists to visit Egypt all year round by building more comfortable hotels and making all tourist facilities available.

١. لقد أصبحت السياحة اليوم عمل ضخما فهي مصدر جيد للعمله الصعبة للدول التى تطل على البحر المتوسط. ومن ثم علينا ان نجذب المزيد من السياح لزيارة مصر طوال اليوم وذلك عن طريق بناء المزيد من الفنادق وتقديم كل التسهيلات السياحيه المتاحة .

٢. لقد أصبحت السياحة اليوم عمل ضخما فهي مصدر جيد للدخل القومي للدول التي تطل على البحر المتوسط. ومن ثم علينا ان نجذب المزيد من السياح لزيارة مصر طوال العام وذلك عن طريق بناء المزيد من الفنادق وتقديم كل التسهيلات السياحية المتاحة.
٣. لقد أصبحت السياحة اليوم عمل ضخما فهي مصدر جيد للدخل القومي للدول التي تطل على البحر المتوسط. ومن ثم علينا ان نجذب المزيد من السياح لزيارة مصر طوال العام وذلك عن طريق بناء المزيد من الفنادق وتقديم كل المشاريع الثقافية المتاحة .
٤. لقد أصبحت السياحة اليوم عمل ضخما فهي مصدر جيد للدخل القومي للدول التي تقع في البحر المتوسط. ومن ثم علينا ان نجذب بعض من السياح لزيارة مصر طوال العام وذلك عن طريق بناء المزيد من الفنادق وتقديم كل التسهيلات السياحية المتاحة .

**2. All living creatures need to cooperate in order to achieve their goals. Teamwork, which means the ability of a group to work together, is something we cannot do without. Teamwork, together with tolerance, is essential for the success of any project.**

- ١- تحتاج الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لتحقيق اهدافها فالعمل الجماعي والذي يعنى قدرة الجماعة على العمل مع بعضها ما هي الا شيء يمكن العمل بدونه . العمل الجماعي و التسامح ضروري للنجاح فى كل المشاريع.
- ٢- تحتاج الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لتحقيق اهدافها فالعمل المجتمعي والذي يعنى قدرة الجماعة على العمل مع بعضها ما هي الا شيء لا يمكن العمل بدونه . العمل الجماعي مع التسامح ضروري للنجاح فى أى مشروع.
- ٣- تحتاج الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لتحقيق اهدافها فالعمل الجماعي والذي يعنى قدرة الجماعة على العمل مع بعضها ما هي الا شيء لا يمكن العمل بدونه . العمل الجماعي بدون التسامح ضروري للنجاح فى أى مشروع.
- ٤- تحتاج الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لتحقيق اهدافها فالعمل الجماعي والذي يعنى قدرة الجماعة على العمل مع بعضها ما هي الا شيء لا يمكن العمل بدونه . العمل الجماعي مع التسامح ضروري للنجاح فى أى مشروع.

**3. Every year, millions of trees are cut down to make new paper. Fortunately, the trees give us the best wood for paper grows very quickly. Old paper can also be recycled.**

- ١- كل عام تقطع ملايين الشجار لصنع الورق ولحسن الحظ فإن الاشجار التي تعطينا أفضل الاخشاب تنمو كثيرا والورق القيم يمكن ايضا اعاده تصنيعه
- ٢- كل عام تقطع ملايين الشجار لصنع الورق ولحسن الحظ فإن الاشجار التي تعطينا أفضل الاخشاب تنمو بسرعة كبيرة والورق القديم يمكن ايضا اعاده تصنيعه
- ٣- كل عام تقطع ملايين الشجار لصنع الورق ولحسن الحظ فإن الاشجار التي تعطينا أفضل الاخشاب تنمو بسرعة كبيرة والورق القيم يمكن ايضا اعاده تصديره
- ٤- كل عام تقطع ملايين الشجار لصنع الورق ولحسن الحظ فإن الاشجار التي تعطينا أفضل الاثاث تنمو بسرعة كبيرة والورق القيم يمكن ايضا اعاده تصنيعه

**4- Stress can be a friend or an enemy. It can warn you that you are under too much pressure and you should change your way of life. It can kill you, if you do not notice the warning signals.**

- ١- لا يمكن أن يكون التوتر العصبى عدو أو صديق فهو يمكن ان يحذرك بأنك تحت ضغط شديد وعليك أن تغير طريقة حياتك ويمكن أن يقتلك إذا لم تلاحظ إشارات التحذير.
- ٢- يمكن أن يكون التوتر العصبى عدو أو صديق فهو يمكن ان يحذرك بأنك تحت ضغط شديد وعليك أن تغير طريقة حياتك ويمكن أن يقتلك إذا لم تلاحظ إشارات التحذير.
- ٣- يمكن أن يكون التوتر العصبى عدو أو صديق فهو يمكن ان يحذرك بأنك تحت ضغط شديد وعليك أن تغير طريقة حياتك ويمكن أن يقتلك إذا لاحظت إشارات التحذير
- ٤- :- يمكن أن يكون التوتر العصبى صديق فهو يمكن ان يحذرك بأنك تحت ضغط شديد وعليك أن تغير طريقة حياتك ويمكن أن يقتلك إذا لم تلاحظ إشارات التوتر

**5 - Keeping to rules saves us troubles and avoid us punishment. If people break the rules, it makes life unpredictable. People can get hurt and there could be a complete lack of order.**

- ١- المحافظة على القوانين يجنبنا المشاكل وينجينا من العقاب فلو اطاع الناس القانون لاصبحت حياتهم غير متوقعة فيمكن أن يؤذى متهمين وستعم الفوضى فى كل مكان
- ٢- المحافظة على القوانين يجنبنا المشاكل وينجينا من العقاب فلو خالف الناس القانون لاصبحت حياتهم غير متوقعة فيمكن أن يؤذى أبرياء وستعم الفوضى فى كل مكان .
- ٣- المحافظة على القوانين يجلب لنا المشاكل وينجينا من العقاب فلو اطاع الناس القانون لاصبحت حياتهم غير متوقعة فيمكن أن يؤذى أبرياء وستعم الفوضى فى كل مكان
- ٤- المحافظة على القوانين يجنبنا المشاكل وينجينا من العقاب فلو اطاع الناس القانون لاصبحت حياتهم غير متوقعة فيمكن أن يؤذى أبرياء وستعم الفوضى فى كل مكان

### Test on unit 3

أولا الاسئلة الموضوعية التالية ( كل سؤال بدرجة )

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- We should improve the.....of our products in order to be able to export them.  
a- quantity                      b- ability                      c- quality                      d- possibility
- 2- Films makers depend on ..... effects to impress their audience.  
a- illustrated                      b- visual                      c- paper-thin                      d- permanent
- 3- A / An ..... is a scientist who studies the stars and planets.  
a- astronomer                      b- astronaut                      c- speaker                      d- dentist



4- The view from the top of the mountain is spectacularly beautiful. The antonym of 'spectacularly' is .....

- a- disappointing                      b- wonderful                      c- fantastic                      d- high

5- There is an essential issue should be discussed. The synonym of 'essential' is .....

- a- important                      b- trivial                      c- immersive                      d- annoyed

6- The Ministry of Education should .....new approaches to develop the educational process.

- a- make                      b- give                      c- take                      d- send

7. The government should .....job opportunities not to immigrate to other countries

- a. make                      b. create                      c. perform                      d. decrease

8- Once we hear any news, we.....you.

- a- call                      b- won't call                      c- 'll call                      d- have called

9- By next week, my father ..... to England.

- a- will fly                      b- would fly                      c- will have flown                      d- flies

10- At ten o'clock tomorrow, I ..... on a train to Aswan.

- a- travel                      b- will have travelled                      c- going to travel                      d- will be travelling

**Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Tropical cyclones are called typhoons in Asia and hurricanes in North and South America. These storms go around like a wheel turning to the left when they hit in the northern part of the world. They have wind speeds of 60 kph or more. In the United States, the Tropical Prediction Center in Miami, Florida keeps an eye out for hurricanes. When meteorologists detect a hurricane, they give it a name. They can use either a male or female name. Why should tropical cyclones have names? The name makes it easier for people to keep up with information about a hurricane and its possible dangers. The World Meteorological Organization (WMO), an international weather group, decides what names will be used. The WMO makes lists of names using the English alphabet. Each name on the list starts with a different letter. The first hurricane of the year gets the first name on that year's list. The second hurricane gets the next name. For example, if the first hurricane is named Abel, the second might be named Betty. The name lists do not include beginning with the letters Q, U, X, Y, and Z. There aren't many names that begin with these letters. Asian countries use a different list, which is made up by the WMO's Typhoon Committee. This list has a few personal names, but most of the names are of flowers, animals, trees, and other similar things.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

11- The best title for this passage is .....

- a- Tropical cyclones                      b- Cyclones' speed  
c- The world Meteorological Organization                      d- The USA cyclones

12- Hurricanes and typhoons are two kinds of ( floods -continents -storms -rivers).

13- It can be inferred from the passage that the 5th hurricanes in 2019 might have the name ...

- a- William                      b- Emmy                      c- Andrew                      d- Joliana

14- The writer thinks that .....

- a- using names makes matters easier                      b- Using names makes confusion  
c- Using numbers is better than using names                      d- Using letters is better than using names

15- After reading the passage, what does a meteorologist study?

- a- The science of the atmosphere and its phenomena.  
b- The science of the volcanoes and the earthquakes.  
c- The oceans and the marine life.                      d- The living things and their lives' cycle.

16- According to the passage, the verb "detect" means ( invent-discover -float -sink )

17- Giving the cyclones names helps to .....

- a- call for them easily at any time                      b- send information about them to the WOM  
c- make them known for people to remember them  
d- go around like a wheel turning to the left

18- The main idea of the last paragraph is .....

- a- Cyclones have different names with the same qualities  
b- Hurricanes and typhoons are very different kind of storms  
c- North America doesn't have hurricanes or typhoons

d- Asian typhoons have animals and plants names.

**Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

What sort of food are we likely to be eating in the year 2030 ? Most people, when you ask them a question like that, either say : "There won't be any left," or : "Whatever it is, there won't be much taste in it". Of course, there are good reasons for being pessimistic about the world's food supplies in the future.

Nevertheless, not all the experts share the general despondency. For one thing, although the world's population is rising fast, food production is keeping pace with it, even in developing countries. It is therefore argued that the main reason why people are hungry is not that there is a world food shortage but that methods of cultivation are not sufficiently advanced in some areas and the food is not fairly distributed all those that need it.

Moreover, in most industrial countries, one important cause of trouble is our conservative preference for meat. After all, we are ready for a situation where we feed animals with grain to produce high-quality beef, even though the grain would feed the human population.

By the time our grandchildren have grown up, it seems likely that many of these problems will have been resolved. Scientists are already capable of constructing steaks from vegetable ingredients like soya beans. However, skeptically we may be about their claim that they can reproduce the substance, taste and colour of meat by these means, the fact is that the most common complaint about such "steaks" is that we will no doubt have discovered a way of including artificial bones, skin and fat!

**19-** According to the passage, using vegetables ingredients in one of the methods to overcome the shortage of **( protein - fats- vitamins- calcium )**

**20-** Which of the following can best summarise the last paragraph ?

- Ⓐ Soya beans can change the taste of meat
- Ⓑ Soya beans, steak and food ingredients
- Ⓒ Beans, fats and skin
- Ⓓ Soya beans as a replacement of meat

**21-** There won't be food shortage in the future if the food is .....

- Ⓐ fairly distributed
- Ⓑ unfairly distributed
- Ⓒ of high quality
- Ⓓ of low quality

**22-** The problem of food can be solved if we .....

- Ⓐ use the internet and mass media
- Ⓑ use advanced methods of cultivation
- Ⓒ use more water from the sea
- Ⓓ purify the river water

**23-** According to the passage, our diet may be ..... in the future.

- Ⓐ the same
- Ⓑ difficult
- Ⓒ different
- Ⓓ traditional

**24-** We feed animals on grain to produce .....

- Ⓐ high quantity beef
- Ⓑ fat and food supplies
- Ⓒ skin and vegetables
- Ⓓ high quality beef

**25-** According to the passage, food production is growing .....

- Ⓐ as slow as
- Ⓑ as fast as
- Ⓒ faster than
- Ⓓ slower than

**26-** The main idea of the passage is .....

- Ⓐ The advantages of eating soya beans
- Ⓑ The cause of food shortage and its solution
- Ⓒ The distribution of food
- Ⓓ Population increasing all over the world

**ثانياً الاسئلة الموضوعية التالية ( كل سؤال بدرجتان )**

**27-** I'm not bored with this programme. When ..... ?

- a- is it finish
- b- does it finish
- c- is it going to finish
- d- it finishes

**28-** The train.....when we reach the station. We definitely will not catch it.

- a. leaves
- b- will leave
- c- will have left
- d- is going to leave

**29.**When I go home my wife .....the food. So I will have to help her.

- a. cooks
- b. will be cooking
- c. will have cooked
- d. will be cooked

**30-** Which of the following sentences has the correct punctuation?

- a- If you don't understand, ask your teacher for help.

- b- Ask your teacher for help. If you don't understand.  
 c- Ask you teacher for help; if you don't understand.  
 d- If you don't understand; please ask your teacher for help.

### Choose the correct Arabic translation:

31- When you buy food, buy it from a reliable restaurant, where you know that you can count on your food being tasty and healthy.

- أ- عندما اشتريت طعام، اشتريته من مطعم موثوق به، حيثما تستطيع أن تثق أن طعامك سيكون حسن الطعم وصحي.  
 ب- وقتما تشتري طعام، فلتشتريه من مطعم معروف، لكي تستطيع أن تتأكد أن طعامك سيكون حسن المظهر وصحي.  
 ج- عندما تشتري طعام، فلتشتريه من مطعم موثوق به، حيثما تستطيع أن تثق أن طعامك سيكون لذيذ وصحي.  
 د- كلما تشتري طعام، اشتريه من مطعم ذو سمعة طيبة، حيثما تستطيع أن تثق أن طعامك سيكون متميز وصحي.

32- Most people agree that there is no place like home. It is more than just a place to stay in. It is part one's life and personality.

- أ- يتفق معظم الناس أنه لا يوجد مكان مثل الوطن. فهو أكثر من كونه مكان لتمكث فيه. فهو جزء من حياة الواحد وشخصيته.  
 ب- يتفق معظم الناس أنه لا يوجد مكان مثل المنزل. فهو أكثر من كونه مكان للإقامة فيه. فهو جزء من حياة الفرد وشخصيته.  
 ج- دائما يتفق معظم الناس أن يوجد مكان مثل الوطن. فهو أكبر من كونه مكان لتحمي فيه. فهو جزء من حياة الواحد وشخصيته.  
 د- لقد اتفق معظم الناس دائما أن يوجد مكان مثل المنزل. فهو أكثر من كونه مكان لتحمي فيه. فهو جزء من حياة الفرد وشخصيته.

### Choose the correct English translation:

33- عقدت الكثير من المؤتمرات الدولية لمحاولة إيجاد حل لمشكلة الإحتباس الحراري، ولكننا حتى الآن لم نجد الحل الأمثل.

- a- Many international conferences have been held to find a solution for the global problem, but we couldn't find the most perfect solution.  
 b- Many international conferences had held to find a solution for the global warming problem, but we cannot find the least perfect solution.  
 c- Many international conferences have held to find a solution for the global warming, but we cannot be found the most perfect solution.  
 d- Many international conferences have been held to find a solution for the global warming problem, but we haven't found the most perfect solution.

34- مشكلة نقص الماء أحد أهم المشكلات التي تواجه بلدنا الفترة الحالية وتحاول الحكومة حلها.

- a- Water lack is one of the most important problems that forces our country these days and the government had tried to solve it.  
 b- Water shortage is one of the most important problems that faces our continent nowadays and the government will try to solve it.  
 c- Water lack is one of the most important problems that support our country those day and the government tried to solve it.  
 d- Water shortage is one of the most important problems that faces our country nowadays and the government tries to solve it.

ثالثا الاستئله المقاليه التاليه ( كل سؤال بدرجتان)

### The Novel

35. If you were in Mrs Havisham's place, would you continue wearing the wedding dress for such a long time? Why?

36- Why do you think Joe wanted to return the note to the man in the inn?

رابعا الاستئله المقاليه التاليه ( اربع درجات)

37-Write six lines on the following topic:

"The benefits of joining a sports club"

### chapter 3

When I realised **أدرك** that the man in the inn had met the **convict** **المدان** I helped on the marshes, I wanted to take **Joe** away. Before we could go, however, the man took out a new coin **العملة**. He wrapped **يلف** it in some paper and gave it to me. 'This is yours,' he said, 'but be careful!' Feeling frightened, I took the coin and left with **Joe**. When we got home, we realised that the paper wrapped around the coin was a pound note. **Joe** went back to the inn immediately to try to find the man and return his note to him.

However, the man had left. Mrs **Joe** put the pound note on a shelf **الرف** where it would be safe and there it remained **ظلت**. On my next visit to Miss **Havisham's** house, **Estella** took me into a **gloomy** **باهت** room where three ladies and a gentleman were waiting. They were Miss **Havisham's** relatives **إقارب**, **Sarah**, **Georgiana**, **Camilla** and **Raymond Pocket**, and they had also come to see her that day. A bell **جرس** rang far away. Miss **Havisham** was ready to see me. Holding up her candle **شمعه**, **Estella** led me through the dark house. 'Well, boy!' she asked. 'Am I pretty?' **جميلة** 'Yes, you are very pretty.'

'Why don't you cry?' she asked, looking unkindly at me.

'I'll never cry again,' I said. Just then, we met a large, dark-haired man on the stairs.

'Ah, you are a neighbour **جار**, I think?' he asked. 'Yes, sir,' I replied.

'Why are you here, boy?' 'Miss **Havisham** asked for me,' I explained.

'Well, **behave yourself** **تأدب**! This is not a place for children to play,' he said, before walking away. I thought that he might be a doctor, and I continued walking up the stairs. I soon found myself in Miss **Havisham's** room again. Everything was the same as before.

'So! Are you ready to play?' she asked. 'I don't think I am, madam,' I replied.

'Well, do you want to work then?' I said that I did, and she told me to wait for her in the dining room opposite. When I entered the dark room, I could see a long table laid with a table-cloth and plates, prepared for a wedding celebration **احتفال زفاف**, but now it was **dusty** and covered with **spiders' webs** **خيوط العنكبوت**. The room looked like it had been exactly the same for many years. There were spiders and mice **فئران** everywhere. I was looking around the room and watching the spiders when Miss **Havisham** came quietly into the room behind me. 'What do you think that is?' asked Miss **Havisham**, pointing at a tall shape in the centre of the table. I went closer.

'It's a cake, **Pip**. A wedding cake! Mine!' she went on. 'And now, walk with me.'

She asked me to walk with her around the room, which we did for some minutes, until **Estella** and the **Pockets** came in. They asked about Miss **Havisham's** health and wished her a happy birthday, but she sent them away. 'That wedding cake was brought here, a long time before you were born,' Miss **Havisham** told me. 'And everything is still here.' She stood for a long time, looking at the table. Then we returned to her dressing room and Miss **Havisham** told **Estella** and me to play. So we sat down to play games in her dressing room but this time **Estella** refused to speak to me. Finally, Miss **Havisham** asked me to return in a few days and allowed me to leave. **Estella** led me out of the house, again put my food and drink on the ground and shut the door.

Alone in the garden, I was surprised to see another boy looking at me out of a window.

He disappeared **اختفى** into the house, and then came out into the garden to speak to me. He had very pale skin **جلد باهت** and short fair hair, so in my mind **في عقلي**, I called him 'the pale young gentleman'. 'Hello, who let you in?' he asked. '**Estella**,' I replied. 'Come and fight **نتقاتل**, then!' he said, preparing to hit me. The boy was my age, but much taller than me. I ran at him hard and he fell over. He jumped up, prepared to fight again, so I ran at him again. This time he got a black eye. He did not seem to be strong and never hit me hard.

The fight continued for several minutes until the boy was on his knees **ركبتيه**, saying, 'You have won!' He was so brave **شجاع** that I felt sorry for him. 'Can I help?' I asked. 'No, thank you. Goodbye,' he answered. I knew that it was time to leave.

I did not see the pale young gentleman at Miss **Havisham's** again, although my visits continued. Nothing ever changed. Miss **Havisham** sat in her wedding dress, in her **dusty** dressing room; **Estella** and I played games as she watched; and Miss **Havisham** asked if I thought **Estella** was pretty. I always said yes, and Miss **Havisham** seemed happy with this answer. Mrs **Joe** and Uncle **Pumblechook** had been talking about the same thing ever since I had started to visit Miss **Havisham**. They were sure that she wanted to give me all her money, And they wanted my visits to continue. 'What will you be when you grow up, **Pip**?' she asked one day.

'I am going to become Joe's **apprentice** **صبي** and learn to be a blacksmith **حداد**,' I said. 'Then tell **Joe** to come here at once,' she replied. When **Joe** came with me on my next visit, Miss **Havisham** gave him a large bag of money. '**Pip** will become your apprentice now,' she said. 'He is a good boy and this is his reward. The money is to pay for his apprenticeship **تدريب مهني**. But that's your lot! This is all you will get from me, Mr **Gargery**!' 'Shall I visit you again, Miss **Havisham**?' I asked. 'No,' she replied, '**Joe** is your boss now. **Estella**, show them out!' And so my apprenticeship with **Joe** began.

But I had changed. I no longer wanted to be a blacksmith; now, I was ashamed of **مكسوف** my home and my family. **Estella** was often in my thoughts, although I did not see her any more. I was sure that she did not like my position **مكانه** in life, so I continued my education and worked hard. This was largely thanks to **Biddy**, who gave me lessons and taught me as much as she knew. Although she was older than me, **Biddy** was my friend.

About a year after my apprenticeship with **Joe** had begun, I asked **Joe** for an afternoon's holiday, so that I could visit Miss **Havisham** and thank her for helping me. When **Orlick**, **Joe's** workman, heard that I was going, he was very angry. He did not think it was right that I should have an afternoon's holiday, while he could not have one too. I did not like **Orlick**; he was large and slow, and he often tried to make my life difficult at work. An **argument** **جدال** began between **Orlick** and Mrs **Joe**, who wanted me to see Miss **Havisham** again. In the end, **Joe** had to stop them. But there was something strange about **Orlick**, but I **could not put my finger on** **افهم** what it was.

## Chapter three

1. Should Pip have taken Joe away from the mysterious man **الرجل الغامض** in the inn? Why?

- Yes, he didn't want the mysterious man to tell Joe that Pip helped the convict by giving him the file and the food.

2. Why do you think the mysterious man in the inn gave Pip a coin wrapped in a banknote?



- It was a reward from the convict who Pip had helped at the marches.

**3. Why do you think Pip felt frightened when the mysterious man in the inn gave him a coin?**

- Yes, he thought that Joe might know that he had stolen a file and food to give to the convict.

**4. If you were Estella, would you try to break Pips heart يبب? Why?**

- Yes, I would feel that it's my duty to break men's hearts to please يسعد Miss Havisham.

- No, he didn't hurt يؤذي me and he was only a young orphan boy. يتيم

**5. Do you think that Mrs Havisham really wanted Pip to come and play with Estella? Why?**

- No, she just hoped that Pip would be attracted يجذب to Stella, and then it would be Estella's role to break his heart.

**6. Is it psychologically نفسيا accepted that Miss Havisham wanted Estella to break Pip's heart? Why?**

- Yes, The trauma Mrs Havisham went through made her aspire to take revenge on men.

- No, Miss Havisham could have overcome يتغلب her trauma معضله and lived normally. She should have taken revenge تأخذ بالثأر on those who caused her suffering.

**7. If you were in Mrs Havisham's place, would you continue wearing the wedding dress for such a long time? Why?**

- No, I would try to overcome my suffering to live normally. طبيعيا

- Yes, because what I had suffered on my wedding day was too much for anyone to bear.

**8. Do you pity Pip for his situation with Mrs Havisham and Estella? Why?**

- Yes, he caused them no harm. They shouldn't have tried break his heart or treat him badly. Pip was a victim of Miss Havisham psychological complex. معقدة نفسيا

**9. If you were Pip, would you be on good terms متوافق مع with Orlick? Why?**

- No, because he often tried to make my life difficult at work. I suspect يشك that he was the one that attacked هاجم my sister.

**10. Should Estella have been cruel قاسي to Pip? Why?**

- No, because Pip's being common عامي or his humble position متواضعة in life is no excuse for her to treat يعامل him in such a cruel way.

**11- Why do you think Joe wanted to return the note to the man in the inn?**

- He thought that the man may have given it to Pip by mistake. They didn't deserve يستحق it

**12- Why do you think the dining room of Miss Havisham hadn't changed for many years?**

- As she didn't want to change anything as her life stopped at the moment of her fiancé's خطيب escape.

**13- Why do you think Miss Havisham was asking Pip about his opinion of Estella?**

- Because she was sure that he admired her and she was in his thoughts and Miss Havisham wanted to know if Estella had a strong effect تأثير قوي on men to use her against them.

**14- To what extent الى اي مدى did Estella affect him?**

- Pip no longer wanted to be a blacksmith; he was ashamed مكسوف of his home and his family. Estella was often in his thoughts, although he did not see her any more. He did not like his position in life, so he continued his education and worked hard.

**15- Why do you think the servants of Miss Havisham's house didn't clean it?**

- I think she ordered them to leave all the things as they were on the day of marriage as she was sad and shocked and to remember what happened to her. She couldn't overcome this crisis. ازمه

**16- Do you think Pip was not ambitious طموح? Why /why not?**

- No, he was ambitious and wanted to change to the better but when Miss Havisham asked him what he wanted to be, he told her he wanted to be a blacksmith as his world was small and he didn't see other positions to choose and compare. When he found a real chance he refused to be a blacksmith.

**17- Do you think that Pip is becoming a better person after meeting Miss Havisham? Why?**

Pip now wants to learn as much as he can, which is good. However, he only wants to do this because he thinks Estella will like him more. He is becoming ashamed of his home and family because they are poor, and Joe is just a blacksmith. This does not make him a better person.

# Unit Four

## Vocabulary

Taking care of ourselves  
الاعتناء بانفسنا  
By: Mr El Sebael Atteya

## Key vocabulary

|                   |                  |                      |                |                        |              |
|-------------------|------------------|----------------------|----------------|------------------------|--------------|
| <b>burnout</b>    | ارهاق بدني وعقلي | <b>mental health</b> | حاله نفسيه     | <b>stress</b>          | توتر         |
| <b>cope with</b>  | يتواكب مع        | <b>pout</b>          | يتجهم          | <b>suppose</b>         | يفترض        |
| <b>exhausted</b>  | مجهّد            | <b>promote</b>       | ينمي - يرقى    | <b>time management</b> | اداره الوقت  |
| <b>frown</b>      | يكشر - يعبس      | <b>scold</b>         | يؤنب - يوبخ    | <b>management</b>      | اداره        |
| <b>improve</b>    | يحسن             | <b>self-care</b>     | العنايه بالنفس | <b>diary</b>           | يومي         |
| <b>well-being</b> | سعادته - رفاهيه  | <b>scared</b>        | خائف           | <b>responsibility</b>  | مستوليه      |
| <b>reaction</b>   | رد فعل           | <b>counselor</b>     | مستشار         | <b>basis</b>           | اساس         |
| <b>experience</b> | يعاني من         | <b>priority</b>      | اولويه         | <b>impact</b>          | تأثير        |
| <b>efficient</b>  | كفاء             | <b>get together</b>  | يتقابل         | <b>identify</b>        | يتعرف علي    |
| <b>energy</b>     | طاقه             | <b>normal</b>        | طبيعي          | <b>specific</b>        | خاص          |
| <b>teenager</b>   | مراهق            | <b>routine</b>       | نظام يومي      | <b>sign</b>            | يوقع - علامه |

## Definitions

|                        |                                                                                                                       |                        |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| <b>burnout</b>         | a situation where you can't do anything because you're so tired and stressed.                                         | الاجهاد الجسدي والنفسي |
| <b>well-being</b>      | 1-how good you feel in your body and how happy you are<br>2. a contented state of being happy, healthy and prosperous | رفاهيه - سعادته        |
| <b>mental health</b>   | how a person thinks and the emotions they feel.                                                                       | الحاله النفسيه         |
| <b>self-care</b>       | taking care of your body and how you feel.                                                                            | العنايه بالنفس         |
| <b>time management</b> | organizing when you do things and for how long.                                                                       | اداره الوقت            |
| <b>cope</b>            | to deal successfully with difficult situations.                                                                       | يتواكب مع              |
| <b>stress</b>          | a feeling of being very worried and scared about your life.                                                           | توتر                   |
| <b>promote</b>         | support and encourage the development of something                                                                    | ينمي - يرقى - يترقى    |
| <b>scold</b>           | to criticize someone angrily about something they have done                                                           | يوبخ / يعنف            |
| <b>frown</b>           | to make an angry, unhappy expression, moving your eyebrows                                                            | يتجهم / عبوس           |
| <b>pout</b>            | to push out your lower lip as you are annoyed or unhappy.                                                             | يوز / استياء           |
| <b>suppose</b>         | you think something is true although you are uncertain about it.                                                      | يفترض                  |
| <b>alter</b>           | to change                                                                                                             | يغير                   |
| <b>teenager</b>        | someone who is between 13 and 19 years old.                                                                           | مراهق                  |
| <b>counsellor</b>      | someone whose job is to help and support people.                                                                      | مستشار                 |
| <b>caffeine</b>        | a substance in tea, coffee and other drinks that makes you feel active.                                               | كافيين                 |
| <b>endorphins</b>      | a chemical produced by your body to reduce pain and can make you happy                                                | ماده الاندورفين        |
| <b>athletics</b>       | a group of sporting activities including running and jumping. It is an important part of the Olympics                 | العاب القوي            |
| <b>social media</b>    | Ways of sharing information, opinions, images, videos using the internet.                                             | التواصل الاجتماعي      |

|          |                                                                               |        |
|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| reaction | something that you feel or do because of something that has happened or been. | رد فعل |
| back     | the part of the body between the neck and legs.                               | الظهر  |

## Be honest , don't look at the table

### Quickly – Quickly- Quickly Test yourself

#### Choose the right answers:

1- Having regular time off work is necessary for both your ..... as well as your physical fitness.

a. priority                      b. reaction                      c. mental health                      d. time management

2- To ..... is to think that something is probably true, based on what you know.

a. pout                      b. frown                      c. scold                      d. suppose

3- '.....' is an adjective that describes the feeling of being very tired.

a. Mental                      b. Exhausted                      c. Poor                      d. Urgent

4- ..... means organising when you do things and for how long.

a. Time management                      b. Stress                      c. Well-being                      d. Mental health

5- To ..... is to deal with difficult situations.

a. cope                      b. promote                      c. alter                      d. pour

6- ..... means how good you feel in your body and how happy you are.

a. Mental health                      b. Well-being                      c. Self-cared                      d. Burnout

7- ..... means how a person thinks and the emotions they feel.

a. Mental health                      b. Well-being                      c. Self-care                      d. Burnout

8- To ..... is to angrily criticize someone, especially a child, about something they have done.

a. pout                      b. frown                      c. scold                      d. suppose

9- To ..... is to help something to develop or increase.

a. cope                      b. promote                      c. alter                      d. prove

10- To ..... is to make an angry, unhappy, or confused expression, moving your eyebrows together.

a. pout                      b. frown                      c. scold                      d. suppose

### Lesson one and two

|                |                          |              |              |                 |               |
|----------------|--------------------------|--------------|--------------|-----------------|---------------|
| alter          | يغير - يتغير             | amount       | كمية         | concentrate on  | يركز علي      |
| connection     | رابطة                    | avoid        | يتجنب        | behaviour       | سلوك          |
| clear off      | يزول - يغادر             | creation     | خلق - ابداع  | pain            | الم           |
| please         | يسعد                     | choice       | اختيار       | react           | يقوم برد فعل  |
| deal with      | يتعامل مع                | decision     | قرار         | demonstrate     | يوضح - يتظاهر |
| poem           | قصيدة                    | pour down    | تهطل         | pressure        | ضغط           |
| responsibility | مسئولية                  | emotions     | عواطف        | frustrated      | محبط          |
| headache       | صداع                     | shoulder     | كتف - يتحمل  | situation       | موقف          |
| skill          | مهارة                    | stressed     | مضغوط        | Suffer from     | يعاني من      |
| sunshine       | ضوء الشمس                | surprise     | مفاجاه       | memos           | مذكرات        |
| particular     | خاص                      | perfectly    | بالتقان      | anxiety         | القلق         |
| interact       | يتفاعل                   | issue        | موضوع - قضية | keep up         | يواصل - يستمر |
| limit          | يحدد - يقلل              | psychologist | عالم نفس     | reduce          | يقلل          |
| reseacher      | باحث                     | constantly   | باستمرار     | current affairs | شئون حاله     |
| downside       | عيب                      | face to face | وجها لوجه    | caffeine        | كافيين        |
| category       | فئة - صنف                | chemical     | كيميائي      | consider        | يعتبر - يفكر  |
| contagious     | مصنف - فتوي              | urgent       | عاجل         | stretch         | يمتد - يمد    |
| endorphins     | اندرفين ( هرمون السعادة) | promise      | يعطي وعد     | physical health | الصحة البدنيه |
| do revision    | مراجعة                   | as a result  | كنتيجة       | whole           | كل            |
| real           | حقيقي                    | reason       | سبب          | plan            | يخطط          |

### Lesson 3 & 4 and 5

|                          |                       |                        |                   |                         |                     |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>add</b>               | يضيف - يجمع           | <b>activities</b>      | انشطه             | <b>according to</b>     | بالنسبه ل           |
| <b>order</b>             | يأمر - امر            | <b>health problems</b> | مشاكل صحيه        | <b>resilience</b>       | المرونة             |
| <b>back</b>              | الظهر                 | <b>result</b>          | نتيجه             | <b>take care of</b>     | يعتني ب             |
| <b>tips</b>              | نصائح - بقشيش         | <b>danger</b>          | خطر               | <b>headaches</b>        | صداع                |
| <b>technique</b>         | طريقه - اسلوب         | <b>period</b>          | فتره - جلسه       | <b>partner</b>          | شريك - يشارك        |
| <b>factors</b>           | عوامل                 | <b>system</b>          | نظام              | <b>focus on</b>         | يركز علي            |
| <b>position</b>          | مكانه - وضع           | <b>reasons</b>         | اسباب             | <b>external</b>         | خارجي               |
| <b>perceive</b>          | يدرك - يفهم           | <b>signs</b>           | اشارات            | <b>brainstorm</b>       | عصف ذهني - استنثاره |
| <b>perception</b>        | ادراك - فهم           | <b>criticize</b>       | ينقد              | <b>eyebrow</b>          | حاجب                |
| <b>notice</b>            | يلاحظ                 | <b>seem to</b>         | يبدو              | <b>normal</b>           | طبيعي               |
| <b>marks</b>             | علامات - درجات - يصحح | <b>join</b>            | ينضم الي          | <b>upload</b>           | يحمل علي النت       |
| <b>set up</b>            | يؤسس                  | <b>news</b>            | اخبار             | <b>anxious</b>          | قلق                 |
| <b>calm down</b>         | يهدئ                  | <b>athletics</b>       | العب القوي        | <b>events</b>           | احداث               |
| <b>interview</b>         | مقابله                | <b>specific</b>        | محدد              | <b>reaction</b>         | رد فعل              |
| <b>substance</b>         | ماده                  | <b>social media</b>    | التواصل الاجتماعي | <b>wet</b>              | مبلل                |
| <b>remain</b>            | يبقى                  | <b>positive</b>        | ايجابي            | <b>negative</b>         | سلبي                |
| <b>automatically</b>     | تلقائيا               | <b>aware of</b>        | مدرك ل            | <b>disappoint</b>       | يخيب امل            |
| <b>edition</b>           | طبعه                  | <b>extend</b>          | يمد - يبسط        | <b>gratitude</b>        | العرفان بالجميل     |
| <b>optimistic</b>        | متفائل                | <b>participant</b>     | مشارك             | <b>trust</b>            | يثق                 |
| <b>perfectionist</b>     | باحث عن الكمال        | <b>struggle</b>        | يكافح             | <b>athletics</b>        | العب قوي            |
| <b>gradually</b>         | بالتدريج              | <b>member</b>          | عضو               | <b>step</b>             | خطوه                |
| <b>hesitated</b>         | متردد                 | <b>nasty</b>           | مؤذي - لعين       | <b>hammer</b>           | شاكوش               |
| <b>proof</b>             | دليل                  | <b>benefactor</b>      | محسن              | <b>worth the effort</b> | يستحق المجهود       |
| <b>object to + v ing</b> | يعترض                 | <b>fortune</b>         | ثروه              | <b>household</b>        | اهل البيت           |
| <b>apartment</b>         | شقه                   | <b>properties</b>      | ممتلكات           | <b>scare</b>            | خائف من             |
| <b>apprentice</b>        | تلميذ يتعلم           | <b>injure</b>          | يصيب              | <b>guest</b>            | ضيف                 |
| <b>crowd</b>             | جمهور - مجموعه        | <b>expectation</b>     | توقع              | <b>release</b>          | يطلق                |
| <b>apprenticeship</b>    | تدريب مهني            | <b>act</b>             | يتصرف             | <b>break into</b>       | يقتحم               |
| <b>from now on</b>       | من الآن فصاعدا        | <b>set my heart on</b> | عزمت على          | <b>suspect</b>          | يشك في - مشتبه في   |
| <b>ashamed of</b>        | مكسوف من              | <b>congratulate on</b> | يهنيء             | <b>make a gentleman</b> | يجعله رجلا          |

### Expressions

|                                    |                       |                                             |                   |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>do activities</b>               | يمارس انشطه           | <b>do exercise</b>                          | يعمل تمارين       |
| <b>go for a walk</b>               | يتمشي                 | <b>deal with</b>                            | يتعامل مع         |
| <b>have a headache</b>             | يعاني من الصداع       | <b>leave out</b>                            | يستبعد            |
| <b>give me a headache</b>          | يسبب لي صداع          | <b>pour down</b>                            | تهطل - تنهمر      |
| <b>do things</b>                   | يعمل اشياء            | <b>take care of = look after = care for</b> | يهتم ب            |
| <b>pressure on</b>                 | ضغوط علي              | <b>experience burnout</b>                   | يعاني من الاجهاد  |
| <b>get stressed about</b>          | يتوتر بشأن            | <b>on the downside</b>                      | علي الجانب السلبي |
| <b>spend + ( v+ing ) doing</b>     | يقضي                  | <b>make decisions</b>                       | يتخذ قرار         |
| <b>in danger of</b>                | في خطر                | <b>take \ bear responsibility for</b>       | يتحمل المسئوليه   |
| <b>feel exhausted</b>              | مجهد                  | <b>do a sport</b>                           | يمارس رياضه       |
| <b>pay attention to</b>            | يعطي اهتمام           | <b>set up my phone</b>                      | يضبط المنبه       |
| <b>a ten-minute break</b>          | استراحة لمدة ١٠ دقائق | <b>make notes on</b>                        | يأخذ ملاحظات      |
| <b>feel lonely</b>                 | يشعر بالوحده          | <b>a special technique</b>                  | طريقه خاصه        |
| <b>on a regular basis</b>          | بشكل منتظم            | <b>make suggestions</b>                     | يعما اقتراح       |
| <b>reduce stress</b>               | يقلل التوتر           | <b>suggest organising</b>                   | يقترح تنظيم       |
| <b>avoid having much caffeine</b>  | يتجنب شرب الكافيين    | <b>try best</b>                             | يفعل ما في وسعه   |
| <b>order of priority</b>           | ترتيب الاولويه        | <b>concentrate on = focus on</b>            | يركز علي          |
| <b>stay up</b>                     | يسهر                  | <b>work out</b>                             | يحل - يستنبط      |
| <b>the rain comes pouring down</b> | تهطل الامطار          | <b>think about</b>                          | يفكر في           |
| <b>make changes</b>                | يعمل تغيير            | <b>aware of</b>                             | مدرك ل            |
| <b>make time for</b>               | يوفر وقت ل            | <b>fall asleep</b>                          | ينام - يغفو       |
| <b>spread awareness</b>            | ينشر الوعي            | <b>whatever comes</b>                       | مهما يأتي         |

|                              |               |                                 |                |
|------------------------------|---------------|---------------------------------|----------------|
| <b>start by talking</b>      | يبدأ بقول     | <b>how much time</b>            | كم كميه الوقت  |
| <b>get any worse</b>         | يسبب اذي اكثر | <b>take action</b>              | يقوم بالرد     |
| <b>dress my wounds</b>       | أضمد جراحي    | <b>kind to</b>                  | عطوف ل         |
| <b>grateful for</b>          | متشكر ل       | <b>adapt to</b>                 | يتكيف علي      |
| <b>external purification</b> | طهارة خارجية  | <b>suffer from = experience</b> | يعاني من       |
| <b>internal purification</b> | طهارة داخلية  | <b>quite angry.</b>             | غاضب الي حد ما |

**Be honest , don't look at the table**

**Quickly – Quickly- Quickly Test yourself**

**Choose the right answers:**

1. We shouldn't put a lot of pressures ( in -on -at - with) youth. They don't find jobs easily nowadays.
2. I spent all the night ( study- studying- studied- studies) English .
- 3- Ahmad Zewail used a ( private- special ) technique to discover the femto second.
4. After her husband's death , the old woman felt ( alone -lonely -boring - exhausted ).
- 5-Parents should take the ( bags- pressures- technique- responsibility ) of bringing their children well.
6. The prices are very high. The government should reduce (pressures- stresses abilities- questions ) on people .
7. Students suffer from a lot of pressures . The ministry of Education should reduce the (stress-ability-questions- death) by making a lot of experimental exams for them.
8. We should avoid (mix- mixing- mixed – to mixing ) with bad people.
9. We should have two ( hours- hour's -hour – hurs's ) break to have lunch every day.
10. Students in universities should ( make- do - give - send ) notes while lecturers explain their topics.
11. We suggest ( to go- went- going- to going ) out to watch the match in a café.
12. Students should ( make- do- give –revise ) revision regularly to get high marks.
13. All the Egyptian people should be (were – know –aware -helpful ) of the dangers that surround our beloved country.
14. We should (make - do- give –revise ) changes in the order of furniture in our houses to feel different.
15. The students of faculties of engineering must (make - do- give –revise) special projects to be able to graduate.

### Derivatives

| Verb              |             | Noun                          |                    | Adjective                |                |
|-------------------|-------------|-------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|----------------|
| <b>manage</b>     | يدير        | <b>manager- management</b>    | مدير- ادارة        |                          | متضمن          |
| <b>Solve</b>      | يحل         | <b>solution</b>               | حل                 |                          |                |
| <b>suppose</b>    | يفترض       | <b>supposition</b>            | افتراض             | <b>Supposable</b>        | محتمل          |
| <b>exhaust</b>    | يجهد        | <b>exhaustion</b>             | اجهاد              | <b>exhausted</b>         | مجهد           |
| <b>promote</b>    | يرقي - ينمي | <b>promotion</b>              | ترقيه              | <b>promotable</b>        | قابل للترقيه   |
|                   |             | <b>skill</b>                  | مهارة              | <b>skilled - skilful</b> | ماهر           |
| <b>pain</b>       | يتألم       | <b>pain</b>                   | الم                | <b>painful</b>           | مؤلم           |
| <b>scare</b>      | يفزع - يخوف | <b>scare</b>                  | خوف - فزع          | <b>scared</b>            | مفزع           |
| <b>affect</b>     | يؤثر        | <b>effect</b>                 | تأثير              | <b>effective</b>         | مطبوع          |
| <b>alter</b>      | يغير        | <b>alter</b>                  | تغيير              |                          |                |
| <b>scold</b>      | يوبخ / يعنف | <b>scold</b>                  | امراه سليطه اللسان |                          |                |
| <b>counsell</b>   | ينصح        | <b>counsellor</b>             | مستشار             |                          |                |
| <b>partner</b>    | يشارك       | <b>Partner- partnership</b>   | شريك - شراكه       | <b>partnered</b>         | مشارك          |
| <b>Connect to</b> | يرتبط ب     | <b>connection</b>             | ربط                | <b>connectable</b>       | قابل للاتصال   |
| <b>frustrate</b>  | يحبط        | <b>frustration</b>            | احباط              | <b>frustrated</b>        | محبط           |
| <b>interview</b>  | يقابل       | <b>Interview- interviewer</b> | مقابله - المذيع    | <b>interviewable</b>     | مستعد للمقابله |



**Words, Synonyms and Antonyms**

| Word        | Meaning            | Synonyms                            | Antonyms                      | Meaning        |
|-------------|--------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------|
| mental      | عقلي               |                                     | physical                      | بدني           |
| alter       | يغير               | modify - change                     | maintain-keep- preserve       | يبقي           |
| promote     | يؤيد - يرفع - يشجع | support - develop - boost - improve | demote-depress-hinder- worsen | يخفض           |
| scold       | يوبخ / يعنف        | reproach - blame -reprove           | praise                        | يمدح           |
| pout        | يوز / استياء       | inflate - frown                     | grin - smile                  | يتسم - ابتسامه |
| calm down   | يهدئ               | relieve -ease                       |                               | مساواه - عدل   |
| set up      | يؤسس               | build- construct-erect              | demolish                      | يهدم           |
| perceive    | يدرك - يفهم        | understand - realise                |                               |                |
| burnout     | ارهاق- انهيار      | exhaustion                          | endurance                     | تحمل - صبر     |
| concentrate | يركز               | focus                               | distract                      | يلهي - يشوش    |
| connection  | ربط - صلة          | link -relation                      | separation - disconnection    | فصل            |
| cope        | يتواكب- يتأقلم مع  | manage - overcome                   | retreat - yield               | يخضع- يستسلم   |
| particular  | خاص - محدد         | specific -appropriate-              | general- common               | عام - شائع     |

**Synonyms & Antonyms**

Choose the correct word from a, b, c or d :

1- The child pouted when he didn't get the toy he wanted. The antonym of pout is.....  
a. frown                      b. scolded                      c. smell                      d. smile

2- The synonym of stress is .....

a. pressure                      b. relaxation                      c.happiness                      d. pleasure

3- The antonym of Mental is .....

a. ideal                      b. physical                      c. lawful                      d. mindful

4- The synonym of well being is .....

a. luxury                      b. burnout                      c. exhaustion                      d. stress

5- The synonym of pout is .....

a. frown                      b. scolded                      c. smell                      d. smile

6- The synonym of set up is .....

a) install                      b) found                      c) destroy                      d) a&b

7- "We should improve our educational system. The synonym of improve is .....

a. worsen                      b. enhance                      c. strong                      d. get better

8- "We improve well refreshing our selves. The antonym of improve is .....

a. worsen                      b. develop                      c. promote                      d. enhance

9- When one is under stress, this means they suffer from .....

a. pressure                      b. relaxation                      c. disappointment                      d. compliment

10. I suppose we could go to the movies tonight. The synonym of suppose is .....

a. reject                      b. refuse                      c. support                      d. assume

## Language Notes

### 1- spend + يقضي v. ing

- He **spent** two hours **playing** the piano.

### # - spend + ينفق on + noun.

- He **spent** a lot of money **on** food.

### 2 - hard

No one passed the exam. It was **hard**.

#### hard

Rana **studies hard** to get high marks

#### Hardly (adv.)

There is **hardly any** water in the glass.

It's **very dark** in this room. I can **hardly see**. He **hardly comes** on time. He is going to be fired

### Test yourself

1. Ali ( hard- hardly) comes to school on time. He is lazy.
2. Ali works ( hard- hardly) to get his family's needs.
3. We spent all the evening ( prepare- preparing ) our house for the feast.

### 3- responsible for مسئول عن - irresponsible غير مسئول عن ( bear- take) responsibility مسئولية

- Nurseries are **responsible for** the children in their care.
- Ola was **irresponsible** when she lost her neighbor's dog.
- Fatherhood is **a lifelong responsibility**.
- You need to **take responsibility for** the things that you can control.

### 4- experience تجربه معمل experiment تجربه معمل - يجرب - يعاني من experience خبره (غير معدودة)

- They offered me the job because I had **a lot of experience**
- I had **a lot of interesting experiences** during my year in Africa..
- In labs, scientists **do a lot of experiments**.
- If you suffer from burnout, you will **experience a lot of stress**.
- people experiencing burnout feel like they can't live their lives normally

### 5- suggest that + فاعل (should+ مصدر) - suggest + v.ing يقترح

I **suggest** that you **(should) visit** the museum first  
she **suggested going** shopping on Friday.

-suggest that + فاعل (to مصدر بدون)

- In every day English: ( I suggest that she cooks lunch for us ).

### Test yourself

1. Sami is (responsible-irresponsible- experienced) .He can't be in charge of anything asked from him.
2. It's difficult to( do- make- take) responsibility for bringing up two young children. They need a mother with them.
3. Ali suggests that he ( gets- get- got – would get) lunch for us
4. My father suggests( to spend- spending- spends) our holiday in Mersa Matruh.
5. My father has a lot of ( experiments- experience- responsibility-action). He has worked for more than 20 years in the field of digital marketing.
6. I suggest that he (had found- finds- find-hasfound) another place to set up a project. (ثع ٢٠٢٤)
7. We should teach our children to ( give- take- advise- suggest) responsibility to be good citizens.
8. We prefer spending our time ( to read- reading- to reading- read) useful books.
9. He ( hard- hardly) studies his lessons. He is lazy.
- 10.He studies ( hard- hardly). He wants to get high marks.

### 6 - alone لوحده ليس معه احد - lonely يشعر بالوحده

- You **shouldn't leave a child alone** in the house.
- No one lives with him. He **lives alone**.
- After his wife's death, he **felt lonely**

**7- Scare** يخيف - **-scared** خائف - **- scary** مخيف - **-sacred** مقدس - **-scar** ندبه  
 Don't **scare** the children. He causes **scare** by his deeds.  
 He felt **scared** when he heard the lion. These stories seem scary.  
 Teaching is a **sacred** profession. A man with **a scar** on the face killed the girl.

**8 - gradually** بالتدريج - **- regularly** بانتظام  
 -Ali goes to the club (**gradually- regularly**) . -He never goes late.  
 -Ali's health improved (**gradually- regularly**) after taking the medicine. Each day is better

9- لاحظ استخدام فعل مفرد مع الكلمات الآتية ولكن عند الإشارة إليها بضمير نستخدم ضمير جمع (they, them, their):

everyone / everybody / someone / somebody / no one / nobody / anyone / any body / (any / every person)

-Everyone **benefits** from space technology in **their** everyday lives.  
 -Everyone **has their** own ideas about the best way to bring up children.  
**Someone is** knocking on the door. **aren't they?**

### Test yourself

1. Every student had a bubble sheet. ( He- She- They-We) began to answer.
2. The car gained its speed( gradually- regularly).
- 3.The baby felt ( scare- scared- scar) and began to cry.
4. Students should attend their schools (gradually- regularly).
5. I live ( alone- lonely) after my wife's death. I need to marry.
6. The criminal has a (scare- scared- scar) on his face . He is frightening.

10 – **routine** (روتين يومي) - **custom** (عاده شعب) - **red tape** (اجراءات روتينيه تعطل العمل)

- My daily routine is going to school every day.
- We must get rid of the red tape in government offices.
- In Egypt, it's the people's custom to visit their relatives on feasts.

11- **do a revision** مراجعة خطة يعد - **make a revision plan** مراجعة يجرى

12- **sign** ( يافطه – علامه ) - **signal** ..... ( اشاره لاسلكيه - ضوئيه )  
 -He raised his hand in **a sign of greeting**. - Didn't you see the "**No smoking**" sign?  
 -Our mobile phones send and receive **signals** all the time  
 -The soldiers were waiting for the **signal** to start firing.

13 - **connected to** مرتبط او متصل بمصدر طاقة - **connected with** متعلق ب – علي صلة ب  
 The computer is connected to a printer.  
 He **is connected with some important persons** in Cairo .  
 There was no evidence that the man **was connected with the crime**.

14 -**life** ( الحياه بصفه عامه عكي الموت ) - **a life** الحياه محدده بشخص او شيء

### Test yourself

1. My father's ( redtape- custom- routine) is to visit his sister every Friday.
2. Students should ( make- do- give- take ) good revisions before exams.
3. Students should ( make- do- give- take ) a good revision plan before exams.
4. There is no ( a life- life-lives) on the moon.
5. He shook his head as a ( signal – sigh) of refusal.
6. My mobile can't catch a ( sign- signal) as we on a desert road.
7. It's our ( routine- custom) to eat fessikh on Sham el Nesseim.
8. Before using the oven , we should make sure it is ( connected- communicated-contacted) to the socket.

## Lesson one and two

**Listen to three students talking about situations.....: (SB. P.45)**

**Nour** : At the moment, I just feel exhausted all the time. I play computer games with my friends after school every evening. Then I don't start doing my homework until about 9 o'clock in the evening. By the time I finish my homework, it's 11 o'clock or even midnight. So, I don't get to bed until it's really late and then I'm exhausted the next day at school and I can't keep up in my lessons.

**Ibrahim** : I spend a lot of time looking after my grandfather, who's seventy-four years old and is ill at the moment. I go to school and then as soon as I get home, I spend the next few hours making him something to eat, reading to him and helping him to wash, things like that. I have to get up early in the morning to do my homework before school and I never seem to have any time to do anything for myself.

**Heba** : It's always my goal to get the best grades that I possibly can at school. It seems that the only way to do that is to spend all of my time on my schoolwork. So, I work as hard as I can when I'm at school and then in the breaks we have at school, I do some extra reading or look at my notes again. Then, when I get home, I do my homework all afternoon and evening. I just keep going even if I'm feeling exhausted.

---

### A dialogue between Leila and Nadia

**Leila** : Hi Nadia. I haven't seen you for a long time. How are you?

**Nadia**: Hi Leila. Thanks for asking. I'm a bit stressed.

**Leila** : Oh no! Why don't you sit down and tell me about it?

**Nadia**: Well, I have three exams this week and don't know when I can revise because I have a big project for science too. I also promised my parents I would help them in the shop in the evenings.

**Leila** : That sounds like a lot. Have you considered telling your parents you are stressed?

**Nadia**: I don't want to worry them.

**Leila** : You could write down everything you have to do this week in order of priority and say "no" to the things at the bottom of your list. Also, how about doing your revision while you are in the shop. It's usually quiet in the evenings, isn't it?

**Nadia**: Have you thought about becoming a student counsellor? You're very good at giving advice!

**Leila** : Oh, thank you.

---

### 1. Skills for Life

It's important to be aware of the signs of burnout. Then you can take action so the situation doesn't get any worse. It's also important to share your feelings with people you trust, like your family or teachers because so they can help.

---

### READING

#### HOW TO AVOID BURNOUT

**Burnout** is a **mental health problem** that is **affecting** more and more people today because there's so much **pressure on** us to work hard and do everything perfectly. When you **experience burnout**, you feel **exhausted** and you usually don't **spend** enough time **doing** things you enjoy. You might **stop doing hobbies** that you used to enjoy and you may become ill more often than usual. As a result, people **experiencing burnout** feel like they can't live

their lives **normally** anymore.

**Burnout** is usually caused by both **decisions** you make about things that you can control, for example, the **amount** of homework you have to do, and situations you can't control, for example if you spend a lot more time **on your homework** than you have to **because you want to do it perfectly**. This is your **choice** or the result of poor **time management skills**. If you're **in danger of suffering from burnout**, you will usually **experience a lot of stress**, find it difficult to sleep and have **a lot of headaches** or **pain** in your **shoulders and back**. In order to **improve your mental health**, you need **to take responsibility** for the things that you can control. For example, if you find it difficult to say 'no' when people ask you **to do activities** outside of school and you feel exhausted because of this, you could change this **behaviour**. Then you can start thinking about activities you really enjoy doing. These should be activities that help you to forget about everything else that is happening, **such as drawing or painting**, doing a sport or having '**real**' **conversations** with your friends and family. Activities like these are examples of **self-care**. They help to **promote** better **mental health** and **increase your well-being**.

## WB

### Studying can be stressful.

Here are four **tips** to make life easier.

**Tip 1:** Divide the things you need to do into four **categories**. These are (1) **urgent** and important (2) important but not urgent (3) not important but urgent (4) not important and not urgent. Using this **system**, you will quickly be able to see what you have to do now and what can wait.

**Tip 2:** When studying for a long time, you should know when to take a rest. This will help you to **avoid burnout** and **continue studying**. Use **a clock with an alarm**, after every twenty-five minutes, take **a five minute break** and stand up and **stretch**.

**Tip 3:** You should **do exercise on a regular basis**. Exercise will **produce endorphins**, which are **chemicals** that help to **reduce stress**. If the exercise is outside you will also benefit from some fresh air.

**Tip 4:** You should not eat **unhealthily** when you are studying. A salad is quick to prepare and **fruit is a better snack than chocolate**. You **should also avoid having** too much caffeine. Water is much healthier.

## SUPPOSE

by Phoebe Cary

❶ **Suppose** you're **dressed for walking**,  
And the rain **comes pouring down**,  
Will it **clear off** any sooner  
Because you **scold and frown**?

❷ And wouldn't it be nicer  
For you **to smile than pout**,  
And so **make sunshine in the house**  
When **there is none without**?

❸ And **suppose the world** don't **please** you,  
Nor the way some people do,  
Do you think the **whole creation**  
Will be **altered** just for you?

❹ And isn't it, my boy or girl,  
The wisest, **bravest plan**,  
**Whatever comes**, or doesn't come,  
To do the best you can?

## Video script



Whilst it's important to **keep informed** about current affairs, reading the news when it's mostly bad can **cause anxiety and stress**. Bad news **seems to get** more attention, so this is what the **media give** us. One 16-year-old said he had **started worrying constantly** about things he was reading in the news and it had affected his sleep. He told researchers that he had **started avoiding** the news completely. He said he generally felt better, but **on the downside**, he wasn't able to **contribute to conversations** with friends, and **felt left out** when they were talking about **current affairs**. This solution may seem a little bit extreme, but there are ways we can **reduce stress and anxiety caused by negative news**. We spoke with **psychologist** Alison Carey about the **issue**. She **advised young people to take a break** sometimes, or **to limit the amount** of time they **spend reading** news to once every two days, or once a week. She also **suggested that we interact** more **with positive news sources**, such as the good news network or positivenews.com. Most importantly, she said that getting out into nature, listening to music, **spending** less time **on** your screen and more time in face-to-face conversations would all help reduce stress and anxiety caused by bad news.

---

## Lesson three and four

### Some advice from a teacher

When I talk to **teenagers** who are **suffering from burnout**, I **start by talking** to them about the **negative effects** of their **mental health problems**. It's a good idea to ask how they're feeling, for example, they may **feel exhausted** or they may not have any time **for self-care**. Then I ask them about their **routine** because I want to find out **how much time they spend doing** their homework and how much time they spend **on other activities**. After that, we can find out if there's anything we can change, for example to have better **time management**. A final important thing to look at how the student can **make more time** for them.

### Skills for life

It's important to be **aware of the signs** of burnout. Then you can **take action** so the situation doesn't **get any worse**. It's also important to **share your feelings** with people you **trust**, like your family or teachers because they can help

---

## Reading

**Hi Mohamed,**

I wanted to write because I've **noticed** that you don't seem to be your **normal** self at the moment. You used to have so much energy, but now you look exhausted a lot of the time at school. I think you're feeling because I was suffering from a lot of stress last year too. I couldn't **cope with** all of the homework I had. **Instead of doing** the work, I used to just sit at my desk and worry about it for hours. I remember that I was exhausted all the time and my teachers weren't very happy with my schoolwork **Time management** was something I didn't know anything about back then, but I asked my sister for help and she **showed me how to plan my study** time better.

Is there something that you're worrying about which is stopping you getting to sleep? Or maybe you're **doing too many things** at the moment. Everyone suffers from stress and finds it difficult to cope with life sometimes, so don't **worry about** it. When you understand that, you can **start to identify** the reasons for your problems.

Why don't you think about what is happening in your life at the moment? Is there anything that much time on? How often do you make the time to do something you really enjoy? We could **get together to have a talk** about what's going on if you want. Just let me know when  
Talk soon,

**Karim**

### Listen to two voice memos: (SB. P.46)

**Nevine** : This is Nevine and six months ago I was really **struggling** with my **mental health**. I was **suffering from burnout** and I wasn't spending any time **on self-care** at all. Fortunately, I'm feeling a lot better now. The first step was to **work out** what was **causing the burnout**. In my case, I was **doing too many things** and I couldn't **cope**. For example, I was trying to do all of my homework perfectly while also playing in four sports teams and **volunteering** at an old people's home on Saturdays. I realised that if you're not spending enough time doing things to **promote** your own **well-being**, you'll feel **exhausted** and **sad**. I **decided to stop being such a perfectionist** with my homework, only play in one sports team and only volunteer at the old people's home two weekends a month. I always get **enough sleep** now. Now, at the weekend when I don't have to do anything, I just relax at home and enjoying spending time with my friends and family. I always get enough sleep. Recently, I've learned how to draw animals, but that's just for fun – I **don't put any pressure on myself** to do it perfectly!

**Hany**: My name's Hany. I didn't think that I would ever have any mental health problems. I **used to be** so happy and relaxed all the time. Then last year, I started to **feel under a lot of pressure** at school because we had some important exams. I was so worried about not doing very well in the exams. I didn't **want to disappoint** my parents who thought I was a really good student. I **suffered from a lot of stress** and it was so bad that I couldn't sleep. Of course, that meant that I was exhausted at school the next day and found it hard to **concentrate in my lessons**. One day I fell asleep in the library at school and a teacher had to come and wake me up. We talked about how I was feeling, and the teacher **helped me to make a study plan** I could follow and still get enough sleep! I now spend less time studying, but I learn more than I used to because I **manage my time better** and **take regular breaks**. I always get at least eight hours sleep as well.

### A SHORT EXTRACT FROM GEORGE MITCHELL'S BOOK

One way to help you deal with life's problems is to focus only on the things you can change. There are **many external factors** which may influence how well you can cope with a **particular problem**. However, you **should accept** that there are some things you just do not have control over. It is not helpful to worry about these things. For example, when it rains do you **get stressed** about getting wet? Or do you buy a good raincoat to keep you warm and dry in bad weather? This is an example of how you can find a quick and simple **solution** to what others might see as a problem. This is also the first **step to accepting** change as something normal. It is a simple way to make sure you remain positive when you face life's **difficulties**

#### WE

For the last few weeks, I've been feeling like I can't cope with everything in my life. My friends are **getting great marks** at school and after school they meet up. But I don't have time to **join** them. On social media they always **upload photos and videos of themselves** having fun in the park and around town. I don't know how they find the time to do all these things and study too.

I like to know what is happening in the world and I have **set up** my phone to send me news alerts. Recently though, there have been so many problems happening around the world and it's making me **feel stressed**. It's having **a big impact on** my well-being. I often feel quite anxious and don't want to leave the house.

I have just **started doing sport** to **calm down** because recently I've been **quite angry**. We have just moved to a new city **because of my dad's new job** I had to leave all my best friends, the athletics club I was in and all this happened **during an important year at school**. I want to study medicine, so I have to get **good results** in my exams. I often get angry about small things

# الحمد لله رب العالمين

أولا الاستئله الموضوعيه التاليه ( كل سؤال بدرجة )

## Lesson one and two

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1.----- is a state of emotional, physical and mental exhaustion caused by excessive and prolonged stress.  
a. Break out                      b. Burnout                      c. Knockout                      d. Checkout
- 2.1 couldn't continue working because I was completely----- .  
a. exhausted                      b. relaxed                      c. interested                      d. interesting
3. The new ..... for Zamalik Club faces some knotty problems, but they are able to solve all the problems alone without having watches.  
a. management                      b. presidential                      c. managers                      d. direstors
4. The new secretary was worried that he wouldn't be able to ..... with his boss's demands.  
a. fun                      b. face                      c. cope                      d. carry
5. Doctors and nurses are responsible for the care and----- of their patients.  
a. well-born                      b. well-being                      c. self-harm                      d. self-denial
6. Time ..... is highly recommended when running your own business.  
a. management                      b. retirement                      c. punishment                      d. reassignment
- 7.At the end of the season three teams were .....to the Premier League. They will play against Liverpool and Manchester City.  
a. gone                      b. promoted                      c. travelled                      d. sent
- 8.Young boys recruited at an early age by football clubs often suffer from .....before they are out of their teens.  
a. expression                      b. burnout                      c. impession                      d. disease
9. Singing can create a state of (delighted-sadness - relieve-well being ). Most people] feel happy.
10. The result of the (experience- game- incident - experiment ) surprised all the scientists. It will help them develop a new cure for cancer.
11. Congratulations! I heard you have been..... to a higher position.  
a. uprooted                      b. promoted                      c. operated                      d. removed
- 12- Some people suffer from ( physical-mental - natural- industrial ) illness . They can't remember what they have done.
13. The emotional and (physical -mental-psychological-social ) health of the children is very important. They should practice moderate sports daily.
14. We are now concerned with the economic (well being - trouble-industry-tourism )of the country. It will improve all the aspects of life in Egypt.
15. 9. If you start studying early for your exams, you won't feel afraid and too .....  
a. steered                      b. relieved                      c. relaxed                      d. stressed
16. Many youth nowadays ( suffer- blame- frown-pout ) from addicting a definable alcohol, drug, or mental disorder.
17. A/An (operation - experiment - process - illness) is a series of events or changes that happen in a lab uner the supervision of a scientist.
18. Dad's ( diseases- health - mental - management )hasn't been good lately. He suffers from high pressure.
- 19- I am always studying and when I have free time , I stay in bed. I'm suffering from-----  
a) amnesia      فقد ذاكرة      b) burnout      إجهاد      c) constipation      إمساك      d) diarrhea      إسهال
20. Massage is a wonderful treatment for (disease-stress- illness-exhaust ). It relieves it very much.
21. Astronauts must train well and much to ( adapt-cope-adopt-walk ) with the climatic conditions in space.
22. While a moderate amount of stress can be beneficial, too much stress can (frown- pout- scold-exhaust) you.
- 23-I don't have the time to do everything I want to do. I'm bad .....

- a) extra time      b) waste time      c) time management      d) part time
24. Bosses always (praises – blames- scold-insulates ) clerks who make mistakes that cause losses.
25. The boy (frighten- frowned-sadness-pleased ) after the results of the exams were announced. He got low marks.
26. He's ( claim- supposed- frowned-pout ) to have abilities that no one can expect . He is a genius.
27. Staying up for a long time can cause a state of (exhaust- blame-joy- burnout) to a lot of people.
- 28- You must always make time for ..... If you look after yourself, you can help others ,too.
- a) self-care      b) self sufficiency      c) self denial      d) selfish
29. Our parents teach us that praise with the good and (promote – danger - scold- avoid) with the bad.
30. We shouldn't (praise – blames- scold-insulates ) old people whatever mistakes they do. We should be kind.
31. She has strange dreams. I'm worried about her (time management-exhausted-mental health-relatives).
- 32- The adjective ( exhibits- delighted- exhausted-exhorted ) describes the feeling of being very tired.
33. I must leave now; I'm ----- to be in the office in half an hour.
- a. Imposed      b. supposed      c. refused      d. enclosed
34. Don't ----- the new nurse for breaking the machine. It was an accident.
- a. renew      b. reward      c. scold      d. forgive
- 35- ( Physical - Mental -Metal-Mutual) health shows how a person thinks and the emotions they feel
- 36- ( Physical - Mental -Metal-Mutual) health shows how the state of the body seems.
37. You should do exercise on a regular (basis-root-bases-law) nt to suffer from the symptoms of aging.
38. Burnout is usually caused by the decisions you ( do – make – give – say ).
- 39- Why don't you ( spill- do- spout- pour ) yourself another drink ?
40. My parents are very ( stress- stressful- relaxed- exhaust ) about my brother staying up out late.
41. She -----at her son when she found out that he hadn't done his homework.
- a. pleased      b. frowned      c. aimed      d. saw
42. You need to drive your car slowly; I don't think the mist will -----very soon.
- a. think of      b. run after      c. clear off      d. put off
43. If you -----the position of the desk, there will be more room for the chair.
- a. alter      b. charge      c. check      d. share
44. Nothing can live without ( lights-energy- pwerless-expression). It is necessary for all aspects of life on the earth.
45. He fell off his bike, but fortunately he was (uninjured – uninfected – uninterested – unintended).
46. My grandfather doesn't (defend- promote-remain-expect ) that women leave their natural tasks at home to work outdoors. They have an important role in their houses.
47. (Suppose -Sense -Skid -Surrender)is used to say something is true , although you are uncertain about it.
48. The ( invention- discovery- invitation-research ) of coronavirus vaccine is wonderful medical breakthrough to vercome this pandemic.
49. Doctors use ( caffeine- endorohins-painkiller-injections ) to relieve the patients'pain
50. In winter, most Egyptians like watching the rain ( failing- pouring- hitting- dropping ) down.

### **Lesson three, four and five**

اولا الاستلثة الموضوعيه التاليه ( كل سؤال بدرجة )

### Choose the right answers:

1. The government should do more to (promote-demolish-destroy-play) sustainable agriculture.
2. We (suspect-respect-expect-accept) the doorman for committing the crime.
3. Ola had a (physical-mental-unconscious-danger) breakdown and was diagnosed with schizophrenia.
4. Doctors and nurses at the units of corona virus have a high rate of (depression-burnout-impression-disease).
5. It is good to do (regular-burglar-burger-irregular) exercise, so I go running every day.
6. Sami (did-made-get-let) a lot of work last night, but he still didn't finish his homework!
7. My friend (made-did-bought-get) a lot of money when he worked as an actor.
8. The problem is that, you don't always get (gradual-regular-irregular-balance) work.
9. Adel's job is very (stressful-balanced-pressure-press). He is a firefighter and his work is often very dangerous.
10. Tamer never goes on a plane. He (frighten-fears-suffers-saves) from a fear of flying.
11. (Stress-Accent-Dialect-Tress) is the twenty-first disease.
12. Almost 50 per cent of cancer (sufferers-doctors-patient-nurses) are treated successfully.
13. Even a quarter of an aspirin tablet, taken in (regulate-regular-regularly-regulation) doses, can be enough to prevent heart attacks.
14. Every one hopes (she-he-we-they) can make someone's life (painful-pain-happy-heavy).
15. Every one hopes they can make someone's life less (painful-pain-happy-heavy).
16. This book has some useful (tops-taps-tapes-tips) on how best to revise. You should read it.
17. To ease is to make something less (clear-painful-fearless-sudden).
18. This medicine will help to ease your (anxiety-stressful-mention-power).
19. Diabetic people should (reduce-cope-increase-sleep) with the symptoms of the increase and lack of sugar in their bodies.
20. One of my friends has a mental (health-healthy-healthily-unhealthy) problem. He speaks loudly and we don't understand him.
21. Whatever the cause, you should be quiet and not to (promote-danger-scold-avoid) or punish the officials for minor mistakes.
22. You look exhausted! I think you should consider (to go-going-go-went) to bed earlier.
23. My wife became (pleased-frowned-delighted-happy) when I forgot her birthday.
24. You should identify the (reasons-causes-lessons-classes) for your problems to be able to solve them.
25. The members of our families should (set-get-fun-come) together to solve our urgent problems.
26. Your brilliant success is (worse-worth-myth-both) the effort.
27. It is important to share your feelings with people you (doubt-misunderstand-suspect-trust) like your family or teachers.
28. Smiling can help reduce stress and increase (caffeine-endorphins-chemical-crimes) in blood that reduce blood pressure.
29. Students have to cope with a lot of (happiness-evidence-actress-stress) in their studies and use sport to help them relax.
30. You should try to learn better time management (skills-hobbies-interests-fun).
31. Some situations may have a negative effect (in-on-at-of) your mental health.
32. You should start thinking about activities you really enjoy (making-going-doing-playing).
33. My mom always advises me to avoid (talking-to talk-to talking-being talked) with bad people.
34. I told my little brother not to worry, as when the dentist looks at your teeth, it is .....  
a) pain                      b) painful                      c) painless                      d) pains.
35. Does this drug have any side (effects-affects-reflects-infects)? - No it is safe.



- 36-The astronauts are planning a four- (hour- hours- hours'- hour's ) space walk to carry out the necessary repair work on the shuttle.
- 37-Space tourists can (act – take – do – make) weightless sports in space.
- 38-We really need to spend more money (at – with – on – in) education.
- 39-It is a horrible thing to see one person make another (please- suffer- carry-study ).
- 40-She had a ( stress- stressed-stressful-frightened ) job as a representative .
- 41-Movement can be (thankful – faithful - painful – thoughtful) when you've hurt your back.
- 42- I'm (hopeful – thoughtful – awful – fruitful) that I will find another job but who knows how long it will take.
- 43- It was so (delightful – hopeful – admirable – horrible) not only losing my father, but losing my closest friend too!
44. Machines need (energy- light-petrol-oil ) to work .
- 45.Most companies in the world are ( keeping- helping-starting -coping )with struggling economic downturns because of coronavirus.
- 46.Parents shouldn't (praises – blames- scold-insulates) their children in front other people, especially relatives and friends.
47. My father has been (raised-replaced-promoted-managed) to a higher position in the company.
48. My grandmother said walking in the countryside helped (improve-prove-drove-proof) her physical and mental health.
49. Self-care is to taking care (for-at-after-of) yourself.
- 50-Activities such as drawing , painting and doing a sport are examples of self -----
- a) burnout            b) care                            c) exercise                            d) training
51. My parents (make-have-do-stop) me finish my homework before they allow me to watch TV.
- 52-Farmers water their crops (regularly – bitterly – disorderly – formerly) to grow well.
- 53.The firm decided to appoint a new ( manager- management –director- actor )teamto be able to increase the production and sales.
54. He (earned – gained – won – escaped) valuable experience while working on the project.
- 55.I found playing the guitar very difficult at first, but in the last two weeks I've( artificially - brutally - gradually-cheerfully) improved
56. Don't worry, your father is....., and he is going to leave the hospital very soon.
- a. approving            b. moving            c. improving            d. removing
57. Doctors are responsible for the (healthy- care- experience - impression ) of all the patients.
- 58.If you don't turn the taps off, you can waste a huge ( number -amount -account -discount ) of water in a short time.
- 59.The storm has had a bad (effect-afflict- affect- detect) on the crops. Farmers have lost a lot.
70. When I ----- to school, I knew we had a new colleague in our class.
- a. reached            b. got            c. left            d. needed
- 71.My father was promoted to be the chairman of Toyota Company in Egypt in 2010. His (experiment -management -process - effect ) has achieved great profits
- 72.The political parties should take concrete steps to ( enlarge- decrease- modify – promote) equality , solidarity and non-discrimination.
73. All the Egyptian people became (frighten- frowned-sadness-pleased ) after hearing about our maytyrs in Sinai. The terrorists are killers.
74. A. Do you (refuse- suppose- frown-pout ) that the witness was telling the truth ?
- B. No,he was hesitated
75. What activities can you ( do-make-take-move ) to help you feel good?
76. If you're ----- from burnout, you can experience a lot of stress.
- a. forbidding            b. resulting            c. suffering            d. preventing
- 77.It is important to be ( unaware –unconscious-aware –software )of the signs of burnout. Then you can take action .

78- During studying my lessons, I have ( sudden- gradually- regular- balance ) to renew my energy.

79. The director of the film returned the scene of sadness four times , he wanted the actress to draw a real (suppose- frown- carry-praise ) on her face

80. I feel (sorrowful - useful - hopeful - lawful) that we'll find a suitable house very soon.

81. Amal is always (relaxed-comfortable-stressful-exhausted) and she never has the energy to do anything. She should see a doctor.

82. The young man wasn't set free, since he had no ----- that he was innocent.

a. removal                      b. disapproval                      c. proof                      d. roof

83. An anonymous -----donated ten thousand pounds for our local charity.

a. factor                      b. benefactor                      c. malefactor                      d. tractor

84. Our hearts were all----- on spending the weekend in the country, until my brother broke his leg and we had to postpone the trip.

a. left                      b. prepared                      c. set                      d. sat

85. As I had -----all along, he was not a real businessman; he turned out to be a crook!

a. pretended                      b. invented                      c. respected                      d. suspected

86. My cousin will have a lot of property in the future. Property is similar in meaning to ---

a. Inventions                      b. impressions                      c. possessions                      d. suggestions

87. I will have to ----- a lot of tests before I can get this job.

a. make                      b. do                      c. test                      d. carry

88. To improve your mental health, you need to ----- responsibility for the things you can control.

a. sit                      b. let                      c. make                      d. take

89. Burnout is caused by both the decisions you.....and the situations you can't control.

a. take                      b. make                      c. do                      d. set

90. I felt really----- and angry with myself when I lost the match.

a. creative                      b. impressed                      c. frustrated                      d. encouraged

# Grammar

## 15- Making suggestion عمل الاقتراح

أولا تعبيرات يأتي بعدها الفعل مضافا له ( ing )

- What about + ing
- How about +( ing )
- Have you considered + ing
- = - Have you thought about + ( ing )
- How about buying a gold ring for Mum on her birthday?
- What about having lunch out at this restaurant?
- That's a great idea or It serves delicious dishes .

## 16- Have you considered = Have you thought about

- Have you considered watching cartoon ?
- Have you thought about visiting the zoo ?
- What about doing some sports together ?

ثانيا تعبيرات يأتي بعده الفعل في المصدر

- Why don't you+ مصدر
- You could + مصدر
- You should + مصدر
- Let's + المصدر
- Why don't you study English tonight ?
- You could buy these jeans , They are good materials .
- You should watch tomorrow's match. It will be exciting .
- Why don't we take some snacks ? =Let's take some snacks .

| accept the suggestion قبول الاقتراح | refuse the suggestion رفض الاقتراح |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| That's a good ( great ) idea        | I am sorry ; I am busy             |
| OK , let's .                        | Sorry . I am not very keen         |

- 1- Why don't you ( using - to use -to using - use) make a plan to organize your work?
- 2- Have you thought about ( doing- do - to doing - to do ) more exercise?
- 3- What about ( finish - finishing - finishes - finished ) the most important things first?
- 4- You could ( study - studying - to study - studies ) together and help each other.
- 5- Have you considered ( to read - reads-reading - read ) a book before going to bed?
6. Have you (think-thought-thinking-thinks) about starting a new project to get money?
7. You could (has-having-had-have) asked me for help if you were feeling so stressed!
8. Why ( can't-don't-didn't-aren't ) you use a diary to help you plan your work?
9. We don't know the ( cause- reason - evidence- clue ) why he left his job.
10. There is no ( lives- a life- death- life) on other planets.
11. The sixth of October is a great (accident - incident - event -memory ) to honour our martyrs.
12. What ( in-on-about-for ) watching that wonderful film?
13. ( Will- Should- Shall- Can ) we play football ? - It's a good idea.
14. Have you considered ( to tell- telling- told- tells ) the family about your problem.
15. Let's help Ali to solve his problem, ( shall we- will we- can we- do they )?

# Grammar

## MODAL VERBS OF NECESSITY, PROHIBITION AND LACK OF NECESSITY

الأفعال المساعدة الدالة على الضرورة و التحريم و غياب الضرورة

**1- Have to / Has to = It is necessary to do.....** ( We have no other choice ) مضطـر أن  
- تستخدم للتعبير عن إلزام مفروض علينا وليس أمامنا اختيار بسبب القواعد والقوانين أو الظروف

- If she wants to start her course this year, she **has to apply** before the end of March.
- We **have to wear** helmets if we are going to take the motorcycle. (The law says so.)
- You **have to show** your passport when **you leave the country**.

- كما تستخدم في الأوامر:

- You **have to apologize** to Mona. You don't want to lose her as a friend. (advice)
- You can't go out. You **have to clean** your room first. (an order)

- يمكن استخدام **have to** في الأزمنة المختلفة (ما عدا الأزمنة المستمرة)

- I **had to work** six days a week. = -**It was necessary for me to work** six days a week.
- My flight is at six in the morning. **I'll have to get up early**.
- **Have you ever had to go** to hospital?

- تستخدم (do / does) مع (Have to / Has to) في السؤال و النفي

- **Do you have to put on** a uniform at school?
- She **doesn't have to buy** a new dictionary for school?

- يمكن أن نستخدم (have got to / has got to) بدلا من (have to / has to)

- I **have got to go** to work on time.
- She is late for the meeting, she **has got to take** a taxi.

- نستخدم (have got to / has got to) في السؤال بدون فعل مساعد

- **Have you got to be** at the office every day?
- **Has that man got to carry** all the boxes by himself?

**2- must + infinitive: = it is necessary to .....**

يجب أن

تستخدم للتعبير عن (الزام داخلي) أي إحساس قوي بضرورة عمل شيء من وجهة نظر المتكلم أو للتعبير عن أن شيء مهم بالنسبة لنا وفي هذه الحالة تستخدم فقط مع الضمائر I / We ومع You في حالة السؤال:

- I **must visit** my grandparents more often. (It's important to me that I do.)

- **Must you wear** that yellow tie?

(Is it important to you that you do it? This also suggests that it bothers me.) يضايق

وتستخدم للتعبير عن نصيحة قوية

- You **mustn't be** late or dad will be angry. (strong advice)
- You **must wash** your hands before you eat. (strong advice)

وفي الأوامر كما تستخدم في القوانين والقواعد وعندما نذكر أنفسنا بضرورة عمل شيء:

- You **must clean** your room before you go out with your friends. (an order)
- Drivers and passengers of motorcycles **must wear helmets**. (a law)

كما تستخدم في حالة توجيه دعوة أو التعبير عن مشاعر صادقة:

- You **must come** and see us at the weekend. - You **must try** a piece of my cake.

تستخدم في الاستنتاج أو التعبير عن نتيجة منطقية: ( سيتم شرحه بالتفصيل )

- Dad **must have left** already. I don't see his car.

لاحظ استخدام للتعبير عن الضرورة في المضارع والمستقبل فقط:

- I **must go** now.
- I **must see** my doctor tomorrow.

**need / needs to + infinitive:**

تستخدم للتعبير عن أشياء ضرورية في الحاضر أو المستقبل

- He **needs to be busy** all the time or his boss will be angry.
- We **need to revise** for next week's exam.

ك- تستخدم **Must** في السؤال بدون فعل مساعد وتأتي في بداية السؤال:

- **Must he send the e-mail now?**

### 3- Had to : It was necessary to do.....

اضطر أن

تستخدم (**Had to**) للتعبير عن إلزام و ضرورة في الماضي

- We **had to do** a test at school today.
- We **had to take** a taxi as it **was raining** heavily.

### 4- mustn't : It is necessary **NOT** to do.....

يجب ألا

**mustn't + infinitive:**

تستخدم للتعبير عن أن شيء ممنوع أو غير مسموح به أو تترتب عليه نتيجة سيئة إذا قمنا به:

- You **mustn't smoke** in hospitals. = You **aren't allowed to smoke** in hospitals.
- = You **aren't permitted to smoke** in hospitals.
- = You **are forbidden to smoke** in hospitals.
- = You **are banned from smoking** in hospitals.
- = You **are prohibited from smoking** in hospitals.
- = You **aren't permitted to smoke** in hospitals. = you **are forbidden to smoke** in hospitals.

(Mustn't = (be) not allowed = (be) not permitted to = (be) banned = (be) prohibited = (be) forbidden to)

- ويمكن أن تبدأ الجمل بالشيء الغير مسموح به

- Smoking **is not allowed** in hospitals.
- Parking **is forbidden** here.

### 5- don't have to / don't need to / needn't + infinitive:

**doesn't have to / doesn't need to** = It is NOT necessary to do.. لا داعي أن-غير مضطر

ك- تستخدم التعبير عن عدم الضرورة في المضارع أو المستقبل

- She isn't late for school so she **doesn't have to / needn't hurry**.
- When you are on holiday, you **needn't go to** bed early.
- She **doesn't have to work** on Saturday.

### 6- - Didn't have to = didn't need to = It wasn't necessary to.., so we didn't

لم نضطر أن - تستخدم هذه الأفعال للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة في الماضي (حدث لـم تـم في الماضي لأنه لم يكن ضروريا)

- We **didn't have to go to school yesterday**. It was a holiday.
- I **didn't have to do** the shopping **yesterday**. My brother **did it**.

### 7- needn't have + PP. : It wasn't necessary to....., but we did

- يستخدم هذا الفعل للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة في الماضي (حدث تـم في الماضي على الرغم من كونه لم يكن ضروريا)

- You **needn't have brought** your umbrella. It's not going to rain.
- لاحظ الفارق في المعني في الجمل الآتية

- I **didn't have to buy** more bread. We **already have a lot**.

(I **didn't buy** bread because we have some.)

- I **needn't have bought** more bread. We **already have a lot**.

(I **bought** bread, but it was not necessary because we have some.)

- في حالة التعبير عن الضرورة في المستقبل نستخدم **must / have to / will have to**

- I **have to get up** early tomorrow.
- I'll **have to send** the fax tomorrow.

- لاحظ الفرق بين استخدام **need to** كفعل ناقص واستخدام **need** كفعل عادي بمعنى يحتاج أو يتطلب

- This job **needs computer skills**. - I **need to finish** the job early. = I **must finish** it early.

### Choose the right answers

(جمل سهله لتثبيت القاعده بسرعه)

- 1- In Egypt , you ..... wear a seat belt when you drive.

a) have to                      b) should                      c) mustn't                      d) needn't

- 2- If you don't understand, you ..... ask your teacher. That's my advice.

Mr El Sebaei Atteya

146

01228699122

SOUVENIR



- a) might                      b) may                      c) should                      d) could
- 3- Do you ..... wear those shoes to work? Are they part of the dress code?
- a) have to                      b) must                      c) should                      d) could
- 4- You ..... to get more practice if you want to pass your driving test.
- a) must                      b) need                      c) had                      d) could
- 5- You don't need ..... add more salt to this dish.
- a) for                      b) on                      c) to                      d) of
- 6- When we **were** children, we didn't have e-mails so we ..... write letters.
- a) must                      b) had to                      c) have to                      d) has to
- 7- People ..... smoke in hospital. Law forbids it.
- a) must                      b) mustn't                      c) should                      d) shouldn't
- 8- You ..... touch the pan. It is very hot.
- a) should                      b) must                      c) mustn't                      d) must not to
- 9- You should ..... water before you drink it.
- a) boiling                      b) to boil                      c) boil                      d) boils
- 10- You ..... park here because the sign says "No Parking".
- a) must                      b) mustn't                      c) should                      d) can
- 11- Leila ..... follow the rules or she will be punished.
- a) should                      b) shouldn't                      c) mustn't                      d) must
- 12- You ..... eat any food that smells bad.
- a) must                      b) mustn't                      c) should                      d) shouldn't
- 13- Ali is very tall. He ..... play basket.
- a) shouldn't                      b) should                      c) can't                      d) mustn't
- 14- One ..... drive more slowly to avoid accidents.
- a) must                      b) ought                      c) should                      d) shouldn't
- 15- You ..... wash if you have touched an infected bird.
- a) ought                      b) must                      c) should have                      d) has to
- 16- Mothers ..... bathe their children more often in hot weather.
- a) ought                      b) mustn't                      c) should                      d) shouldn't
- 17- My school is not far. I ..... take a taxi.
- a) can                      b) need                      c) needn't                      d) had to
- 18- We ..... buy souvenirs four our friends while we're here.
- a) have to                      b) must                      c) mustn't                      d) needn't
- 19- We ..... forget that tourism is very important for Egypt.
- a) must                      b) mustn't                      c) needn't                      d) don't have to

**اولا الاسئلة الموضوعية التالية ( كل سؤال بدرجة )**

### **Choose the right answers**

1. I ..... my room yesterday; my sister had already tidied it.  
a don't have to tidy    b didn't have to tidy    c had to tidy    d must have tidied
2. I'm sorry for not visiting you last night; I ..... see my doctor.  
a needn't    b didn't have to    c had to    d must
3. You..... rude to him. He's going to be really angry now.  
a) can't be    b) should have been    c) shouldn't have been    d) can't have been
4. Ali isn't late for school; he .....hurry.  
a mustn't    b don't have to    c needn't    d has to
5. Children ..... wear a uniform in primary schools.  
a must    b have to    c mustn't    d shouldn't
6. You ..... worry, still you have a lot time of to catch the train.  
a don't have to    b must    c should    d have to
7. You ..... take photos here; it's a military area.  
a must    b mustn't    c needn't    d shouldn't
8. You ..... try my sister's cake now. It's really delicious!

- a needn't                      b had to                      c must                      d mustn't
9. I really ..... buy my mother a present on her birthday; One should be grateful!
- a needn't                      b have to                      c mustn't                      d must
10. At an airport, I .....show my passport.
- a can't                      b don't have to                      c have to                      d shouldn't
11. In Egypt, most people.....work until they are 60; it's a work law there.
- a mustn't                      b have to                      c needn't                      d shouldn't
12. The boys ..... have made so much noise in the library.
- a) ought                      b) shouldn't                      c ought not                      d) must not
13. You ..... pass a driving test to drive a car in Egypt.
- a mustn't                      b needn't                      c have to                      d must
14. Sami is feeling ill. I think he..... to see a doctor.
- a) should                      b) ought                      c) must                      d) can
- 15- I ..... have bought more bread. We already have a lot.
- a) mustn't                      b) should                      c) needn't                      d) couldn't
- 16- I ..... have called you yesterday, but I'm afraid I forgot.
- a) might                      b) may                      c) should                      d) could
- 17- You ..... telephoned me so late. I was fast asleep.
- a) mustn't                      b) shouldn't have                      c) shouldn't                      d) couldn't
- 18- Look, it's raining! I..... have brought an umbrella.
- a) should                      b) can't                      c) must                      d) shouldn't
- 19- If I want to start this year, I ..... apply by the end of next week. I have no choice.
- a) have to                      b) may                      c) might                      d) shall
- 20- At my sports club, everyone ..... wear flat shoes. It's an important rule.
- a) has to                      b) could                      c) can                      d) have to
- 21- You'd better ..... with such a bad company.
- a) to work                      b) not work                      c) not to work                      d) working
- 22- You ..... look at the sun. It is bad for your eyes.
- a) wouldn't                      b) should                      c) mustn't                      d) shouldn't
- 23- Tell him that he ..... be here at eight. I insist on it.
- a) can                      b) must                      c) should                      d) ought
- 24- Young children ..... to enter horror movies.
- a) mustn't                      b) haven't                      c) shouldn't                      d) aren't allowed
25. I was very tired yesterday. I ..... go to bed early.
- a) needn't                      b) had to                      c) don't have to                      d) must
- 26- People ..... break the traffic signs.
- a) must                      b) needn't                      c) mustn't                      d) have to
- 27- It is a ..... to come on time for interviews.
- a) necessary                      b) must                      c) advice                      d) advisable
- 28- We ..... forget to take the chicken out of the freezer.
- a) mustn't                      b) needn't                      c) won't                      d) don't have to
- 29- You are banned from ..... here. It's against the law.
- a) park                      b) parked                      c) parking                      d) parks
- 30- I have been tired all week. I ..... get more sleep.
- a) needn't                      b) had to                      c) don't have to                      d) must

## ***Grammar***

### **MODAL VERBS OF DEDUCTION, ADVICE AND REGRET**

الأفعال المساعدة الدالة على الاستنتاج والنصيحة والندم

#### **8. should / shouldn't / had better / had better not + infinitive:**

تستخدم عادة للتعبير عن النصيحة

- You **should look for** a new job. = It is a good idea to look for a new job.
- You **shouldn't look** at the sun. It's very dangerous.

- You **had better not look** at the sun. It's very dangerous.

### 9. should have + pp.:

كما تستخدم للتعبير عن أن شيء كان يجب أن يحدث في الماضي ولم يتم وتستخدم عادة عندما نوجه اللوم لشخص لعدم قيامه بعمل معين: ( لوم - عتاب )

- You **should have done** your homework yesterday.

### - shouldn't have + pp.:

كما تستخدم للتعبير عن أن شيء كان يجب ألا يحدث في الماضي ولكنه حدث ونستخدمه عادة عندما نوجه اللوم لشخص لقيامه بعمل معين: ( لوم - عتاب )

- You **shouldn't have parked** your car here. It's a 'No Parking' area.

### 10. can / can't + infinitive:

كما تستخدم للتعبير عن القدرة على عمل شيء في المضارع أو المستقبل:

**can + inf. = am / is / are + able to + inf.**

**am / is / are + capable of + v. + ing**

**have / has the ability to + inf.**

- I can see very well without glasses. = I have the ability to see well without glasses.
- We can solve this problem. = We have the ability to solve this problem
- = It is possible for us to solve it.

كما تستخدم أيضا للتعبير عن الاحتمال في المضارع

- I can play tennis in the park whenever I want to.
- We can't waste time watching TV.

كما تستخدم للتعبير عن شيء مسموح به أو غير مسموح به في المضارع

- In some countries, you **can drive at the age** of 17. (**The law says this is permitted**)
- In some cities, people can't use their cars every day.  
(This is not permitted / it's against the law.)

### - could / couldn't + infinitive:

كما تستخدم للتعبير عن قدرة عامة على عمل شيء في الماضي

- At the weekend, they found a shop where they could buy cheap books.
- My sister looked all over the house, but she couldn't find her phone.

كما للتعبير عن قدرة محددة في الماضي على الرغم من وجود صعوبة نستخدم

**was / were + able to + inf. = managed to + inf. = succeeded in + v. + ing:**

- I took my car to the garage this morning, where one of the mechanics was able to / managed to start it.
- I'd been trying to send that e-mail all day. Finally, I succeeded in sending it at six o'clock in the evening.

كما تستخدم للتعبير عن شيء مسموح به أو غير مسموح به في الماضي

- In the past people could drive a car without passing a driving test.
- In the past, women couldn't vote in elections

### 1- Must + inf. = I am sure

لا بد أنه

- يستخدم (Must) للتعبير عن الاستنتاج المتيقن القائم على دليل في المضارع

- You **must speak** good Arabic if you've lived here for 10 years. (I'm sure you speak good Arabic.)

- **Must + be + n. / adj.**

لا بد أنه

- He **must be** English. He speaks English well. (He is definitely English.)
- Ali **must be** happy. He has just won a gold medal. (I'm sure Ali is happy.)

### 2- Must ... ماضي..... Must have + pp.

- يعبر (Must have + pp.) عن الاستنتاج المتيقن القائم على دليل في الماضي

- It **must have been** cold there. There is snow on the ground in the photo.

(It was definitely cold there)

- Passing his driving test **must have made** Ahmed very happy.

(I'm sure passing his driving test made Ahmed very happy)

- There **must have been** a sandstorm. The streets are covered in sand.
- She **called me from a friend's phone**. She **must have lost** her mobile phone.
- It **must have been** very windy during the night. There are branches all over the ground.

### 3- Can't / Couldn't

لا يمكن أن يكون

يعبر عن الاستنتاج المنفي القائم على دليل في المضارع

- He **can't be** Egyptian. He **doesn't speak Arabic**. (He is definitely not Arabic.)
- That **can't be** Kamal. He looks too old. (I'm sure you are not Kamal.)

### 4- Can't / Couldn't ... الماضي..... Can't / Couldn't have + pp.

تعبير ( Can't / Couldn't have + pp. ) عن الاستنتاج المنفي القائم على دليل في الماضي

- Ali **can't have forgotten**. He's got a very good memory.
- They **can't have had** lunch. Their food is in the fridge.
- It's only 4 o'clock. The match **can't have finished**. it's too early already.  
(The match definitely hasn't finished early)
- Ali was not at the meeting. He **can't have read** my e-mail.  
(I'm sure he didn't read my e-mail.)
- You **couldn't have finished** that book already. (I'm sure you didn't finish it.)

### 5- Might / May / could

من المحتمل

للتعبير عن عدم التأكد ( الاحتمال ) في المضارع عندما لا يوجد دليل

- He **might be** French, but he is probably Italian. (it is possible that he is French)
- He **might / may be** at home. I'm not sure.

### 6- Might / may ... الماضي..... Might / may have + pp.

- Azza **wasn't** at school yesterday. She **might have had** a doctor's appointment..  
(It's possible that Azza had a doctor's appointment)
- He **might have rung** yesterday evening. (It is possible but I am not sure.)
- Going by car **might have taken** longer than going by train. (But it might not.)
- **could have + P.P.** ) أيضا عن شيء كان من الممكن حدوثه ولكنه لم يحدث لأننا لم نستغل الفرصة
- He **was able to do** the job but **he didn't**. = He **could have done** the job.
- أحيانا يمكن أن تعبر الجملة عن الاستمرار وفي هذه الحالة نستخدم
- **must / can't / may/ might / could+ be + v.ing**
- What is Ali doing in his room? - **I'm not sure. He may be studying.**
- **must / can't / may/ might / could+ have been + v.ing**
- What was Linda doing? - **She must have been working** on her computer.

أولا الاستثله الموضوعيه التاليه ( كل سؤال بدرجة )

### Choose the correct answers:

- 1.Emad didn't take his keys with him. He (could have seen-could see-might see-can't have seen) them on the table.
- 2-This (may-can't-must-could) be his car. He's too poor to afford such an expensive car.
- 3-Ali isn't here. He (must-can-ought-should) have gone home to study for the test tomorrow.
- 4-Ahmed is a professor of Chemistry. He must (be-have been-have-had been) very clever at school.
- 5-He (must have-can't have-might-can) have missed his train. He's usually late.
- 6-His watch (must-might-can-can't) have cost a lot of money. It's made of plastic.
- 7-It (can't have-will have-must have-didn't have) been very windy during the night. There are branches all over the ground.
- 8-Tunnelling under the Nile (must have-may have-can't have-might have) been easy. I'm sure it was difficult.

9-My father (didn't have-won't have-shall have-must have) walked to work this morning. His car is still in the garage.

10-He can't walk. He (must-mustn't-shouldn't-won't) be ill.

11-He spends so much money. He (can't-shouldn't-must-won't) be rich.

12-You (can't have-must have-should have-will have) finished that book already. You bought it only yesterday and it is very long.

13-He (can't -mustn't -must -should) have been injured. There was blood on his face.

14-The streets are wet. It (must rain-can't rain-must have rained-should have rained) last night.

15-I can't find the theatre tickets. They (must have fallen-can't have fallen-had to fall-mustn't have fallen) out of my pocket.

16. You are diabetic. You ( must- should-mustn't-can't ) be careful about your health.

17.Why don't you want any cake? You ..... eaten that much at dinner

a) must not                      b) cannot                      c) mustn't have              d) can't have

18-She isn't late for school so she .....hurry.

a-didn't have      b-don't need to              c-shouldn't              d-can't

19.Climbing Mount Everest ..... very difficult. The oxygen is very thin at the top.

a) can't be                      b) must be                      c) mustn't be                      d) must have been

20-If you had studied more, you ..... passed the exam.

a) must have                      b) can't have                      c) might have                      d) mightn't have

21-You can't have ..... the toast because the toaster has a timer.

a) burnt                      b) burning                      c) been burnt                      d) burns

22-Those shoes are gorgeous! They ..... cheap.

a) can't have been      b) can't have                      c) mustn't have                      d) mustn't been

23-Souad ..... remembered our phone number because she called us today.

a) must have                      b) can't have                      c) mustn't have                      d) might have

24-He is never usually late; he .....missed his train.

a- must have                      b-can't have      c-might have                      d- may have

25- There wasn't an tea in the cup . Mr El Sebaei .....drunk.

a) must have                      b) can't have                      c) mustn't have                      d) might have

26- He is very ill today. He.....slept early yesterday. He stayed up a lot

a) must have                      b) can't have                      c) mustn't have                      d) shoulg have

27. Ali .....cheated in the exam. The teacher punished him.

a) can't have been      b) can't have                      c) mustn't have                      d) shouldn't have

28-Dina .....have been at school yesterday .The list of the absent included her name.

a- must                      b-can't                      c- needn't                      d- mustn't

29-We don't know when earthquakes happen .They .....predicted.

a- were                      b- can't be                      c- have been                      d- had been

30. You .....study well to get high mraks.

a- must                      b-can't                      c- should                      d- mustn't

31-His bad exam results .....have frustrated his poor parents.

a- must                      b- should                      c- can't                      d- needn't

32-They .....mad, the solution they gave is very reasonable.

a- must be                      b- can't be                      c- may be                      d- would be

33-She .....foolish. She says she believes in magic.

a- can't be                      b- may be                      c- must have been      d- must be

34-We.... read a summary of a book before watching its film. Doing that will spoil it.

a-had to                      b-shouldn't                      c-doesn't have to                      d-might

35-You .....park there. It's a good place.

a-had to                      b-should                      c-has to                      d-have to



- 36-You couldn't have ( do -done – doing – did ) any more than you did. That was your best.
- 37-You look very tired. I think you should ..... gone to bed earlier last night.  
a) have            b) to have            c) having            d) has
38. You look very tired. I think you should (go-have gone-be going-went) to bed earlier last night.
- 39.You shouldn't (have watched-watches-watch-watching-be watching) TV so late last night!
- 40.I came by bus, but I (must have come-could have come-should come-can come) by taxi.
- 41.Maher suggests I (will have-should have-has-having) a break every one hour.
42. When you are worried about things, it is best to concentrate on the things you (can-might-could-have) control over.
43. Before you start studying you (need-should-ought-couldn't) make a study plan
- 44.I'm sorry! I ..... have come on time.  
a-may            b-might            c-must            d-ought to
- 45.I traveled by train, but I ..... by car.  
a) might have travelled    b) could travel    c) could have travelled    d) can travel
46. The driver .....diven his cars without the licence. He will pay a huge sum of money as a fine.  
a) might have    b) should have    c) could have    d) shouldn't have
- 47- It's a good idea to drink a lot of water. You.....drink it regularly.  
a-may            b-might            c-must            d-ought to
48. I ..... so much chocolate! I feel sick!  
a) should eat    b) shouldn't have eaten    c) couldn't have eaten    d) will have eaten
- 49-I cannot find my eyeglasses. I .....have left them at home.  
a- must            b- can't            c- may            d- might
- 50-I don't know where my school bag is, mum.It isn't here. You ...have left it on the train.  
a- might            b- can't            c- would            d- can't have

### ثانياً الاسئلة الموضوعية التالية ( كل سؤال بدرجتان )

#### Choose the right answers

- A.** 1- I suggest mum ..... my aunt for dinner.  
a. to inviting            b. to invite            c. inviting            d. invite
- 2- I consider how ..... our poor neighbours.  
a. to help            b. help            c. helping            d. to helping
- 3- A : If you ask me, Mai is the best applicant for the job of the secretary ?  
B : Mmm. .... her bad English ?  
a. How about            b.What about            c. Shall we            d. Why don't we
- 4- ..... ask father for the trip money right now. He is furious .  
a. Let's            b. Let's not            c. Don't make            d. Allow

- B.** 1- '.....' is used to show objection to an idea or suggestion.  
a. Let's            b. I suggest            c. How about            d. What about
- 2- It began to rain and there were no taxis. At last I ..... arrive home.  
a. was able to            b. couldn't            c. wasn't able to            d. managed
3. Mona is economical; she ..... more bread; she actually has much in the fridge.  
a. needn't have bought            b didn't have to buy  
c should have bought            d had to buy
4. If you can't dictate your conditions, you ..... negotiate.  
a) will            b) should            c) need            d) ought

- C.** 1. You are wasteful; you ..... more sugar. We already have a lot at home.  
a can't have bought    b had to buy    c didn't have to buy    dneedn't have bought
2. Is it a/an ..... to take this medicine?

- a. advice                      b. unnecessary                      c necessary                      d must
- 3- My flat is tidy. I ..... bother myself to get it cleaned today.  
a. needn't                      b. mustn't                      c. don't have                      d. must
- 4- The meal was for free today. You ..... for it. You should have saved your money.  
a. didn't need to pay      b. didn't have to pay      c. needn't have paid      d. needn't pay
- 
- D.** 1- Oh, no! You ..... all that meat. Now, how can I find a space for it in the freezer ?  
a. didn't have to buy      b. needn't have bought      c. didn't need to buy      d. mustn't buy
- 2- We ..... be sensitive to and respectful of people's differences.  
a. might                      b. need                      c. could                      d. should
- 3- I always ..... take my father's permission before I go out. That's a family rule.  
a. have to                      b. mustn't                      c. need                      d. must
- 4- ..... you make that noise ? It really is annoying.  
a. Can                      b. Could                      c. Must                      d. Might
- 

### ( اسئلة عامه علي القواعد )

اولا الاسئلة الموضوعيه التاليه ( كل سؤال بدرجه )

- Poor Hany ..... go to hospital yesterday after he hurt his hand.  
a) must                      b) has to                      c) had to                      d) needn't
- We didn't have a test today so I ..... revised for it last night!  
a) needn't                      b) didn't have to                      c) mustn't                      d) needn't have
- When you go to Alexandria, you ..... visit the library. It's amazing !  
a) have                      b) must                      c) will                      d) need
- The sign in the park says that people ..... walk on the grass.  
a) needn't                      b) might not                      c) should                      d) mustn't
- You ..... wash the car. The man at the garage will wash it tomorrow.  
a) mustn't                      b) can't                      c) might not                      d) needn't
- I ..... remember to email my cousin today. It's his birthday.  
a) mustn't                      b) needn't                      c) must                      d) ought to
- I'll give you a lift, so you ..... walk to the station.  
a) must                      b) had to                      c) don't have to                      d) mustn't
- ..... you make that noise? It is really annoying.  
a) Can                      b) Could                      c) Must                      d) Might
- You ..... wear heavy clothes. It is very cold outside.  
a) needn't                      b) mustn't                      c) have to                      d) might
- He ..... go to school yesterday. It was a holiday.  
a) needn't                      b) won't                      c) didn't have to                      d) may not
- There's a traffic jam on 6th of October Bridge. We ..... take another road.  
a) will have to                      b) mustn't                      c) had to                      d) needn't
- In winter, you ..... use the air conditioner to cool the room.  
a) don't need to                      b) mustn't                      c) didn't have to                      d) don't have
- I ..... study hard for my final geography exam. I want to get a good grade.  
a) must                      b) had to                      c) have to                      d) need to
- There are always children near the school, so you ..... drive very carefully.  
a) can                      b) must                      c) mustn't                      d) need
- We ..... forget that tourism is very important for Egypt.  
a) must                      b) needn't to                      c) mustn't                      d) should
- I ..... get up very early on school days.  
a) have to                      b) need                      c) don't have to                      d) mustn't
- I ..... phone my friend this evening. I promised him I would.

- a) have to                      b) must                      c) needn't                      d) need
18. My children ..... study ancient history at school next year.
- a) will have to              b) doesn't have to              c) has to                      d) must to
19. We..... be back in Cairo on Friday in time to catch our flight.
- a) don't have to              b) have to                      c) ought                      d) need
20. You ..... come and stay with us in our farm sometime.
- a) must                      b) ought                      c) should have                      d) could have
21. I hate ..... get up early in the morning.
- a) should                      b) might                      c) having to                      d) must
22. I ..... go to work yesterday. It was a national holiday.
- a) didn't have to              b) had to                      c) might                      d) needn't
23. You ..... purchased a new camera. You already have a good one.
- a) should have              b) could                      c) needn't have                      d) must have
24. You ..... bite your nails. It's a bad habit.
- a) may not                      b) mustn't                      c) can                      d) ought
25. You look ill today. You ..... see a doctor.
- a) may                      b) might                      c) can                      d) ought to
26. The book is optional. We .....read it if we don't want to.
- a) have to                      b) must                      c) mustn't                      d) don't have to
27. You .....be rich to be a success. Some of the most successful people didn't have a pound.
- a) needn't                      b) needn't have                      c) must                      d) had to
28. You ..... take along some cash. The restaurant may not accept credit cards.
- a) mustn't                      b) have to                      c) has to                      d) needn't
29. You .....forget to pay the rent tomorrow. The landlord is very strict about paying on time.
- a) need to                      b) can                      c) must                      d) mustn't
30. My sister made a cake. You ..... try it. It's lovely!
- a) need                      b) needn't                      c) must                      d) have to
31. We can walk to the bookshop if you want, but we ..... . The bus goes there.
- a) needn't to                      b) doesn't have to                      c) don't have to                      d) need to
32. You .....run next to the swimming pool. You might fall over.
- a) mustn't                      b) must                      c) should                      d) can
33. We ..... run to the museum because it was already closed when we got there.
- a) needn't have              b) didn't have to                      c) have to                      d) had to
34. Poor Walid broke his leg yesterday and ..... to hospital.
- a) has to                      b) must go                      c) needn't have gone                      d) had to go
35. We ..... pass our exams to get into university.
- a) must                      b) has to                      c) needn't                      d) needn't
36. They .....leave the school yesterday after they heard the fire bell.
- a) have to                      b) had to                      c) has to                      d) need to
37. I .....stop eating sweets! They are bad for me.
- a) have to                      b) could                      c) can                      d) has to
38. Tarek .....get the bus to the park. My father can take him in our car.
- a) don't have to              b) has to                      c) doesn't have to                      d) doesn't need
39. The students .....written all those notes. All the information is typed for them.
- a) didn't have to              b) needn't have                      c) has to                      d) didn't need to
40. At an airport, you ..... show your passport before you can leave the country.
- a) has to                      b) doesn't have to                      c) don't have to                      d) have to
41. Teachers..... wear suits for work, but their clothes must be neat and clean.
- a) have to                      b) don't have to                      c) doesn't have to                      d) has to
42. Students..... use their mobile phones during the lessons.
- a) mustn't                      b) must                      c) have to                      d) has to
43. You..... arrive on time for lessons. It's important not to be late.
- a) have to                      b) had to                      c) don't have to                      d) could
44. You..... buy a course book, your teacher will give you one.

- a) don't have      b) has to      c) doesn't have to      d) don't need to
45. Students.....take an exam at the end of the year. This shows how much they have learnt.  
a) doesn't have to      b) have to      c) has to      d) had
46. It's late. You..... make so much noise.  
a) must      b) mustn't      c) don't need to      d) has to
47. I ..... wear a tie; I do it because I like wearing ties.  
a) needn't      b) mustn't      c) can't      d) haven't to
48. We ..... be home by 9 o'clock. The film starts at 9:15.  
a) needn't      b) had to      c) mustn't      d) must
49. I ..... finish this essay today. It has to be handed in by tomorrow.  
a) mustn't      b) needn't      c) have got to      d) don't have to
50. Passengers.....talk to the driver while the bus is in motion.  
a) had to      b) don't have to      c) mustn't      d) have got to
51. This is a dangerous tour. Children..... be accompanied by an adult.  
a) shouldn't      b) should      c) mustn't      d) must
52. Nancy..... go to bed early; tomorrow is her day off.  
a) needn't      b) needs to      c) doesn't need to      d) didn't need to
53. You ..... smoke on buses. It's forbidden.  
a) mustn't      b) must      c) can      d) should
54. You ..... do it now; you can finish it later.  
a) don't need to      b) need to      c) have to      d) could
55. You ..... bring a swim suit. I can lend you one.  
a) should      b) can      c) don't have to      d) shouldn't
56. You..... do the washing up; we have a dishwasher.  
a) needn't      b) mustn't      c) can't      d) couldn't
57. You ..... tell the boss what happened, or he'll fire you.  
a) don't need to      b) needs to      c) have to      d) can
58. No one ..... smoke in here; smoking is not allowed.  
a) should      b) shouldn't      c) must      d) mustn't
59. I ..... be late. It's the most important meeting of the year.  
a) may      b) mustn't      c) must      d) won't
- 60-I'm surprised. Nobody told you that the road was very dangerous. You ...have been warned.  
a) must      b) should      c) needn't      d) may
61. You.....do over 90 kilometers an hour. It is the maximum speed limit.  
a) mustn't      b) needn't      c) shouldn't      d) may not
- 62-The policeman said, "You will have to pay a fine. You.....have driven so fast  
a) wouldn't      b) mustn't      c) shouldn't      d) can't
- 63- I've told you again and again, "You.....be late for work."  
a) oughtn't      b) needn't      c) couldn't      d) mustn't
- 64- You.....stay up late if you don't like to.  
a) must      b) needn't      c) mustn't      d) had to
- 65- You have done this exercise wrong. You.....do it again,  
a) don't have to      b) mustn't      c) needn't      d) have to
- 66 You .....smoke here. There is a "No Smoking" sign.  
a) mustn't      b) needn't      c) must      d) shouldn't
- 67- We have plenty of time. We.....drive fast.  
a) mustn't      b) needn't      c) must      d) had to
- 68- He has left his car over there. He....that. There is a "No waiting" sign.  
a) should have done      b) shouldn't do      c) shouldn't have done      d) mustn't do
- 69- He.....drink the milk. It's sour.  
a) has to      b) doesn't have to      c) needn't      d) mustn't
- 70- I.....accept his offer if I were you.  
a) should      b) shall      c) ought      d) must
- 71-It is desirable to get up early . You.....get up early.

- a) must      b) should      c) may      d) will
- 72- You look ill today. You.....see a doctor.
- a) may      b) might      c) should      d) ought
- 73- I advise you to come. You.....come.
- a) will      b) have to      c) should      d) can
- 74 - A) Shall I post the letter now?
- B) No, You .....post the letter now. You can post it tomorrow.
- a) don't need to    b) mustn't    c) must    d) have to
- 75- He.....go to school yesterday. It was a holiday.
- a) needn't    b) won't      c) didn't have to      d) may not
- 76- He sounded the horn so many times; he.....have done that.
- a) oughtn't      b) shouldn't      c) mustn't      d) couldn't
- 77- She added some salt to the salad but she.....any as it became too salty.
- a) needn't add    b) has to add    c) mustn't add      d) needn't have added
- 78- I didn't know there was a meeting today. You.....me.
- a) should have told    b) should tell    c) had to tell      d) needn't have told
- 79- Helal didn't go to the doctor's yesterday although he.....have gone.
- a) must      b) ought to      c) needn't    d) shouldn't
- 80- You.....smoke in petrol stations.
- a) shouldn't      b) needn't      c) mustn't    d) oughtn't

### Test on unit " 4 "

أولا الاسئلة الموضوعية التالية ( كل سؤال بدرجة )

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- ..... is a state of emotional, physical, and mental exhaustion caused by excessive and prolonged stress.  
a) Break out      b) Burnout      c) Knockout      d) Checkout
- The kids were told to clear off and stop bothering their neighbors. "Clear off" is the opposite of.....  
a- remove      b- move      c- remain      d- continue
- We need to make people.....of the effects of their lifestyle on the environment.  
a- unconscious      b- aware      c- ignorant      d- denied
- You shouldn't scold your kids in front of others. "Scold" is similar in meaning to.....  
a. praise      b. isolate      c. blame      d. approach
- In this hotel, rooms are available in five price .....  
a- burnouts      b- managements      c- messages      d- categories
- She was ..... about her safety when her car broke down on a dark area of the road.  
a- anxious      b- external      c- positive      d- negative
- Passengers were asked to.....their bags after the plane landed.  
a. realize      b. identify      c. understand      d. point
- Tom doesn't feel good, I think he ..... a doctor.  
a- should see      b- might see      c- can't see      d- couldn't see
- If you are an employee, you ..... get your employer's permission before leaving work.  
a- have to      b- had to      c- must      d- mustn't
- Ahmed, let's ..... that film. It is boring.  
a- watch      b- to watch      c- not watch      d- watching

#### Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer:

Everyone has one hobby or another. Of all hobbies, I do believe that reading is the simplest and most useful. How can we increase the benefits of reading and make it easier?

I think that we should start a book club for secondary and university students in our town. We could read both Arabic and English books. We could have meetings every week or two in the summer, and once a month during the school year. Here are the reasons for which I think we should have book clubs. First, if we have a book club, it will encourage us to read more. It is known that if people read a lot, they write better. So, this will help us in two ways. Secondly, we will develop some responsibility if we take turns leading the discussion at meetings. The leader will have to read the book carefully. Thirdly, discussing books will help us to overcome any shyness. Everyone will have to say something. Reading good books will be a better way to use our time than playing computer games or reading comic books. Don't you agree with me?



**Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d: 17.**

11- The best title for this passage is .....

- a. Merits of Joining Book Clubs
- b. Reading Becomes Useless
- c. Disadvantages of joining book clubs
- d. People are no longer interested in reading

12- What psychological effect does membership in book clubs have?

- a- It helps members to get over their shyness.
- b- It helps to decrease leadership responsibilities.
- c- It helps member to write better.
- d- It helps people to be lonely.

**13- According to the passage, the word "overcome" means .....**

- a- surrender
- b- give up
- c- defeat
- d- lose

14- After reading the passage, what type of books does the writer think less useful?

- a- Science books
- b- Adventure books
- c- Fiction books
- d- Comic books

15- What happen if people read a lot?

- a- They join book clubs
- b- They learn to write better
- c- They can't lead a discussion
- d- They are very shy

16- The writer thinks that .....

- a- book clubs encourage reading
- b- book clubs distribute books
- c- readers should read books only
- d- readers shouldn't make discussions

17- ..... is a good way for spending time.

- a- Reading
- b- Fighting
- c- Disagreement
- d- Meetings

18- The first paragraph deals with .....

- a- the importance of book clubs
- b- the benefits of reading alone
- c- many hobbies are better than reading.
- d- the advantages of reading

**Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

Nature photographers have captured on film a spider jumping from one flower to another. Using its large eyes, the jumping spider follows its prey. Then, the jumping spider set it sights, spins out a "safety line," and jumps.

A common variety in the United States, the Daring Jumping Spider makes its home in woods, fields, and gardens. Its distinctive, big-eyed appearance makes it easy to recognize. Four of its eight eyes are located on its face, and the other four are on top of its head. The spider is black with gray or white stripes, and it has spots on its abdomen.

Jumping spiders feast on a variety of insects, as well as other spiders. Some varieties climb as well, giving them a wide range of potential prey. These arachnids do not build webs to catch prey. They hunt on foot be sneaking up and pouncing on their victims. Even though jumping spiders only grow to be between one-quarter and one-held inches long, they can leap amazing distances for their size. Additionally, their excellent eyesight makes them very accurate. Jumping spiders are also one of the fastest arachnids. Scientists claim they are very smart.

In addition to using silk for safety lines when jumping, jumping eggs until hatching. Insects should be way of this spider without a web that can stealthily approach, keenly observe, and leap.

**19- The main idea of the passage is .....**

- Ⓐ The special skills the spider uses to catch its preys
- Ⓑ The different kinds of insects the spider catches
- Ⓒ The carious environments in which the spiders live
- Ⓓ The difference between various kinds of spiders

**20- Which of the following sentences is CORRECT ?**

- Ⓐ Jumping spiders are as smart as bees.
- Ⓑ Jumping spiders are as lazy as some bats.
- Ⓒ All spiders are jumping.
- Ⓓ All spiders are safe.

**21- Why does the author say these spiders have distinctive appearance ?**

- Ⓐ They have large eyes to observe their prey.
- Ⓑ They spin out a line to construct a web and catch prey.
- Ⓒ They enclose their eggs in a silk sack.
- Ⓓ They create a shelter under a leaf.

**22- The spider use their silk to .....**

- Ⓐ kill their victims
- Ⓑ encase their babies
- Ⓒ fly in the air
- Ⓓ encase their babies

**23- The spider has ..... different colours.**

- Ⓐ four
- Ⓑ three
- Ⓒ two
- Ⓓ five

**24- The third paragraph deals with .....**

- Ⓐ the details of the spider's jumping abilities.
- Ⓑ the spider's appearance which is very frightening

© how spiders protect themselves against other insects    ④ how spiders build their own homes

25- Spiders have ..... eyesight.

- ① poor      ② distinguished      ③ weak      ④ terrible

26- Which of the following sentences is an evaluation to the passage ?

- ① Scientists should collect all spiders.      ② Scientists should forget about spiders.  
③ Insects should kill jumping spiders.      ④ Insects should be wary of jumping spiders.

ثانياً الاستثله الموضوعية التالية ( كل سؤال بدرجتان )

27- He went by bus but he ..... in his car.

- a- could go      b- could have gone      c- must have gone      d- needn't have to go

28. He recommended that he .....next Friday.

- a. will visit      b. would visit      c. visit      d. visited

29. The plane.....in the sea. If it had fallen on land, someone would have seen it.

- a. can't have fallen      b. should have fallen      c. must have fallen      d. could have fallen

30- A message from one company to another company is a kind of .....

- a- a formal email      b- an informal email      c- an expository essay      d- a persuasive essay

**Choose the best Arabic translation:**

31- Food for all is the major problem of the world today because a hungry world is never likely to be a peaceful one.

- أ- إن توفير الغذاء للجميع هو المشكلة الرئيسية في العالم اليوم لأن العالم الجائع لا بد أن يكون عالماً يسوده السلام.  
ب- إن توفير الغذاء للجميع هو المشكلة الرئيسية في العالم اليوم، لأن العالم الجائع لا ينتظر أن يكون عالماً يسوده السلام.  
ج- إن غذاء الجميع هو المشكلة الثانوية في العالم اليوم لأن العالم الجائع لا يكون عالماً مسالماً.  
د- إن الغذاء للجميع هو المشكلة الرئيسية في العالم اليوم لأن العالم الجائع لا يحتمل أن يكون عالماً لا يسوده السلام.

32- In the rainy season, there is plenty of water. The dams store it for use during the dry months.

- أ- يكون هناك فيضاً من المياه في موسم الأمطار فتتممررها السدود لاستخدامها خلال أشهر الجفاف.  
ب- يكون هناك فائضاً من المياه في موسم الأمطار فتخزنها السدود لاستخدامها خلال أشهر الجفاف.  
ج- يكون هناك فائضاً من المياه في موسم الأمطار فتخزنها الأمطار لتخزينها خلال أشهر الجفاف.  
د- يكون هناك فائضاً من المياه في موسم الجفاف فتخزنها السدود لاستخدامها خلال أشهر الأمطار.

a- Every day new scholars provide service to humanity, so we owe them a lot of credit.

b- Every day scientists provide service to humanity, so we owe them a lot of credit.

c- Everyday scientists provide service to humanity, so we owe them a lot of credit.

d-Every day scientists provide service to humanity, so we all own them a lot of credit.

34- العدالة من أهم القيم الأساسية الموجودة في النظم الإجتماعية في جميع الدول التي تحمي الحريات وحقوق الإنسان.

a- Justice that protect freedom and human rights is one of the most fundamental values found in the social system of all countries.

b- Justice is the most fundamental value found in social system in all countries that protect freedoms and observe human rights.

c- Justice is one of the most fundamental value found in social system in all countries that protect freedom and observe human rights.

d- Justice is one of the most fundamental values found in social systems in all countries that protect freedom and observe human rights.

ثالثاً الاستثله المقالية التالية ( كل سؤال بدرجتان )

## The Novel

35. "I have to tell you that Pip has great expectations. If you were in Pip's place, would this large amount of property in future be your great expectation? Why?

36. Was Pip right not to want all the poor people in this village to see him in his fine clothes? Why?

رابعاً الاستثله المقالية التالية ( اربع درجات )

**37-Write six lines on the following topic:**

How to overcome the pressures of life.

## Chapter 4

When I visited Miss **Havisham** the next day, I was sorry that **Estella** was not there. Miss **Sarah Pocket** opened the door for me. 'What do you want?' Miss **Havisham** said angrily. 'I hope you don't want anything from me, because you will get nothing!' 'I don't want anything. I have come to say thank you – for my apprenticeship **تدريب عملي**,' I explained. 'Well,' Miss **Havisham** replied, 'from now on **من الان فصاعدا**, come to see me once a year, on your birthday!' I promised that I would. 'You are looking for **Estella**, aren't you?' Miss **Havisham** continued. 'She has gone away for her education and she will become a lady **سيده**. Do you feel that you have lost her, **Pip**?' She laughed **ضحكت**, and I did not know what to say.

Then she asked me to leave, so I set off **ينطلق** for home. On the way, I met Mr **Wopsle**, one of the guests from that Christmas dinner a few years ago, and we walked together. It was getting darker now. In the mist, a man came slowly towards us, and we realised it was **Orlick**. He told us that some more convicts had escaped from the prison ship, and he seemed to act strangely **يتصرف بغرابه** as he walked with us along the road back. On my return to the house, I was surprised to find a crowd of **مجموعه من** people in the kitchen. While **Joe** had been out that evening, someone had broken into **اقتحم** our house and they had hit Mrs **Joe** on the head, injuring her badly. Nothing had been taken, but a convict's leg-irons **كلبشات الرجل** lay on the floor.

I immediately remembered the convict who I had helped two years before in the graveyard. However, I felt sure that the person who committed the crime **ارتكب الجريمة** was not him. I suspected **يشك Orlick** because he had been so angry with my sister. However, I had no proof. Mrs **Joe** was unable to speak or walk again after the attack, but she could draw **يرسم**, and one day, she drew a hammer. **Biddy** and I knew at once that the hammer meant the blacksmith's hammer, which meant **Orlick**! When Mrs **Joe** was able to sit in the kitchen again, we could see that she was scared of **خائف من** him. Mrs **Joe** could not hurt me now and because **Joe** needed help in the house, **Biddy** came to cook and clean for us. At last, my life was improving. Some years passed, and I continued my apprenticeship at the blacksmith's. My visits to Miss **Havisham**'s house continued once a year.

It seemed as though time, like her old clocks, had stopped there. I did not see **Estella** again during that time, although I often thought of her. And when it was time to leave, Miss **Havisham** always gave me a coin **عمله** and told me to come back on my next birthday.

**Biddy** soon became an important member **عضو** in our household **ملاك المنزل**. She looked after everything well, and also cared for **يهتم ب** my sister. Mrs **Joe** could no longer walk or speak, and now I felt sorry for her. As the weeks became months, and the months became years, I also saw how kind and good **Biddy** was. One day, I said to her. '**Biddy**, I want to become a fine gentleman.' 'But don't you think you are happier as you are, **Pip**?' she asked, surprised. 'No, **Biddy**,' I explained. 'I will never be happy unless I can lead a different life to the one I live now.' She looked down and was quiet.

'I don't want to be just a blacksmith,' I continued. 'Ever since I met **Estella** at Miss

**Havisham's**, I have wanted to improve myself. She is so beautiful and clever, and I admire her very much!

After a moment, **Biddy** asked quietly, 'Do you want to become a gentleman to upset her, or to marry her? If you want to upset her, then you shouldn't care what she thinks; if you want to marry her, she probably isn't worth **المجهود يستحق** the effort.'

'That may be true,' I replied, 'but I still admire **Estella** so much!'

I knew that I was making a mistake, but I could not change my feelings.

**Biddy** told me then that she was glad I could talk to her, and said she would never tell anyone else. 'I will always tell you everything, **Biddy**!' I said. 'Until you're a fine gentleman,' she replied, in a strange, sad voice. It seemed impossible that my wish to become a gentleman would come true. But one evening, while **Joe** and I were at the village inn, listening to Mr **Wopsle** reading aloud from a newspaper, I noticed that a stranger was looking at us. Then I remembered him. He was the gentleman I had met on the stairs at Miss **Havisham's** house, years before. 'Is your apprentice, **Pip**, here?' the dark man asked us, looking at Joe. 'I need to speak privately to you both. He sounded like an important man, so we invited him to come back to the workshop **الورشه** with us. Once there, he said he was Mr **Jaggers**, a lawyer from London. 'I am working for someone but I cannot tell you their name,' he explained. 'I have to tell you that **Pip** has **great expectations** **توقعات عظيمة**. He will receive a large amount of **property** **ملكه** in future, so now he must have an education. The only condition is that he does not ask who his **benefactor** **خير محسن** is.' I immediately agreed. **Joe** was so surprised that he did not **object** **يعترض علي** at all when Mr **Jaggers** asked him if he could end my apprenticeship immediately.

'I have a large sum of money for you,' Mr **Jaggers** continued, turning to me, 'and your education will begin soon in London, with Mr **Matthew Pocket**. He will be your teacher and he will make a gentleman of you! But first, take these twenty pounds to buy some new clothes.' When **Joe** was asked if he needed any money for losing me at the blacksmith's, he replied, '**Pip** is welcome to go and find his fortune **ثروه**.

Money makes no difference to my feelings for him. We will always be best friends.'

**Joe** was so good and kind, and really cared about me. When he and **Biddy** realised that I was to leave them in just a week, they both congratulated me, but they did not say much more than that. I knew that they were sad that I was leaving. My sister did not understand what was happening, although **Biddy** tried to explain everything to her. I decided that when I had bought my new clothes, I would put them on at Uncle **Pumblechook's** house. 'I don't want all the poor people in this village to see me in my fine clothes,' I explained to **Joe** and **Biddy**. They were both silent. Uncle **Pumblechook**, however, was delighted. 'I will never forget you, **Joe**,' I said, as I left the blacksmith's a week later. However, in truth, I had begun to feel more and more ashamed of **مكسوف من** **Joe's** poor education. When I said goodbye to **Biddy**, I asked if she could teach **Joe** to speak better, but to my surprise she refused. Suddenly, I felt lonelier than ever before.

## Chapter four

1. Why do you think Orlick mentioned **ذكر** that more convicts had escaped from the prison ship?  
- To give the others the idea that it was a convict who had hit Mrs Joe.

- He wanted Pip and Mr Wopsle to believe that one of the convicts hit Mrs Joe

- So that no one would suspect **يشك** that Orlick had hit Mrs Joe.

**2. Should Pip have pitied **يشفق** Mrs Joe although she was cruel **قاسي** to him? Why?**

- No, I think he felt that his life would improve as she wouldn't be able to hurt **يؤذي** me again.

**3. 'I will never be happy unless I can lead a different life to the one I live now.' Do you think Pip was right to feel that way? Why?**

- Yes, as he had a miserable life. He wanted his life to change so that he could be a gentleman and achieve his expectations **توقعات** in life.

**4. Pip said to Biddy, "I knew that I was making a mistake, but I could not change my feelings". If you were Pip, would you change your feelings towards Estella? Why?**

- No, because I was in love with her. Her beauty was matchless. **جمالها لا مثيل له**

- No, I think Pip's heart was set on Estella and he could do nothing about it.

**- Yes, Because Estella had a heart of stone. She didn't love Pip. She probably wouldn't worth the effort **لا يستحق المجهود** Pip would exert for her.**

**5. Do you agree that Joe had better morals than Pip? Why?**

- Yes, he agreed to end Pip's apprenticeship immediately to enable him to lead a happy life and refused to take any money for losing Pip.

- When he was ill , Joe looked after him and paid for his debts. **ديون**

**6. Would Pip have paid more attention to Biddy if he hadn't known Estella? Why?**

- Yes, because he trusted her and told her his secrets. She was also so helpful. **In the end he wanted to marry her ,but she preferred Joe.**

- No, he wouldn't. Pip was looking for a type of girls like Estella to be just a motive **حافز** for him to be a different person.

**7. "I have to tell you that Pip has great expectations. He will receive a large amount of property in future," said Mr Jaggers. If you were in Pip's place, would this large amount of property in future be your great expectation? Why?**

- Yes, because it would help me get a good education, be a gentleman, and marry Estella.

**8. Shouldn't Pip have asked who that benefactor was? Why?**

- No, he shouldn't. Getting that wealth was much more important than knowing who the benefactor was.

- Yes, he should. because of he must have been curious **غريب** to know who the benefactor was. **In the end when he knew that his benefactor was a convict he decided not to take money.**

**9. Was Pip right not to want all the poor people in this village to see him in his fine clothes? Why?**

- Yes, because he was afraid that they would envy **يحسد** him.

**10. In your opinion, did Pip want to have a better life just because he was ambitious **طموح**? Why?**

- No, he wanted a better life to attract **يجذب** Estella's attention **انتباه** so that he could marry her.

- Yes, because he went through several hardships **صعوبات** in his life. He was keen to change his life for the better.

**11. Do you think that Pip's education alone could change his life? Why?**

- No, the money he would have from his benefactor **محسن** would surely change his change everything in his life.

- Yes, because education is an important way for the poor to change their position **مكانه** in life.

**12. If you were Pip, would you leave your friends and family behind to move to a big city to get a better education? Why?**

- Yes, because it would be my best chance to live well and achieve my expectation in life.

**13-Do you think Pip does the right thing when he goes to London? Why?**

- Yes, he did the right thing. He wanted to change and wanted to be a new gentleman and that wouldn't be achieved if he stayed in his village.

**14-How has Pip changed since he visited Miss Havisham?**



- He felt ashamed of **مكسوف من** himself as he was poor. He wanted to learn, so he wanted Bidy to teach him. He changed his opinion not to be a blacksmith and he wanted to a gentleman to be admired by Estella.

**15- How has Pip changed since the visit of Mr Jaggers?**

Pip now feels that he's different from the people around him because they are poor, and he is going to become rich. Also, because they aren't educated **لم يكن متعلم**, and he's going to get an education and become a gentleman. He now sees the other people in the village as 'poor people'. He knows that he is different to them now that he has 'fine clothes' and he feels uncomfortable about this difference because he doesn't want them to see him in these clothes. Pip says that he feels 'ashamed' of Joe's poor education now, but he used to respect him as a blacksmith. One effect of these changes on Pip is that he's now avoiding contact with **يتجنب** **الاتصال مع الناس** people who he used to be happy with, specifically Joe and the other people in the village. As a result, Pip feels very lonely.

**16- Why was it thought that it was one of the convicts who hit Mrs Joe?**

- Because there were a convict's leg-irons on the floor.

**17- Why do you think Miss Havisham wanted Estella to be educated to be a lady?**

- To use her to take her revenge of **ياخذ بثأرها** all the men as her fiancé **خطيبها** deceived **خدع** her.

**18- Do you think the prison ship was well fortified? Why? Why not?**

- I don't think it was well fortified **محصن** as it was easy for convicts to escape from it. Actually a lot of them escaped and one of them was the convict on the marshes.

## Key vocabulary

|                        |                             |                                |                  |                                    |                     |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>mute</b>            | يكتم الصوت                  | <b>install</b>                 | يركب - يثبت      | <b>join</b>                        | ينضم الي            |
| <b>catch up with</b>   | يوكب -                      | <b>look into</b>               | يتحقق من         | <b>turn up</b>                     | يرفع الصوت          |
| <b>brainstorm</b>      | عصف ذهني- يتبادل الأفكار    | <b>switch on - off</b>         | يفتح - يغلق جهاز | <b>turn down</b>                   | يخفض الصوت          |
| <b>highlight</b>       | اهم الاحداث- يلقي الضوء علي | <b>presentation</b>            | تقديم            | <b>session</b>                     | فتره                |
| <b>mind map</b>        | خريطه ذهنيه                 | <b>plug in</b>                 | يوصل فيشه        | <b>click</b>                       | ينقر علي            |
| <b>technical</b>       | فني                         | <b>documents</b>               | وثائق            | <b>decline</b>                     | انخفاض- ينخفض       |
| <b>virtual meeting</b> | اجتماع افتراضي              | <b>trend</b>                   | اتجاه - رأي      | <b>topics</b>                      | مواضيع              |
| <b>download</b>        | ينزل من النت                | <b>podcast</b>                 | بث صوتي          | <b>slides</b>                      | شرائح               |
| <b>forum</b>           | منتدى                       | <b>pod cast</b>                | ملف وسائط متعدده | <b>videoconference</b>             | مؤتمرات عبر الفيديو |
| <b>share a screen</b>  | يشارك شاشه                  | <b>Artificial Intelligence</b> | ذكاء صناعي       | <b>(IT) Information Technology</b> | تكنولوجيا المعلومات |

### Definitions

|                                |                                                                                                                                                                    |                         |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>document</b>                | a piece of paper that has <b>official</b> information n it                                                                                                         | وثيقه                   |
| <b>mute</b>                    | to <b>make a sound</b> of something quieter or make it disappear completely.                                                                                       | يكتم الصوت              |
| <b>slides</b>                  | a piece of a film in a <b>frame</b> that you shine a light through to <b>show a picture on a screen</b>                                                            | شرائح                   |
| <b>virtual</b>                 | made on the internet or on a computer , <b>rather than</b> in the real world                                                                                       | واقعي-افتراضي<br>- عملي |
| <b>software</b>                | the sets of a programe that tell a computer how t do a particular job.                                                                                             | برامج الكمبيوتر         |
| <b>share</b>                   | to give some of what you have to somebody else .                                                                                                                   | يشارك                   |
| <b>IT support</b>              | <b>technical help</b> that a company gives to <b>customers</b> using the internet.                                                                                 | دعم تكنولوجيا المعلومات |
| <b>highlight</b>               | - to <b>make a problem</b> or a subject easy to notice to that people <b>pay attention</b> to it.<br>- to make part of a text with a <b>special coloured pen</b> . | يسلط الضوء علي          |
| <b>join</b>                    | to become a member of a meeting or an organisation                                                                                                                 | ينضم الي                |
| <b>Catch up with</b>           | to reach the same <b>standard ( level )</b> as other people in your class, group.                                                                                  | يوكب                    |
| <b>respond</b>                 | to do, say or write something as a <b>reply</b> or <b>reaction</b> to something.                                                                                   | يستجيب                  |
| <b>welfare officer</b>         | a person who is <b>in a position of authority</b> in a large organisation                                                                                          | موظف رعايه الشباب       |
| <b>artificial intelligence</b> | the study of how to make computers do intelligent things that people can do , such as think and <b>make decisions</b>                                              | الذكاء الصناعي          |
| <b>highlights</b>              | the most important, interesting, or enjoyable part of something such as a holiday, <b>performance</b> , or <b>sports competition</b> .                             | اهم الاحداث             |
| <b>interpersonal</b>           | connecting with relationships between people.                                                                                                                      | شخصي                    |

|                   |                                                                                                                 |                              |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>trend</b>      | <b>a general tendency in which a situation is changing or developing.</b>                                       | <b>رأي - اتجاه</b>           |
| <b>install</b>    | <b>to add new software to a computer so that it is ready to be used.</b>                                        | <b>يركب</b>                  |
| <b>technique</b>  | <b>a particular way of doing something ( in which you have to learn <b>special skills</b> )</b>                 | <b>طريقه</b>                 |
| <b>mind map</b>   | <b>a <b>diagram</b> used to represent words , ideas , <b>tasks</b> or other items .</b>                         | <b>خريطة ذهنيه</b>           |
| <b>forum</b>      | <b>an organization, meeting etc where people have a chance to <b>publicly discuss</b> an important subject.</b> | <b>منتدى</b>                 |
| <b>look into</b>  | <b>to try to <b>find out</b> the truth about a problem,crime to solve it.</b>                                   | <b>يحقق في</b>               |
| <b>switch off</b> | <b>to <b>turn off</b> a machine , light , radio using a switch.</b>                                             | <b>يطفىء جهاز</b>            |
| <b>switch on</b>  | <b>to <b>turn on</b> a machine , light , radio using a switch</b>                                               | <b>يشغل جهاز</b>             |
| <b>turn down</b>  | <b>to <b>make a machine</b> like an oven, radio produce less heat or sound.</b>                                 | <b>يخفض الصوت او الحرارة</b> |
| <b>turn up</b>    | <b>to make a machine like an oven, radio produce more heat or sound.</b>                                        | <b>يرفع الصوت او الحرارة</b> |

**Be honest , don't look at the table**

### **Quickly – Quickly- Quickly Test yourself**

Choose the right answers:

1- To ..... is to turn a machine, light, radio etc. off using a switch.

a. switch ... on                      b. switch ... off                      c. look into                      d. approach

2- To ..... is to begin to take part in an activity that other people are involved in.

a. join                      b. mute                      c. share                      d. install

3 A..... is an organization, meeting etc where people have a chance to publicly discuss an important subject.

a. form                      b. assembly                      c. forum                      d. association

4.A .....is a general direction in which a situation is changing or developing.

a. trend                      b. fashion                      c. society                      d. economy

5- To ..... is to come from behind and reach someone in front of you by going faster.

a. switch .. on                      b. switch ... off                      c. look into                      d. catch up with

6- To ..... is to make the sound of something quieter, or make it disappear completely.

a. join                      b. mute                      c. share                      d. install

7.A.....is the the most important, interesting, or enjoyable part of something such as a holiday, performance, or sports.

a. funeral                      b. highlight                      c. accident                      d. occasion

8- To ..... is to turn a machine, light, radio etc. on using a switch.

a. switch ... on                      b. switch ... off                      c. look into                      d. depend on

9- To ..... is to have or use something with other people.

a. join                      b. mute                      c. share                      d. install

10. A/An..... Is a person who is in a position of authority in a large organization.

a. police officer                      b. security officer                      c. army officer                      d. welfare officer

### **Lesson one and two**

|                    |                             |                   |                |                            |                    |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------|----------------|----------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>chat</b>        | <b>يحدث</b>                 | <b>project</b>    | <b>مشروع</b>   | <b>environment</b>         | <b>بيئه</b>        |
| <b>instant</b>     | <b>عاجل - فوري</b>          | <b>document</b>   | <b>وثيقه</b>   | <b>link</b>                | <b>رابط - يربط</b> |
| <b>create</b>      | <b>يخلق - يبدع</b>          | <b>microphone</b> | <b>ميكرفون</b> | <b>realise</b>             | <b>يدرك - يفهم</b> |
| <b>respond</b>     | <b>يرد - يستجيب</b>         | <b>screen</b>     | <b>شاشه</b>    | <b>software</b>            | <b>برامج تشغيل</b> |
| <b>messaging</b>   | <b>مراسله - تبادل رسائل</b> | <b>sound</b>      | <b>صوت</b>     | <b>internet connection</b> | <b>وصلة النت</b>   |
| <b>communicate</b> | <b>يتصل</b>                 | <b>efficient</b>  | <b>كفاء</b>    | <b>employ</b>              | <b>يوظف</b>        |

|                      |               |                    |                  |                          |              |
|----------------------|---------------|--------------------|------------------|--------------------------|--------------|
| <b>definitely</b>    | بالتأكيد      | <b>interview</b>   | مقابله شخصيه     | <b>employee</b>          | موظف         |
| <b>motivated</b>     | متحفز         | <b>interviewee</b> | الضيف            | <b>employer</b>          | صاحب عمل     |
| <b>fade up</b>       | يذبل          | <b>interviewer</b> | المجاور - المذيع | <b>employment</b>        | وظيفه        |
| <b>independently</b> | بشكل مستقل    | <b>prediction</b>  | تنبؤ             | <b>unemployment</b>      | بطالة        |
| <b>application</b>   | تطبيق         | <b>personal</b>    | شخصي             | <b>employable</b>        | قابل للتوظيف |
| <b>apply for</b>     | يتقدم لـ      | <b>available</b>   | متاح - متوفر     | <b>unemployed</b>        | عاطل         |
| <b>consequence</b>   | نتيجه         | <b>headphone</b>   | سماعه رأس        | <b>human contact</b>     | اتصال        |
| <b>interpersonel</b> | شخصي          | <b>level</b>       | مستوي            | <b>IT support worker</b> | عامل دعم فني |
| <b>welfare</b>       | رفاهيه        | <b>suited</b>      | مناسب - ملائم    | <b>version</b>           | نسخه - اصدار |
| <b>race</b>          | سباق - يتسابق | <b>type</b>        | نوع              | <b>tool</b>              | اداه         |
| <b>position</b>      | وظيفه - مكان  | <b>role</b>        | دور              | <b>apps</b>              | تطبيقات      |
| <b>memory</b>        | ذاكره         | <b>colleague</b>   | زميل             | <b>logical</b>           | منطقي        |

## Lesson 3 & 4 and 5

|                      |                  |                     |                |                       |               |
|----------------------|------------------|---------------------|----------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| <b>creative</b>      | مبدع             | <b>effectively</b>  | بفاعليه        | <b>heading</b>        | عنوان         |
| <b>point</b>         | نقطه             | <b>summarise</b>    | يلخص           | <b>technique</b>      | اسلوب - تقنيه |
| <b>tip</b>           | نصيحه            | <b>make a list</b>  | قائمه          | <b>guess</b>          | يخمن          |
| <b>address</b>       | عنوان - يخاطب    | <b>arrow</b>        | سهم            | <b>attach to</b>      | يصل - يلحق    |
| <b>background</b>    | خلفيه            | <b>certain</b>      | مؤكد           | <b>clip</b>           | مقطع فيديو    |
| <b>concentration</b> | تركيز            | <b>details</b>      | تفاصيل         | <b>essential</b>      | ضروري         |
| <b>grateful</b>      | شاكر             | <b>icon</b>         | ايقونه         | <b>mark</b>           | يميز - علامه  |
| <b>option</b>        | اختيار           | <b>phrase</b>       | عبارة          | <b>reduce</b>         | يقلل          |
| <b>revise for</b>    | يميز             | <b>shocked</b>      | مصدوم          | <b>tend to</b>        | يميل الى      |
| <b>unit</b>          | وحده             | <b>video call</b>   | مكالمة فيديو   | <b>solutions</b>      | حلول          |
| <b>specific</b>      | خاص              | <b>stressed</b>     | متوتر          | <b>classmate</b>      | زميل          |
| <b>powerpoint</b>    | برنامج باوربوينت | <b>definitely</b>   | بالتأكيد       | <b>quests</b>         | ضيوف          |
| <b>old fashioned</b> | موضه قديمه       | <b>blog</b>         | مدونه          | <b>results</b>        | نتائج         |
| <b>human beings</b>  | البشر            | <b>post</b>         | بريد           | <b>stressful</b>      | مجهد          |
| <b>faithful</b>      | مؤمن - مخلص      | <b>research</b>     | مخلص           | <b>social media</b>   | وسائل التواصل |
| <b>conference</b>    | مؤتمر            | <b>pale</b>         | شاحب           | <b>conclude</b>       | يستنتج - يختم |
| <b>document</b>      | وثيقه            | <b>mind</b>         | يمانع          | <b>discover</b>       | يكشف          |
| <b>image</b>         | صوره ذهنيه       | <b>IT support</b>   | دعم تقني       | <b>wonder</b>         | يسأل          |
| <b>delay</b>         | تأخير            | <b>destruction</b>  | دمار           | <b>explanation</b>    | تفسير - شرح   |
| <b>suit</b>          | يناسب - بدله     | <b>half brother</b> | اخ غير شقيق    | <b>clarification</b>  | توضيح         |
| <b>plus</b>          | زائد             | <b>reality</b>      | الحقيقه        | <b>make a summary</b> | تلخيص         |
| <b>cards</b>         | كروت             | <b>identify</b>     | يتعرف علي      | <b>separate</b>       | يفصل          |
| <b>nouns</b>         | اسماء            | <b>replace</b>      | يستبدل         | <b>settings</b>       | اعدادات       |
| <b>combine</b>       | يربط             | <b>risk</b>         | يحازف - مجارفه | <b>sign</b>           | علامه - يوقع  |
| <b>clarify</b>       | يوضح             | <b>officer</b>      | ضابط           | <b>get engaged</b>    | مخطوبة        |
| <b>clerk</b>         | موظف             | <b>fiancée</b>      | خطيبة          | <b>jealous</b>        | غيور          |
| <b>unpleasant</b>    | غير لطيف         | <b>fiancé</b>       | خطيب           | <b>trust</b>          | يثق           |
| <b>lodgings</b>      | سكن / إقامة      | <b>revenge</b>      | انتقام / ثار   | <b>grumpy</b>         | متأفف / حاد   |
| <b>adopt</b>         | يتبنى            | <b>inherit</b>      | يرث            | <b>good-natured</b>   | لطيف / أنيس   |
| <b>handsome</b>      | وسيم             | <b>share</b>        | نصيب           | <b>dare</b>           | يجرؤ          |
| <b>grateful</b>      | شاكر             | <b>ahead of</b>     | امامه          | <b>relative</b>       | قريب          |
| <b>difficulties</b>  | صعوبات           | <b>footsteps</b>    | خطوات اقدام    | <b>engage</b>         | يخطب          |

## Expressions

|                                |                 |                                |                |
|--------------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------|----------------|
| <b>attach a ..... to</b>       | يرفق لـ         | <b>internet connection</b>     | وصله نت        |
| <b>by accident - by chance</b> | بالصدفه         | <b>stay in touch with</b>      | يكون علي اتصال |
| <b>do their project</b>        | يعمل مشروع      | <b>personal problems</b>       | مشاكل شخصيه    |
| <b>bring together</b>          | يجمع - يضم      | <b>instead of</b>              | بدلا من        |
| <b>agree with</b>              | يتفق مع         | <b>make - have choice</b>      | يختار          |
| <b>on a call</b>               | مشغول في مكالمة | <b>(take- have) control of</b> | يتحكم في       |





## Derivatives

| Verb             |                | Noun                     |                   | Adjective            |                |
|------------------|----------------|--------------------------|-------------------|----------------------|----------------|
| <b>interview</b> | يقابل          | Interviewer- interviewee | المذيع - الضيف    | <b>interviewable</b> | قابل للمقابلة  |
| <b>create</b>    | يخلق - مبدع    | Creation- creator        | خلق - خالق        | <b>creative</b>      | مبدع           |
| <b>suit</b>      | يناسب          | Suit- suitability        | بدله - صلاحية     | <b>suitable</b>      | مناسب          |
| <b>connect</b>   | يربط - يصل     | connection               | صلة - رابطته      | <b>connected</b>     | مرتبط          |
|                  |                | virtuality               | الجوهر - احتماليه | <b>virtual</b>       | افتراضي        |
| <b>decide</b>    | يقرر           | decision                 | قرار              | <b>decisive</b>      | حاسم           |
| <b>support</b>   | يدعم           | supporter- support       | مؤيد - دعم        | <b>supportable</b>   | قابل للدعم     |
| <b>mute</b>      | يكنم الصوت     | mute                     | اخرس - ابكم       | <b>mute</b>          | صامت           |
| <b>predict</b>   | يتنبأ          | prediction               | تنبؤ              | <b>predictable</b>   | يمكن التنبؤ به |
| <b>attach</b>    | يربط - يرفق    | attachment               | مرفق              | <b>attached</b>      | متعلق ب        |
| <b>highlight</b> | يلقي الضوء على | highlight                | حدث مهم           | <b>highlighted</b>   | مهم - بارز     |
| <b>summarise</b> | يلخص           | summary                  | ملخص              | <b>summarised</b>    | ملخص           |
| <b>consider</b>  | يعتبر          | consideration            | اعتبار            | <b>considerable</b>  | مناسب          |

## Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

| Word                 | Meaning      | Synonyms                                   | Antonyms                                                            | Meaning            |
|----------------------|--------------|--------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>install</b>       | يركب         | position - set up- fix                     | <b>uninstall = remove</b>                                           | يزيل               |
| <b>turn up</b>       | يرفع الصوت   | increase, amplify, heighten, raise, boost  | <b>turn down- decrease- lower- reduce- diminish</b>                 | يخفض الصوت         |
| <b>virtual</b>       | واقعي        | online - fictional- irrational- artificial | <b>real - actual</b>                                                | ليس عقلاني - خيالي |
| <b>link</b>          | صلة - رابط   | connection - join                          | <b>separation</b>                                                   | فصل                |
| <b>old-fashioned</b> | موضه قديمه   | outdated - antique- traditional            | <b>fashionable- modern- contemporary</b>                            | مساير للموضه       |
| <b>highlight</b>     | اهم حدث      | peak- climax- focal point                  | <b>background- drawbacks disadvantages negatives- flaws-defects</b> | الاقل اهميه        |
| <b>highlight</b>     | يبرز         | distinguish                                | <b>neglect</b>                                                      | يهمل               |
| <b>mute</b>          | يصمت - صامت  | speechless, dumb, voiceless, silent        | <b>unsilence- vocal- loud -talkative</b>                            | يتكلم - عالي       |
| <b>support</b>       | دعم - مساعده | help - aid - assist                        | <b>disapproval-oppose</b>                                           | استنكار            |
| <b>join</b>          | ينضم         | enter- enrol                               | <b>unlink-leave- avoid</b>                                          | يفصل               |
| <b>available</b>     | متاح         | obtainable -ready                          | <b>unavailable</b>                                                  | غير متاح           |
| <b>attach</b>        | يربط         | fix - fasten -join                         | <b>detach</b>                                                       | يفصل               |
| <b>by accident</b>   | بالصدفه      | by chance- by luck                         | <b>on purpose</b>                                                   | عمدا               |
| <b>technique</b>     | طريقه        | system -method                             |                                                                     |                    |
| <b>respond</b>       | يستجيب       | answer - reply-react- behave               | <b>neglect</b>                                                      | يهمل               |
| <b>consequence</b>   | نتيجه        | result - outcome                           |                                                                     |                    |
| <b>stressful</b>     | مجهد         | annoying - intense- pressurized.           | <b>stressful</b>                                                    | مجهد               |
| <b>decline</b>       | ينخفض - يهبط | decrease-drop                              | <b>increase-develop</b>                                             | يزيد - يتطور       |
| <b>definitely</b>    | بالأكيد      | certainly- absolutely                      | <b>doubtfully- indefinitely</b>                                     | مرح                |
| <b>instant</b>       | فوري         | immediate- present                         | <b>delayed</b>                                                      | مؤجل - ملغي        |
| <b>welfare</b>       | رفاهيه       | prosperity - well being                    | <b>misery- depression</b>                                           | بؤس - اكتئاب       |



6- **virtual** مرئي - **visible** بصري - **visual** حقيقي - افتراضي

### Test yourself

- 1- The (virtual- visual - visible) head of the business is Mr. Ali. He runs the company effectively.
- 2- Good teachers use(virtual- visual - visible) aids to help students to understand their lessons.
- 3- The boy hid behind the table, but his head was (virtual- visual - visible) . His brother caught him.
- 4- The ( employer- employee) decided to raise the salaries due to the high prices.
- 5- We want a new Window version so we asked ( technical- a technician) to set it up.
- 6- We decided ( to – on) spend the summer holiday in Alex.
- 7- My brother decided ( on- to ) a big bank to train as an accountant.

7- **At the end** (في نهايه فيلم- مسرحيه- مؤتمر- مكان) - **in the end** (اخيرا)

### Test yourself

- 1- the main actor was killed (at the end- in the end) of the film
- 2- Our school is (at the end- in the end) of the street.
- 3- Ali tried a lot to answer the difficult question, (at the end- in the end ) he was able to answer it.

8- **join** يلتحق بـ - **My father joined a new job in El Asher Town.**

- **join** يربط - **Carpenters use glue to join the pieces of wood together .**

9- **link** ( to / with ) يربط - **The pipe must be linked to the cold water supply.**

- **link** رابط - **You can use the link of Mr.El Sebaei's notes to download it.**

10 - **share** = **participate** = **take part in** = **contribute to** يشارك في

11- **apply for** ( وظيفة / شيء ) يتقدم للحصول علي - **applicant** متقدم لطلب - **application** طلب وظيفة

12- **artificial** صناعي - **artificial ( intelligence / limbs / lake )**

- **industrial** ( خاص بالصناعة ) صناعي - **Industrial ( sector / revolution / country )**

13- **contact** : ( لا تأخذ حرف جر ) يتصل . **You can contact me on this number.**

- **connect ( to )** : يتصل . **You can connect the computer to the internet easily .**

**a contact with** : احتكاك او اتصال بـ : **She needs to have a contact with new people .**

LESSON ONE AND TWO

## LISTENING

**Listen to part of a podcast about the future of work: (WB. P.27)**

**Salma**: Hello and welcome to my **podcast** where we look at the world of work and the future. I'm **joined** now by Mina Mahmoud who looks **at future trends** in the **workplace**. Welcome Mina.

**Mina** : Thank you, Salma.

**Salma**: So, what do you think is the most important future tend in work we need to know about?

**Mina** : I'd say the biggest change will be that companies will **stop seeing work** as something everyone does in the same place and at the same time. **A lot of employees** were already working from home in 2020 and 2021. **Employees** will **carry on** with this and even more workers will join them. The research shows that home workers are very **efficient** and working from home is **good for the environment**. We also know that employees are more **motivated** if they decide their own **schedule**.

**Salma**: Does this means that employees will have more control over other areas of their working lives? Will more people start working on their own **rather than** in teams?

**Mina** : Yes. More companies who are already expecting their employees to work **independently** will continue doing this and others will soon catch up. Giving employees more **responsibility encourages** them to work harder. They enjoy **making more decisions** on their own and deciding how they work.

**Salma**: Do you think that employees will use technology to help them work more efficiently ?

**Mina** : I think we'll definitely stop sending emails in the next ten or twenty years and use other ways of communicating.

**Salma:** Why?

**Mina :** The research suggests people think **virtual meetings** are a more effective way of solving problems and **brainstorming ideas** than sending and reading emails. So, these ways of communicating are likely to become more popular and emails will become less popular.

**Salma:** That seems to be logical, I'll definitely remember to invite our team to a virtual meeting instead of sending them a hundred emails from now on!

-----

**Listen to an interview about the future of work: (WB. P.33)**

**Presenter:** Welcome to 'The Working World' where we are discussing the future of the labour market. Our guests today are Thomas Edward and Omar Hamed.

**Guests :** Thank you.

**Presenter:** **Let's start** with you, Omar. You have been studying the trends in the workplace for many years now. What do you want to tell young people about the future of work?

**Omar :** Well, after analyzing current job offers and interviewing business owners, we concluded that **Artificial Intelligence** will have **a significant impact on** the type of jobs in the future.

**Presenter:** Now, Thomas. I think you feel quite strongly about Artificial Intelligence.

**Thomas :** Yes, I do. Artificial Intelligence, or **"AI"** as we call it, promises to destroy jobs One study found that 82% of areas in Europe and North America **experienced a decrease in jobs** as a result of using AI.

**Omar :** Yes, but although this study appeared to show a decline in jobs, it failed to tell us there was an increase of 60% in jobs in areas where AI could not be used. Plus, an earlier study tells us that only 5% of jobs can be **completely substituted** by machines.

**Presenter:** So, what jobs will be less affected by AI?

**Omar :** It is clear that jobs that need to use interpersonal skills are a lot safer from being **substituted** by AI.

**Presenter:** You both seem to be suggesting that the job market appears to be changing. Should we risk using AI if it is going to cause so many problems?

**Thomas :** Change has always happened and always will. Most of our ancestors used to work in agriculture but machines reduced the demand for farmers but increased the need for computer programmers.

**Presenter:** What new jobs are expected to be common in the future?

**Omar :** Well, teaching jobs appear to be an area that will be less affected by AI and technology in general, as well as jobs in medicine, so nurses and doctors.

**Presenter:** Nurses and doctors? Why is that?

**Thomas :** Well, **the population of the world** is getting older and as more people live longer, they will need more health care.

**Presenter:** Ah. **That makes sense!** What impact would this have?

**Omar :** Well, it is expected that by 2030, **an average of 600 million people** worldwide will have to change careers or learn new skills.

**Presenter:** Interesting.....And what are some of these new skills Thomas?

**Thomas :** They need to learn about new technology and speak different language. With the internet we are working much more globally now, and we need to speak to people all over the world. I would consider studying English to a very high level and perhaps another language too.

**Presenter:** OK, we're almost out of time. Can you give our listeners one last piece of advice, Omar?

**Omar :** First of all, my advice would be not to worry. If you are at school now, do not give up the idea of your dream job. But remember you may need to learn a few new things to do that job in the future.

**Presenter:** Thank you. And how about you Thomas?

**Thomas :** Although I don't often agree with Omar, I do on this point. Adapting is the key, and you have to continue learning new things. This is more important now than ever.

**Presenter:** Well, thank you both very much for sharing your advice and giving us all a better idea of the world of work in the future.

---

## **READING**

**Carla:** Hi, can you help us?

**IT Support:** Yes, sure. Can you tell me **what the problem is**?

**Carla:** Sure. We wanted to have **a virtual meeting with a group of** students in Egypt for a project. We **installed the software for the meeting** and that was fine. Everyone joined the meeting. We **turned** our microphones **on** and **switched** our cameras **on**. We could hear and see everyone without any problems for the first five minutes.

**IT Support:** OK and what happened then?

**Carla:** Then, I **shared my screen** and everything **stopped working**.

**IT Support:** So the other students **couldn't hear** or **see** you and you couldn't see or hear them either?

**Carla:** That's right. We were talking to them, but they **stopped responding**. It was clear that they couldn't hear us. We **turned our sound** up, but it seems that they still couldn't hear anything we said or see us. We can only see the **document** I wanted to show them now.

**IT Support :** Did you **mute your microphone**?

**Carla :** No, I didn't touch my microphone. It was still on.

**IT Support :** Did you **check** your internet **connection**?

**Carla:** Yes, I did. **The internet connection** is fine.

**IT Support:** That's strange. Are you definitely still in the meeting? Could it be that you left the meeting and you didn't realise it?

**Carla:** I'll **check**. Oh, you're right. I closed the meeting by accident! Sorry.

**IT Support:** Don't worry. It happens Maybe you can look into other ways of **staying in touch with** the students during your meetings if there are **technical problems**, like email or instant messaging.

**Carla:** Yeah, good idea. Thanks for your help. I'll go and email the students.

---

## **A Conversation**

**Nevine:** I've bought some new headphones and have plugged them in but now I can't mute my microphone and everyone can hear me all the time.

**Hana :** I'm having problems with a video conference call. I can't hear anything when people are talking to me. I've just downloaded and installed the latest version of the software but nothing is happening. I've tried turning off the computer and turning it on again. Any other ideas?

**Mazin:** I need to show someone what's on my computer when we're on a call, but I don't know how to share my screen.

**Ziad :** There's a long delay when I'm playing games online and I can never keep up with my friends. I always lose the races in the games. Do I need to look into getting a better internet connection?

**Malak:** When I join a meeting online, I can't turn on my camera. So people can hear me, but they can't see me!

---

## **Video Script**

For decades now, there has been a fear that humans will be replaced by robots in the **workplace**. But is this something we really need to worry about?

The **trend** over the last few decades has been for **repetitive predictable work** to be replaced by technology. A **typical** example of this is supermarket check-out assistants. Supermarket workers are increasingly being replaced by self-service check-outs. Most supermarkets do still have more **traditional check-outs** with a human assistant as well. But the job of supermarket **check-out assistant** could soon completely disappear. Developments in technology don't always mean that human lose jobs though-they can create jobs, too. Let's look at two examples. The internet gives us access to an enormous amount of information, but we still need human to check how **reliable** this data is and **analyse** it. That's what a data scientist does.

The internet has also given rise to a wide range of online learning courses. To be effective, these courses need to be designed in **a user-friendly way**. These jobs didn't exist before the **advent of the internet**, and we will probably see many more new types of jobs emerge in the next few decades. So, it seems that there are two sides to the **debate** and the question remains: will human workers be completely replaced by technology? Or will human jobs simply change?

~~~~~


Lesson three , four and five

TIP1:

Start by **thinking** what you **need to learn**. For example, if you need to study for a Maths exam, make a list of all the topics you need to know Then, decide how much time you'll **need to learn** about each one. Finally, decide which topics are the most important and **plan to spend** more time on these

TIP 2:

This is **a creative way of bringing** information about a topic together in one place. You **start by writing** the topic in the centre of the page and then **draw lines** from the centre. At the end of each line, you write a different part of the topic and **make short notes** about it. You could even use pictures instead of text in your mind map too.

TIP 3:

For example, if you write the most important **points** about **a topic on cards**, you could use **the same colour cards** for similar topics. This will help you to find information more quickly. You could also get **some different coloured pens** and **highlight different types of words** (verbs, nouns, adjectives, etc) in different colours.

~~~~~

## SKILLS FOR LIFE

Everyone has problems while they are trying to study sometimes. Try sometimes. Don't **get stressed** or **give up**. Try to **think of creative solutions**. Try doing something in a different way, or in a different place, or in a different order or using a technology

~~~~~

To: Monica@mail.com

From: Imon@mail.com

Hi Monica,

Thank you for your email about **virtual meetings**. I understand how to **join** the meeting by **clicking on the link** in an email and **turning my microphone** and camera **on** and **off**, but I'm not sure about how to **give a presentation** during a meeting. It **sounds like** you have to **share your screen** if you want to show other people **a document or PowerPoint slides**, is that right? So I **need to join** the meeting, share my screen and then stop sharing when I've finished showing the thing I wanted to show. Have I understood that correctly? If I haven't, **feel free** to let me know how I should be doing it . Maybe we could have **a quick call** so you can talk me through it. Thanks very much **in advance** for your help. I'm sure **I'll be able to give** presentations in our meetings without any problems very soon.

Talk to you soon.

Iman

~~~~~

Hi there,

You asked for some **study** tips and I have two good ones for you:

**Try using the Pomodoro technique**. You **concentrate on** your work for 25 minutes, then **take a break**, then **do another session** for the same amount of time, then take another break. After a few of these, you take a longer break. **Try teaching another student** something you find difficult to understand. Prepare something before you **meet up** with them. Then explain it to your friend as well as you can.

**Let me know how the studying goes.**

Talk to you soon!

~~~~~

Dear Sir/Madam,

I am writing this letter **to apply for the position of student welfare officer**. I believe that I **am suited to the role** because I **enjoy helping** people feel more positive. At school, I have **learned to deal with stressful situations**. I like using my weekends and evenings to help other students. I

Mr El Sebaei Attaya

172

01228699122

SOUVENIR

always **appear to be calm** which helps the person I am speaking to. I am very excited by this role and I hope you **decide to offer** me the position. I hope to hear from you soon

Yours faithfully,

Mariam

~~~~~

**WB**

### **Studying on my Head**

**by Hamid Shazly**

I was never very **good at concentrating**, so my dad gave me a book called "Study skills for you." I discovered lots of new ideas. The first message in the book is that we all learn differently. So, the first thing I did was to learn how I best remember things. I **tried making a summary of each unit of the school book**, then a **summary of the summary** until I **reduced the essential information into a small mind map**. **Highlighting important details** in different colours helped me so much that I was even **able to remember** where on the map certain information was. History was **my worst subject**. So, while I was sure she has understood? **making my notes**, I played the same song **in the background**. When I went to sleep, I **used to listen** to the song again to make me think about the history notes. To **avoid** too much **sitting** on my desk, I got up every 20 minutes and walked around my room or went and studied in the park. I also recorded my notes on my phone and listened to them **while walking** in the park. So, I guess you're wondering whether all these experiments worked? Well, it certainly **helped me discover** how I remember things best and it **made revising a lot more interesting**. This meant I spent more time doing it. When I got my final results, I was shocked but very happy to tell my dad that **the highest mark** I got was in History!

~~~~~

Hi there,

Adding a virtual background is great fun and quite easy to do when you know how. **Let me explain**. First, **look for** the **arrow** next to the camera Icon at the bottom of the screen. **Click on** that and then **click on 'settings'**. Another window will open, and you have to find the **option on the left** that says **'video and image backgrounds'**. You have to **click on** that if you don't have any **images**, you can add them by **clicking** on the plus sign which you can find **on the right**. Choose the image you want and then click on 'apply' and that's it! I hope you have lots of fun but let me know if you have any questions.

Speak soon,

Basel

An email about thanking for advice

Hi Eman,

Thanks so much for your help with sharing documents while in a virtual meeting. I think I've understood everything, but I'd just like to check. I read your email carefully and from your explanation I understand that there are different ways to share documents. The first is to send each person an email with the document attached. That's a good idea but there are 25 people in my class, and I don't have all their email addresses. The other option is to attach the document in the chat box. Am I right in thinking that I have to click on the clip icon to do this? After that I need to choose the option which says "everyone" and click on the arrow to send it to everyone in the video call. Have I understood that correctly? Thanks again for all your wonderful advice which has been really helpful. If I have any more questions, do you mind me emailing you again for help?

All the best,

Heba

Writing a tip

When writing **personal or informal emails**, the tone, the choice of words and the way the words are put together are different:

- Use contractions, first person pronouns such as / or We, and phrasal verbs.
- Use greetings like Hi, Hello and Dear + first name.
- Use endings like (**Yours, Talk to you soon, Hope to hear from you soon and Best regards.**)

~~~~~

## Exercises

### LESSON ONE AND TWO

اولا الاسئلة الموضوعية التالية ( كل سؤال بدرجة )

#### 1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1-You can join the----- meeting by clicking on the link I sent you.  
a. false                      b. virtual                      c. offline                      d. factual
2. I had to ---- my mobile during the meeting so no one would hear it while it rang.  
a. mute                      b. meet                      c. turn on                      d. turn off
3. The internet ..... is quite strong in the office, so you can do all your online tasks easily.  
a. linking                      b. connection                      c. joining                      d. separation
4. I usually turn ----- my computer when I leave the office.  
a. on                      b. of                      c. off                      d. in
5. If you neglect your work, it will be difficult to catch----- .  
a. down                      b. out                      c. up with                      d. up
6. The young man was arrested after the police discovered that he had been ..... in a fight.  
a. engaged                      b. enjoyed                      c. enlarged                      d. entered
- 7.I'm proud of my contribution to the team's success; they all did their ..... of the work.  
a. share                      b. effort                      c. taking place                      d. training
- 8.The businessman bought 100 (shares-goods-applicants- employees) of Toyota Company at the market price
- 9.He is a (creative- creator- invent-created ) teacher.He presents his lessons using wonderful activities.
- 10.The company was (created-creator-creation- creating) 25 years ago. It has established itself a good position among the great companies.
- 11.My father asked a technician to (save- keep-install-repair ) our new washing machine.
- 12.Please,could you (mute-turn up- switch on-turn on) the music while I make a call.I can't hear well.
- 13.(Bugs- Window-Software-Settings) is the programs that run on a computer and perform certain functions.
- 14.The famous writer (shared- clicked-plugged-sent) his story with the press. Most people admired it.
15. An efficient .....should be promoted to motivate them to achieve more success.  
a. unemployment                      b. employment                      c. employer                      d. employee
- 16.Good teachers use power point(pictues-photos-books-slides) to try to facilitate the lessons to make students understand well.
- 17.The director prepared his (essay- article-presentation- position) carefully, so his message was easily understood.

18. There are 200 (employers – employees- owners – applicants) working in this big company.
- 20.The spread of Coronavirus has caused a lot of problems in the world like ( employment- tourism- unemployment- terrorism)
23. My son has managed to ( tie -link –connect-join) the Zamalik sporting club. It has been his dream for years.
24. After the match had ended, the reporter showed the ( accidents - occasions -incidents – highlights)of it. It was five minutes only.
30. Two children have been kidnapped.The police are looking ( into-up-on-in ) their disappearance and will find them quickly.
31. The government tries to find ( create – creation – creatively – creative ) solutions to our economic problems.
32. A good teacher never .....a single technique; they always use different strategies.  
a. appears                      b. succeeds                      c. adopts                      d. agrees
33. I think artificial intelligence can't replace ----- jobs  
a)public                      b) interpersonal                      c) personnel                      d) private
- 34.The murder of two young girls by their mother became a( brand -trend – popular-public) on all the social media sites.
- 35- This website is fake . It always offers me a lot of ( links -connections -communications – lakes) that have viruses. They destroy a lot of files.
- 36.I am writing this email to apply for the position of a student ..... officer.  
a)well-off                      b) wealthy                      c) welfare                      d) prosperity
- 37.There are nearly two thousand .....for only five jobs in this bank. They are too many.  
a) employees                      b) clerks                      c) applicants                      d) accounts
- 38 .A sudden chemical spill on the highway (created-creator-creation- creating) a record traffic jam.
- 39- Mrs Huda was asked to prepare a ( presentation -present -represent –representative)for the Mother's Day. She is the best teacher in the school.
- 40.I haven't( typed- wrote- repaired- installed) the new operating system yet because of the bugs the computer has.
- 41.My son joined a university in Cairo, he(lived-ate-shared- painted) a room with a classmate from a remote governorate.
- 42.He (write- type- published- documented) every thing he sees.He can always provethat it was done correctly.
43. Good teachers are able to devise new( techniques- roads-routes- rites ) according to the new topics to present them easily.
44. Youth are looking for jobs that suit them . They apply ( to- for- by- at ) any jobs that can develop their skills.
- 45- You should choose the colours which ( suite -fit –suit-sweat) your age .
46. The clever student can reduce the essential information in each lesson into a small mind ( map- limb-lab-course ) to help them remember the lessons well.
- 47.The bank ( served -reduced -motioned -mentioned) the benefit on the loans to face the financial crises.
48. During the meeting , the chairman asked all the members to turn (off- in- on-up )their mobiles. He doesn't want anything to disturb them.
- 49.A lot of famous men..... their funny videos on their sites. They have a lot of likes.  
a- share                      b) force                      c) allows                      d) photos

50- Lazy students should make .....maps to help you memorize the new words easily.

- a)brain                      b) mend                      c) mild                      d)mind

### Lesson three, four and five

أولا الاسئلة الموضوعية التالية ( كل سؤال بدرجة )

### Choose the right answers:

1.The headlines of famous newspapers are .....in red to attract attention.

- a) delighted                      b) writing                      c) highlighted                      d) spread

2. Students should be in contact with the .....to help them solve the problem of tablets..

- a) IT support                      b) civil engineer                      c) English teacher                      d) supervisor

3.We suffer from some problems in all sectors but we must overcome them to.... up with all the developed countries

- a) reach up                      b) catch up                      c) use up                      d) hold up

4.When you don't want any one to hear you, you have to .....the microphone.

- a) raise                      b) decrease                      c) mute                      d) silent

5- The ----- should respond to the manager's questions accurately.

- a) interview                      b) interviewer                      c) interviewee                      d) view

6 .There have been significant computer (attachments - appointments - developments - agreements) during the last decade.

7. The trainee pilot should be put in a ( natural-normal-usual-virtual ) plane not a real one to learn to fly 8. My brother has(made- done- joined-link ) the faculty of flying. He is going to fly aircraft.

9.My husband has a lot of wonderful ideas, so he decided to have a (wonderful-creation - natural -creative) course in writing to learn how to Express them.

10. The shool director has set up cameras and turned them (at-up-on-off )to know who leaves the school without his permission.

11-The passengers on the train ..... to each other to spend their time happily .

- a) quarrel                      b) chat                      c) shout                      d) scold

12- Could you ----- this wire to the computer to be able to use the internet.

- a) contact                      b) connect                      c) correct                      d) collect

13-The word clear is the synonym of the word -----

- a) ambiguous                      b) mysterious                      c) complex                      d) obvious

14- Simple to simplify is like clear to -----

- a) clerk                      b) clarify                      c) solidify                      d) clarification

15- My father wanted to hear what I was listening to so he told me not ---- the microphone.

- a) mute                      b) moat                      c) multiply                      d) meet

16. "We" company provides its customers with bad.....of the internt . It is slower than the turtle.

- a) relations                      b) connections                      c) collections                      d) corrections

17-Human beings will continue doing jobs that need ----- skills.

- a) interpersonal                      b) personnel                      c) person                      d) personality

18. I spilt the juice on the carpet by ..... I cleaned it at once.

- a. incident                      b. event                      c. accident                      d. accent

19.I prefer communicating with my friends using emails or ----- messaging .

- a) instant                      b) constant                      c) custom                      d) instincttion

20. I hope to hear ( of - about - from - with ) you soon.

21-I reduced the essential information into a small mind ( map - app - lap - ape )



22. Parents should have more ----- over their sons and daughters .  
 a) rest                      b) organisation                      c) control                      d) principles
23. During the current crisis of Coronavirus, most international organisations use .....meetings to communicate and share information. They try to avoid infection.  
 a) real                      b) scar                      c) factual                      d) virtual
24. My father said that his teacher was very..... . My father couldn't talk in his lessons!  
 a serious                      b strict                      c fatherly                      d kind
25. Employess will be able to (give-do-have-make ) more decisions at work.
26. .... revenge on those who have insulted you will never give you a sense of peace!  
 a. Letting                      b. Making                      c. Taking                      d. Sitting
27. She is very rich; she has----- a fortune from her late grandfather.  
 a. robbed                      b. inherited                      c. left                      d. done
28. We should find ways of staying in.....with each other. For the time being, I think emails will be fine.  
 a. isolation                      b. separation                      c. touch                      d. catch
29. Please, turn the sound ----- . I can't hear you clearly.  
 a. up                      b. on                      c. off                      d. over
30. Some people have problems while ..... studying, and it might help to get up and move around.  
 a. they're                      b. he's                      c. she's                      d. we're
31. The first ( documented- record- writing- watching) case of shark attack in the waters near Sharm el Shaikh was ten years ago
32. An engineer in the company was arrested for leaking secret ( conferences -copy- inversion- documents) about the company projects.
33. The minister's assistant serves as the ( link-communication-transport- transplant) to the media.
34. Can you think of a ----- to the problem of noise in our city?  
 a. link                      b. solution                      c. fact                      d. result
35. My teacher has given us some study -----so we can improve our achievement.  
 a. tops                      b. tapes                      c. tips                      d. types
36. Students should ( do -make- mind- avoid ) a summary of important points in each unit to help them improve their levels.
37. Students should( concentrate – depend- count- keen ) on reading the questions to able to get high marks.
38. I'll e-mail my report to you as an (attachment – amendment – adjustment – appointment).
39. Early black and white photos show people in ( fashion-old fashioned-fashionable-fission) clothes
40. The government ( maids-forces-supports-wandered ) a lot of charities to be able help a great number of the poor all over Egypt.
41. My sister loves clothes and buys very ( fashion-old fashioned-fashionable-fission) dresses.
42. Using a typewriter is ( modern -ancient -old-fashioned -poetic ). Now we use computers.
43. I have problems with my tablet so the ( IT support-manual- gardener-mechanic ) worker comes to help me.
44. We all were ( pleased -shocked -surprised \_persuaded) when we knew about the death of my uncle suddenly in an accident.
45. Whatever problems you have, you should try and try and don't ( take- give -send- dismiss ) up hope.

46- Parents should direct their children and give some ( advice -devises -tips -tips)that help them overcome the difficulties of life..

47. I am completely ----- that buying this bag is a good decision.

a. agreed                      b. disagreed                      c. convinced                      d. forced

48. Have you ----- the software of the new application? -Yes, it is very useful.

a. instilled                      b. agreed                      c. installed                      d. canceled

49. If you want to study for a maths exam,----a list of the topics you need to know.

a. do                      b. make                      c. appear                      d. cancel

50. I can't----on hard work for more than five hours;I'm afraid of making mistakes.

a. persist                      b. suggest                      c. concentrate                      d. penetrate

51. After I finish answering all the questions, I usually-----a quick revision.

a. do                      b. make                      c. sit                      d. fit

52. I need to ----- a new antivirus from a trusted website.

a. upload                      b. download                      c. load                      d. overload

53. I intend to ----- the faculty of engineering after I finish secondary school.

a. leave                      b. go                      c. join                      d. enroll

54. My friend's health has ----- since he started smoking.

a. decided                      b. improved                      c. increased                      d. declined

55. I got a plumber to----- the new washing machine.

a. instill                      b. install                      c. join                      d. communicate

56. A lot of people still believe----- magic!

a. in                      b. with                      c. of                      d. at

57. If you can't download the new application, ----- your internet connection.

a. check                      b. shake                      c. cancel                      d. agree

58. You must ----- repeating these silly mistakes or you will get low marks.

a. arrange                      b. deny                      c. avoid                      d. enjoy

59- ..... important details in different colours helped me a lot remember them

a) Lighting                      b) Highlighting                      c) Omitting                      d) Drawing

60-( In - At - On - Of ) the end of each line , you write a different part of the topic.

61-Studying with all this noise around you will ----- you. Look for a quieter place.

a) contract                      b) attract                      c) distract                      d) distinguish

62- Teachers must create new techniques and use them .....to explain their lessons..

A efficiently                      B effectively                      C slowly                      D quickly

63. Some teachers use flash .....to present the new words to students at school.

a. carts                      b. cards                      c. cats                      d. canteens

64.The ----- should respond to the manager's questions accurately.

a) interview                      b) interviewer                      c) interviewee                      d) view

65-Everyone has problems while ----- are studying sometimes.

a) he                      b) she                      c) they                      d) it

66.The two countries ( share- divide- install -owns) a long border.

67.Painters ( create- creator- creation-created) the colour orange by mixing yellow and red.

68. The ( trainee- trainer- interviewee- interviewer) is the person who asks to get the best applicants for a job.

69. The ( trainee- trainer- interviewee- interviewer) is the person who is asked in an interview.

70- Mind ----- is a creative way of bringing information about a topic in one place.

a) letter                      b) book                      c) map                      d) diary

71. Ali was feeling lonely, so I suggested that he ( adopted- adapted- have-looked for ) a cat.
72. The manager asked the ( secret- clerk-employer- interviewer ) to type the letter on the computer.
73. Manar came in last in the race, so she's feeling quite ( bad- grumpy- happy- pleased )
74. Ola and her ( fiancée-fiance- mother- aunt ), Adam, plan to have a wedding reception in June.
- 75 Maged ( took- gave- met- sent ) revenge on me to dive into the pool with my clothes on.
- 76 .The Smiths are now very rich thanks to their grandfather's (heritage- inheritance-fiance- wealthy )
78. I offered Mr and Mrs Khamis ( lodgings- fiats-sleepers-hotel ) while they were in Damietta.
79. The teacher asked the students to ( help- share-go- make ) their answers with the rest of the class.
80. The family was asked to forgive the thieves for stealing their food, rather than (dear- dear-afraid- occupy ) them.
81. Rasha got (engaged- busy- studied- succeeded ) yesterday . She was very happy.
82. The students couldn't hear the ( lectuerer- spoken- carer-corrector ) as the microphone wasn't ( contacted- communicated-pluged-applied ) in.
83. Your ( respond- response-solutions-questionnaire ) to your parents' questions should be polite.
84. If anyone did a service for you, you should be ( frightened- grateful- technical- eventual ) to you.
85. Ali was offered a job as an accounts( employer- clerk-widower-fiancee) in a big mall.
- 86.The young boy wants to take ( minds- revenge- reward-praise ) on his father's killers.
- 87.My daughter was ( married- engaged- divorced- fed) last week. Her fiancé is a doctor.
88. My father was ( afraid- frightening-grumpy-burnt ) as my brother stayed up to a late hour.
89. Ali is a coward and he doesn't ( deer- dear- dare-due) attack people who criticize him.
- 90.My cousin Huda is a doctor, her ( husbands- fiancé- finance-widow) is an engineer.



# Grammar

## Phrasal verbs

**الأفعال الطرفية تتكون من فعل و حرف جر أو أكثر وتتغير معناها عن معني الفعل الأصلي وتكون معني جديد**

انواع الافعال الطرفية:

١- أفعال طرفية تأتي الاسم بين الفعل و حرف الجر

I asked her to **turn** her sound **up** - They decided to **throw** the pearl **into** the sea.

- Ali asked his secretary to **pick** his son **up** from school .

|                |      |                  |          |                |       |
|----------------|------|------------------|----------|----------------|-------|
| Turn ----- up  | يرفع | Throw ----- into | يرمي في  | Pick ---- up   | يصطحب |
| Turn -----down | يخفض | Throw ----- away | يتخلص من | Tell ----- off | يوبخ  |

**أفعال طرفية تأتي المفعول قبل أو بعد حرف الجر إذا كان اسم ولكن الضمير بوضع قبل حرف الجر**

- **Turn off the gas** = **Turn the gas off** = **Turn it off**
- **Put off the meeting** = **Put the meeting off.**
- **Put away his books** = **Put his books away** = **Put them away**
- **Take off your shoes** = **Take your shoes off.**

**Examples:**

|                   |           |          |              |          |      |          |         |
|-------------------|-----------|----------|--------------|----------|------|----------|---------|
| Turn on           | يفتح جهاز | Put out  | يطفيء        | Take off | يخلع | get over | يشفي من |
| switch on         | يفتح جهاز | Put away | يضع في مكانه | Let down | يخذل | put off  | يؤجل    |
| Turn / switch off | يطفيء     | Use up   | يستهلك       | Make up  | يخلق | Put on   | يرتدي   |

**أفعال طرفية تأتي الاسم قبل أفعال طرفية تأتي بعدها أداة طرفية وحرف جر**

|                 |           |                |                     |               |             |
|-----------------|-----------|----------------|---------------------|---------------|-------------|
| Look forward to | يتطلع الي | Keep out of    | يبعد عن             | Run out of    | يستنفذ      |
| Look out of     | ينظر من   | Keep away from | يتغيب من / يبتعد عن | Catch up with | يوصل م يلحق |
| Look up to      | يحترم     | Turn out to    | يتضح ان             | Fall out with | يتخاصم مع   |
| Look down upon  | يحتقر     | Cope up with   | يوافق               | Put up with   | يتحمل       |

- We look forward to the holiday .
- I can't put up with boring people.
- He turned out to be a thief
- We look up to our parents.

**وتنقسم الي أفعال متعدية وأفعال غير متعدية كالآتي :**  
**أفعال طرفية لا تأتي بعدها مفعول**

|            |               |           |       |          |             |           |        |
|------------|---------------|-----------|-------|----------|-------------|-----------|--------|
| break down | ينهار / يتعطل | hurry up  | يسرع  | come out | تظهر / تنشر | run out   | ينفذ   |
| Take off   | تقلع          | turn up   | يصل   | grow up  | يكبر        | run away  | يهرب   |
| go on      | يستم / يحدث   | pull up   | يتوقف | cheer up | يتبهج       | get up    | يستيقظ |
| Look out   | أحترس         | Watch out | أحترس | wear out | يتهاك       | break out | تنشرب  |

**Examples**

- The bus broke down
- The bus broke down
- My shoes wore out
- The plane takes off on time .
- The bus broke down
- War broke out in 1939.

**أفعال طرفية تأتي بعد حرف الجر مفعول ثابت سواء كان اسم أو ضمير**

|            |          |           |          |            |             |           |               |
|------------|----------|-----------|----------|------------|-------------|-----------|---------------|
| Look for   | يبحث عن  | laugh at  | يسخر من  | search for | يبحث عن     | run into  | يقابل بالصدفة |
| Look after | يعتني بـ | Wait for  | ينتظر    | catch up   | يوصل / يلحق | Fall over | تسقط          |
| Look into  | يفحص     | Apply for | يتقدم لـ | fall off   | يقع         | Laugh at  | يسخر من       |
| Get on     | يركب     | Get off   | ينزل     | Take to    | يدمن        | Take up   | يشغل حيز      |

**Examples**

- I looked for my bag but in vain.
- I will get on the plane soon.
- She will apply for the job of a secretary.
- Wait for me here , please.

## منقوله من مذكره مستر هشام

|                   |                |                |                      |                  |                |
|-------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------------|------------------|----------------|
| turn / switch on  | يفتح           | take in        | يتمص / يخدع / يفهم   | end up + ing     | ينتهي به الحال |
| turn / switch off | يطفيء          | take in        | يأوي / يضيق ملابس    | come up with     | يأتي بفكرة     |
| turn up           | يعلي / يصل     | take apart     | يفكك                 | come out         | تظهر / تصدر    |
| turn down         | يخفض           | take off       | تقلع / يخلع          | come across      | يقابل بالصدفة  |
| turn out to be    | يتضح ان        | take on        | يوظف / يتحمل مسئولية | come around      | يزور           |
| catch up with     | يلحق بـ        | take up        | يشغل حيز             | clear up         | يرتب / يفسر    |
| cope up with      | يساير          | take down      | يزيل                 | let down         | يخذل           |
| look for          | يبحث عن        | take to        | يدمن / يحب بشدة      | let out          | يوسع ملابس     |
| look up           | يبحث في معجم   | take over      | يتولي مسئولية        | make up          | يختلق / يكون   |
| look out          | احترس          | take after     | يشبه                 | make up          | تتبرج / تتمكيج |
| look after        | يعتني بـ       | get over       | يشفي من              | make out         | يري بصعوبة     |
| look forward to   | يتطلع الي      | keep up with   | يبقي علي تواصل       | make up his mind | يقرر           |
| look up to        | يحترم          | keep up        | يواصل بذل الجهد      | find out about   | يكشف عن        |
| look down upon    | يحتقر          | keep on        | يستمر في             | carry out        | ينفذ           |
| look into         | يفحص / يفكر    | keep away from | يبتعد                | carry on         | يستمر / يواصل  |
| laugh at          | يسخر من        | keep out of    | يبتعد عن             | see off          | يودع           |
| grow up           | يكبر / ينضج    | break down     | يكسر / يحطم          | Knock on / at    | يطرق علي الباب |
| put away          | يضع في مكانه   | break down     | تتعطل / ينهار        | Knock out        | يهزم           |
| Put on weight     | يزيد وزن       | break out      | تنشب / تندلع         | work on          | يعمل في مشروع  |
| Put on            | يرتدي / يخدم   | break into     | يقتحم                | work out         | يحسب / يفهم    |
| Put off           | يؤجل           | break in       | اقتحام               | work against     | يعمل ضد        |
| Put forward       | يرشح           | go off         | تنفجر / يرن          | work up          | يكافح / يناضل  |
| Put up with       | يتحمل          | go up          | يصعد / يقترب         | work for         | يعمل لدي مؤسسة |
| Put out           | يطفيء          | go on          | تحدث - يستمر         | Work in          | يعمل في صالح   |
| fill in / out     | يملأ استمارة   | go out         | تنطفي                | give away        | يهب            |
| point to          | يشير بأدب      | set up         | يؤسس                 | give in          | يستسلم         |
| point at          | يشير بوقاحة    | set off / out  | يبدأ رحلة            | give up          | يقلع / يستسلم  |
| point out         | يبين           | fall off       | يقع من               | give off         | يطلق غاز       |
| use up            | يستهلك         | fall over      | تسقط                 | Get to           | بصل الي        |
| cut down          | يقطع / يرشد    | fall out with  | يخاصم                | Get up           | يستيقظ         |
| cut off           | يقطع من الجذور | throw away     | يتخلص من             | Get on with      | ينسجم مع       |
| cut out           | يقطع بانتظام   | throw into     | يرمي في              | Get in           | يدخل بصعوبة    |
| cheer up          | يبتهج          | run out of     | يستنفذ               | get over         | يشفي من        |
| blow up           | تنفجر          | run into       | يقابل بالصدفة        | Get through      | يجتاز          |



|          |          |          |      |         |      |
|----------|----------|----------|------|---------|------|
| blow out | يطفيء    | run over | يدهس | Get on  | يركب |
| Lie to   | يكذب علي | run away | يهرب | Get off | ينزل |

**اولا الاسئلة الموضوعيه التاليه ( كل سؤال بدرجه )**

**1. Choose the correct words :**

1. Ali switched the computer ( in-on-off-up ) after using it.
2. The grandfather wanted to give ( out- in- at- by ) his wealth to his sons before his death.
3. Nurses look ( in- up- after- for ) patients in hospitals.
4. My son looks forward ( on-out- to-with ) success with high marks.
5. My friend Huda put ( in- up- on- for ) a lot of weight. She has become too fat.
6. The thief lied ( to- on- after- for ) the police about where he was when the accident happened.
7. The lawyer gave (in- up- on- for ) his hope to win the case as his client admitted stealing the mobile.
8. The troops of Israel gave (out- in- at- by ) when our brave army surrounded them in Sinai.
- 9-They put their walking boots on and set ( up - of - off - in ) early in the morning.
10. She was accused ( by - off - with - of ) violation the copyright.
11. Her life goal was to research ways ( to - for - of - in ) make medical treatment
12. What impact do you think these women have had ( in - of -at - on ) Egyptian society ?
13. She always argues ( to - with - about - on ) her brothers and sister.
- 14-The government does its best to care ( by - with - about - of ) medical care.
- 15-Some young people are interested in finding out ( in- on- about-at ) the world they live in.
- 16-Astronmers are constantly searching ( about-for- with- on ) planets which may support human life.
- 17- Most of the students depend ( in - on - about - of ) the internet to do research .
- 18-The internet helps me to keep ( in - on - of - at ) touch with my relatives abroad.
- 19- If you are in danger of suffering ( of- from-with-about) burnout , you will experience a lot of stress .
- 20-Is there anything you are worrying ( about - of - with - to ) which stops you from sleeping
- 21- Why don't you concentrate ( on - in -of - about ) your lessons?
- 22- Have you ever thought ( in - off - with - about ) studying in the early morning?
23. The government is going to ( stay up - sit up - set up -make up) a new hospital in our area .
- 24-The police are looking ( on - into - to - up ) the disappearance of two children
- 25- I have missed some lessons and I need to (reach up -catch up -use up- hold up) up with my classmates
- 26- Turn your cameras ( in - off - on of ) so that you can see everyone.
- 27- All the prayers are kindly requested to turn their mobiles ( in - on - off - of ) in the mosque
- 28- We are going to look ( after-into-up-down ) other ways of sharing documents online.
- 31-At least, I have 2 days to (keep up-turn up- pick-catch up ) with the school work I missed.
- 32-I can't hear what's on clearly. Please, turn the sound ( on - down - up - off )
- 33- We told her the sound was too loud so she turned it ( on - down - of - up )
34. If you have problems , don't get stressed or give ( out - away - up - off )
- 35- You should pay for our goods ( in - on - of - from ) advance .
36. I hope to hear ( of - about - from - with ) you soon.
- 37-There is a vacant job in our company. Why don't you apply ( to - with - on - for ) it ?
- 38- When will you turn ( of - off - up - on ) the light. It bothers me and I want to sleep.
- 39- Ahmed , Take off your shoes . This means that I ordered Ahmed to take -----  
a) take off them                      b) take them off                      c) take it off                      d) take off it
- 40- I couldn't find my mobile at home. I looked ( after-for-before-forward ) it everywhere but in vain.

- 41- When does the plane take ( in - of - off - away )  
 42- Please , could you pick the children ( off - of - in - of ) from their school?  
 43-We look forward ( with - to - of - in ) the concert by Amr Diab .  
 44- Your health is going to deteriorate . You must give ( up-off-in-away ) smoking.  
 45- My sister was washing up and went (on-in-at-with ) tidying her room.  
 46. Zamalik played very hard and could get ( on-over- through-at ) El Ahly and won the tournament.  
 47. Zamalik played very hard and could get ( on-over- through-at ) the finals.  
 48.He's coming up ( on- to - with- about ) god ideas.  
 49. The meeting was put (on- to - with- off ) as the manager was ill.  
 50. the teacher sent me (on- of - away- about ) as I was lazy.  
 51. We hope that the prices will come (with - down - up - in ) after the government takes some economic decisions.  
 52. We should bring (with - down - of - up ) our children to be good citizens.  
 53. The doctor advised my father to give ( in- on- up- down ) smoking.  
 54. My brother was ill and wanted to make up (for- off- in- down ) the lessons he missed.  
 55. The patient got ( on- down- over- about ) his illness but needed some rest.  
 56. The dentist took ( in - of - off - away ) three of my teeth as they decayed.  
 57. The boy takes ( of - about - from - after ) his sister although they are nt twins.  
 58. I want to set ( on-up- through-at ) a new WORD programme to be able to type well.  
 59 . The new chairman will take ( on - down - over - off ) next week after the current one retires.  
 60.Ali is good at making ( on- to - with- up ) stories . All of his friends like them  
 61. When I go back home, I took ( on- of -off- down ) my shoes ut of the house.  
 63.My mother asked me to put ( on-away- through-at ) the shopping in the kitchen.  
 64. If yu don't know the meaning of a word , look it ((on- up - with- off )  
 65 The ship set ( in - of - off - away ) the port at 5 PM.  
 66. The operator put me ( on- through -off- down ) the manger . He was in the office.  
 67. I got up late and put ( on- to - with- up ) my clothes quickly.  
 68. The rich should give (with - down - out - up ) some money to the poor.  
 69.he manager put ( on- through -off- forward ) the meeting to give the members a chance to study the reports and they agreed.  
 70.he firefighters could put (with - down - out - up ) the firein a short time . They are efficient.  
 72. Don't give ( over- up-at- of ) on your dreams. One day you will achieve them.  
 73. I didn't go out since I had to spend the weekend catching ( for-up with-up-with)the lessons I had missed.  
 74. I am going to pick my uncle up from the airport. This means that I'm going to ----  
 A. say goodbye to my uncle at the airport.  
 B. take my uncle from home to the airport and see him off  
 C. meet my uncle at the airport and take him to another place  
 D. go to the airport and travel with my uncle.  
 75. The sound was terribly loud, so I asked her to turn it ( down-up-on-out ) .  
 76. Which mobile phone have you decided ( up-to-on-at ) Sir?

## **Grammar**

### **VERBS + (TO + INF.) OR (V.ING)**

#### **1- Verbs followed by (v.+ ing)**

- بعض الأفعال يأتي بعدها دائماً (v.ing)

**enjoy**  
**mind**  
**finish**

**يستمتع**  
**يُمانع**  
**ينهي**

**miss**  
**prevent**  
**practise**

**يفتقد**  
**يمنع**  
**يمارس**

**deny**  
**Admit=confess**  
**imagine**

**يُنكر**  
**يعترف بـ**  
**يتخيل /**

come

يأتي

give up

يقلع

fancy

يتصور  
يتخيل /

go

يذهب

put off

يؤجل

can't stand

لا يطيق

Suggest=propose

يقترح

delay

يؤجل

avoid

يتجنب

consider

يفكر

detest

يشمئز

resist

يقاوم

Can't stand

لا يتحمل

regret

يندم

postpone

يؤجل

involve

يشتمل

include

يتضمن

risk

يجازف

keep

يحافظ

hate

يكره

recommend

يوصي ب

spend

يقضي

quit

يتوقف عن

appreciate

يقدر

reject

ينبذ

anticipate

يتوقع

adore

يعشق

### Examples:

-They enjoyed watching TV

-He kept working for long hours.

- She risks climbing mounts.

-Tom suggested / recommends going to the cinema

- You should avoid going out at night.

- I don't mind helping you.

- Have you finished reading the newspaper yet?

- I suggest taking some time off.

- I need to practise speaking English more often. - I can't stand listening to this loud music.

## 2- Verbs followed by (to + inf.)

- بعض الأفعال يأتي بعدها دائما (مصدر + to)

agree

يوافق

threaten

يهدد

manage

يتمكن

arrange

يرتب

want

يريد

deserve

يستحق

decide

يقرر

learn

يتعلم

demand

يطلب

expect

يتوقع

offer

يعرض

refuse

يرفض

hope

يأمل

plan

يخطط

intend

ينوي

would like/  
love

يود - يرغب

promise

يعِد

seem

يبدو

'd prefer

يفضل

dare ( to )

يجرؤ

afford

يتحمل

Fail

يفشل

tend

يتولى امر

attempt

يحاول

pretend

يتظاهر

appear

يظهر

Wish

يتمنى

### Examples:

- We hope to hear from you soon.

- My friend offered to lend me what I want.

- I'd like to travel to France someday.

- He promised to call me back as soon as possible.

- I need to go to the supermarket to buy some bread.

- We're planning to have a big party on my daughter's marriage.

- He promised not to come late again.

-They decided not to go out .

في النفي نضع ( not ) قبل ( to )

## 3- Verbs + object + (to + inf.)

- بعض الأفعال يأتي بعدها دائما (مصدر + to + مفعول)

expect

يتوقع

cause

يجعل

persuade

يُقنع

want

يريد

tell

يُخبر

warn

يُحذر

order

يطلب

promise

يعد

inform

يُخبر / يُبلغ

ask

يسأل / يطلب

train

يُدرب

force

يُجبر

invite

يدعو

enable

يُمكن

motivate

يحفز

### Examples:

- My teacher advised us to study harder. - He didn't allow us enough time to finish the test.

- Do you think Dad will allow you to go to Amal's party?

- They invited us to have lunch with them.

- The bad weather **forced people to stay** at home all day.
- I **persuaded her to start** a new website.

- بعض من الأفعال في هذه المجموعة يأتي بعدها (مصدر + to) بدون مفعول بدون تغيير في المعنى

- She **promised her father to do** her best. = She **promised to do** her best.

- أحيانا يؤثر حذف المفعول على المعنى عندما لا يوجد مفعول

- We **expect Sara to** arrive early. (Sara will arrive early)
- We **expect to arrive** early. (We will arrive early)

- بعض من الأفعال في هذه المجموعة يأتي بعدها (مصدر + how to + مفعول)

- Ali **showed us how to reach** the station.
- We **teach students (how) to read and write**.

- عند بناء الجملة للمجهول يأتي بعد هذه الأفعال (مصدر + to)

- The bad weather **forced people to stay** at home all day. (Active)
- **People were forced to stay** at home all day by the bad weather. (Passive)

- الأفعال (let / make) يأتي بعدهما (مصدر + مفعول)

- She **wanted to go** home, but her boss **made her stay** until the work was finished.
- My boss **let me have** the afternoon off to go to my sister's wedding.

- عند بناء الفعل (make) للمجهول يأتي بعده (مصدر + to)

- She **wanted to go** home, but She **was made to stay** until the work was finished.

- الفعل (help) يأتي بعده (مصدر + مفعول) أو (مصدر + to + مفعول)

- He can **help me understand** this lesson. = - He can **help me (to) understand** this lesson.

#### 4- Verbs followed by (v.+ ing) / (مصدر + to + مفعول)

- بعض الأفعال يأتي بعدها (v.ing) أو (مصدر + to + مفعول)

|        |             |           |         |
|--------|-------------|-----------|---------|
| advise | يُنصَح      | encourage | يُشجِع  |
| allow  | يسمح / يأذن | recommend | يوصى بـ |
| permit | يسمح / يأذن | forbid    | يمنع    |

Examples:

- They **advise walking** to town. - They **advise her to walk** to town.
- They **do not allow smoking** here. - They **do not allow us to smoke** here.
- They **encourage doing** the test. - They **encourage Ali to do** the test.
- They **do not permit smoking** here. - They **do not permit me to smoke**

#### 5- Verbs followed by (v.+ ing) / (مصدر + to) with no change in meaning

- بعض الأفعال يأتي بعدها (v.ing) أو (مصدر + to) بدون اختلاف تقريباً من حيث

المعنى

|               |      |          |       |
|---------------|------|----------|-------|
| start / begin | يبدأ | prefer   | يفضل  |
| like          | يحب  | hate     | يكره  |
| love          | يحب  | continue | يستمر |

Examples:

- We **like to watch / watching** tennis.
- The baby **started to cry**. = - The baby **started crying**.
- Do you **hate working** on Saturdays? = - Do you **hate to work** on Saturdays?

#### 6- Verbs followed by (v.+ ing) / (مصدر + to) with a change in meaning

- بعض الأفعال يأتي بعدها (v.ing) أو (مصدر + to) مع وجود اختلاف كبير من حيث

المعنى

- 1- stop + (to + inf.) يتوقف لكي يفعل شيء ما
- I **stopped to buy** a newspaper. : - I **stopped in order to buy** a newspaper.)
- stop + (v. + ing) يتوقف عن فعل شيء

- I **stopped buying** a newspaper. : - I no longer buy one.)

## 2- remember + (to + inf.)

يتذكر ما ينبغي عليه أن يفعله

- He **remembered to see** the man. : - He remembered and then saw the man.  
- remember + (v. + ing) يتذكر ما فعله في الماضي

- He **remembered seeing** the man. : - He saw the man and later remembered.

## 3- forget + (to + inf.)

ينسى أن يفعل شيء ما (أي لم يفعل الشيء)

- He **forgot to lock** the door. : - He didn't lock it.

- forget + (v. + ing)

ينسى أنه قد فعل شيء ما

- He **forgot locking** the door. : - He locked it but couldn't remember.

## 4- try + (to + inf.)

يُحاول (يبدّل مجهود لكي يفعل شيء ما)

- I **tried to see** over the fence by standing on tiptoe.

- try + (v. + ing)

يُجرب ليري ما سيحدث

- A: This coffee is too hot. B: **Try putting** some ice in it.

## 5- regret + (to + inf.)

يأسف أنه مضطر أن يفعل شيء ما

- We **regret to say** that we cannot help you at the moment.

- regret + (v. + ing)

يندم على شيء فعله في الماضي

- I **regret quitting** my job. It was a stupid thing to do.

## 6- need + v+ ing = need +to + be+ p.p ) (Passive )

My car needs ( repairing =to be repaired )

## 7- need + to+ infinitive = need +noun ( active )

I need a car =to buy a car

## \* ملحوظات هامة:

١- يمكن أن نستخدم (مصدر + to ) للتعبير عن الغرض

- I study hard **to get** good marks. - She is driving quickly **to arrive** on time.

- هنا ( to = in order to = so as to ) بمعنى (لكي)

- He completed all his homework **to get a good grade.**

٢- هناك تعبيرات يأتي بعدها (v.ing)

|                     |                    |                                                               |
|---------------------|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| It's no good        | لا فائدة من        | - It <b>is no good telling</b> him - he won't listen.         |
| It's no use         | لا فائدة من        | - It's <b>no use worrying</b> about your exams.               |
| feel like           | يرغب في            | - I <b>feel like going</b> to the beach.                      |
| can't help          | لا يمكنه التوقف عن | - She <b>couldn't help falling</b> in love with him..         |
| can't stand         | لا يطيق            | - I <b>can't stand listening</b> to this loud music.          |
| spend his time      | يقضي وقته          | - He always <b>spends his time studying</b> hard.             |
| waste his time      | يضيع وقته          | - She always <b>wastes her time playing</b> chess.            |
| There's no point in | لا داعي لـ         | - There's <b>no point in buying</b> a car if you can't drive. |
| be busy             | مشغول في           | - She was <b>too busy doing</b> her homework.                 |

It's worth  
What about= how about  
It's fun  
I've difficulty in

## ٣- حروف الجر تتبع دائما بـ(اسم / ضمير / v.ing )

|                           |              |                          |           |
|---------------------------|--------------|--------------------------|-----------|
| accuse ..sb. .. of        | يتهم بـ      | prevent ..sb. .. from    | يمنع من   |
| charge ..sb. .. with      | يتهم بـ      | protect ..from / against | يحمي من   |
| apologize to ..sb. .. for | يعتذر عن شيء | rely on = depend on      | يعتمد على |
| blame ..sb. .. for        | يلوم علي     | search for               | يبحث عن   |
| complain about            | يشكو من      | succeed in               | ينجح في   |
| concentrate on            | يركز علي     | talk about               | يتحدث عن  |



do without

hear about / of

يستغني عن

tell ..sb. .. about

يسمع عن

warn ..sb. .. about

يخبر شخص عن

يحذر من

- They **accused me of stealing** their money. - I must **apologize to him for arriving late**.
- She always **complains about** my delay.

٤- يمكن أن نستخدم (to) كحرف جر و يأتي بعده (اسم / ضمير / v.ing) مع التعبيرات

الآتية

look forward to

be used to

be accustomed to

take to

contribute to

in addition to

( be ) exposed to

Opposed to

يتطلع إلى

معتاد علي

معتاد علي

يولع بـ - يتحمس لـ

object to

devote... to

be committed to

due to=owing to

adjust to

lead to

confess to

own up to

يعترض علي

يكرس لـ

ملتزم بـ

بسبب

- I **look forward to spending** the holidays in Sharm. - I **am used to waiting** for buses.
- My mother **devoted her life to helping** the boys. - She **didn't take to studying** English.

٥- نستخدم (مصدر + to) بعد الصفات الدالة علي المشاعر التالية

**disappointed , glad , happy , pleased , relieved , sad , surprised**

- I was **happy to help** them.
- She **will be delighted to see** you.

٦- نستخدم (مصدر + to) مع الجمل التي تبدأ بـ (صفة + It's)

- It was **difficult to complete** the rough draft.
- She thought it was **impossible to remember** all the rules.

٧- (مصدر + to) في المجهول تصبح (to be + pp.)

- He **hopes to be treated** well at school.

٨- (v.ing) في المجهول تصبح (being + pp.)

- I **remember being carried to** hospital after the accident.

٩- الأفعال التالية الدالة علي الإدراك يأتي بعدها (v.ing) عندما ندرك جزء من الحدث

hear

see

يسمع

يرى

notice

watch

يلاحظ

يشاهد

- I **heard Huda sing** a song. (This means that I heard the whole song.)

١٠- و يأتي بعد هذه الأفعال (مصدر) عندما ندرك كل الحدث

- I **heard Huda singing** a song. (This means that I heard part of the song.)

١١- أفعال تتبع ب المصدر بدون ( )

Let - make -dare - help

1- Ali **let me use** his car.

2- He can't **dare take** my things.

## EXERCISES ON GRAMMAR

Choose the right answers

(جمل سهله لتثبيت القاعده بسرعه)

- 1-I like (do - done - does - doing) exercise every day.
- 2-I hate (to get - gets - got - to getting) water in my eyes.
- 3-They are going home as soon as they have finished (to work - works - working - worked).
- 4-They hope (to get - getting - of getting - get) a job they enjoy doing.
- 5-I learnt (swim - to swim - swam - to swimming) when I was three years old.
- 6-He dislikes (sleeps - slept - to sleeping - sleeping) during the day.
- 7-The children enjoyed (to play - with playing - playing - played) in the sea.
- 8-He admitted (to borrow - borrow - borrowed - borrowing) my pen without asking me.
- 9-The driver of the car (avoided - planned - offered - hoped) hitting the motorbike.
- 10-I've tried (read - with reading - to read - reads) that book, but I don't understand it.
- 11-Do you want (coming - came - comes - to come) to my party.
- 12-What do you (avoid - plan - finish - practise) to do in the summer?

- 13-She offered (**helping - help - to help - helped**) her mother prepare lunch.  
 14-Ali has decided (**studying - studied - of studying - to study**) science at university.  
 15-The boys have arranged (**to play - playing - play - plays**) football after school.  
 16-My friend suggested ( **went - go - going - to go** ) for a picnic on the beach.  
 17.Leila promised ( **to phone - phoning - to phoning -phoned** ) her mother .  
 18.She loves ( **cooked - to cook - be cooked - cook** ) for her family.  
 19.Do you expect ( **to finish - finishing - finished- finish** ) your work early today?  
 20.Musicians practise ( **to play - playing - played- play**) their instruments for many hours a day

### Choose the right answers

اولا الاسئلة الموضوعية التالية ( كل سؤال بدرجة )

1. I look forward .....a doctor next week.  
 a) be                                      b) to being                                      c) been                                      d) being
- 2.When studying you should remember----- a break every twenty-five minutes.  
 a) to take                                      b) taking                                      c) to take                                      d) took
3. Suddenly everyone stopped ..... There was silence.  
 a) talk                                      b) talking                                      c) to talk                                      d) talked
- 4.You should practise ..... English all the time.  
 a) speak                                      b) to speak                                      c) speaks                                      d) speaking
- 5.When he told us the story, we just couldn't stop .....  
 a) laugh                                      b) to laugh                                      c) laughing                                      d) laughed
- 6.Tamer and I agreed ..... seven pounds each.  
 a) paying                                      b) pay                                      c) to pay                                      d) was paying
- 7.Selim is so funny. He stopped .....television because he said it was rotting his brain.  
 a) to watch                                      b) is watching                                      c) watch                                      d) watching
- 8.Kareem finished ..... his dinner at 6.30.  
 a) to have eaten                                      b) to eat                                      c) eating                                      d) eaten
- 9.Amina admitted not ..... how to open the door.  
 a) to be known                                      b) knowing                                      c) to know                                      d) known
- 10.Hany and his sister practise ..... tennis every day after school.  
 a) playing                                      b) to play                                      c) played                                      d) play
- 11.I regret ..... you that Nabil will not be joining the team. I know you wanted him with us.  
 a) telling                                      b) to tell                                      c) have told                                      d) am telling
- 12.Nehad regrets ..... her mother on her birthday. She should have done it.  
 a) not phone                                      b) not phoned                                      c) not phoning                                      d) not to phone
- 13.If I were you, I'd avoid ..... into the city during the festival.  
 a) travels                                      b) to travel                                      c) travelling                                      d) of traveling
- 14.Before you go to London, you should practise ..... English.  
 a) speak                                      b) speaking                                      c) to speaking                                      d) speaks
- 15.I suggest..... to the Sham El-Nessim festival in Egypt next year.  
 a) to go                                      b) to going                                      c- go                                      d) going
- 16.I suggest that he ..... to the Sham El-Nessim festival in Egypt next year.  
 a) to go                                      b) to going                                      c) go                                      d) going
- 17.Mr El Sebaei is looking forward to ..... a new job next year.  
 a) starting                                      b) starting                                      c) starts                                      d) started
- 18.On their way to Luxor, the tourists stopped ..... some photos of an ancient temple.  
 a) to take                                      b) take                                      c) taking                                      d) to taking
- 19.Do you regret not ..... the museum when you were in Cairo?  
 a) to visit                                      b) visited                                      c) visit                                      d) visiting
- 20.Munir was a soldier so he is used to ... a lot of time outdoors.  
 a) spend                                      b) spends                                      c) spending                                      d) spent
21. I started .....for the bank twenty years ago .  
 a) work                                      b) worked                                      c) working                                      d) to working
22. When I was a child, I used to imagine..... a pilot

a) becoming      b) to become      c) becomes      d) become

23. John mailed the letter and remembered .....it later.

a) mailing      b) to mail      c) to mailing      d) mails

24-I ( deny - dislike - regret - miss ) leaving early yesterday. I wish I had stayed to meet you.

25-I can't stand ( to listen - listen - listening - to listening ) to him.

26-He stopped ( write - to write - written - writing ) and put down his pen.

27-The thief got into the house because I forgot ( closing - closed - to close - to closing ) the window.

28-She couldn't help ( to cry - cries - cry - crying ) aloud the moment she saw the accident.

29-She deserved ( win - winning - to win - won ) the first prize.

30-He began ( to playing - plays - played - playing ) the guitar when the phone rang.

31-My brother is learning (playing - play - plays - to play) the oud.

32-I don't fancy ( watch - watched - watches - watching ) that film. There is a lot of violence in it.

33-He wanted the money ( for pay - to pay - pay - paying ) for his son's education.

34-His parents warned him ( not leaving - not left - not to be left - not to leave ) university without a degree.

35-She's training hard ( won - winning - to win - of winning ) the race.

36-The programme presenter asked Dr. Carter ( talk - talking - to talk - talked ) about Steinbeck's early life.

37-Leila asked Mona whether she could help her (do - to doing - done - to be done) the shopping.

38-I recommend ( to write - writing - written - write ) your feelings down on paper.

39.When the children stopped (singing-to sing-sung-sang), everyone clapped. They liked the song very much.

40.They expect thousands of people (visiting-visited-to visit-visits) Sapporo for the Snow Festival next year.

41.My brother is learning (playing-play-plays-to play) the oud.

42.If I were you, I'd avoid (travelling-to travel-travels-travel) into the city during the festival.

43.My parents suggested (go-to go-goes-going) to the theatre.

44.I really want (going-go-to go-went) to Hong Kong for the Chinese New Year.

45.Before you go to London, you should practise (speak-to speak-spoken-speaking) English.

46.Leila stopped (to listen-listening-listened-to listening) to the radio when she had heard a loud knock on the door.

47.I'll never forget (found-to find-finding-founded) that rare old coin in the garden. I was only 12 then.

48.She was doing exercise, then she stopped (listening-to listen-listened-listen) to the radio.

49.I remember (phoning-to phone-phoned-phones) my cousin in America a month ago. He told me a lot about his stay there.

50.Did you remember (posted-post-to post-posting) my letter? - Oh, I completely forgot.

51.I have always regretted (not having-not to have-have-not have) studied harder at school.

52.The band stopped (to play-playing-play-played) and there was silence.

53.She agreed (write-to write-writing-wrote) an article on classical music.

54.Ali shouldn't risk (to drive-drive-driving-drove) so fast.

55.I hate (to sit-sitting-to sitting-sit) doing nothing - I'd rather be working.

56.Don't forget (locking-lock-locked-to lock) the door when you leave.

58.I (deny-dislike-regret-miss) leaving early yesterday. I wish I had stayed to meet you.

59.Mona promised (she comes-to come-coming-will come) and she usually keeps her promises.

60.I can't stand (to listen-listen-listening-to listening) to him.

61.He stopped (write-to write-written-writing) and put down his pen.

62.I tried (stop-to stop-stopping-stopped) him, but he had already left.

63.The thief got into the house because I forgot (closing-closed-to close-to closing) the window.

64.He regretted (leaving-to leave-left-leaves) his job as he couldn't find another one.

65.She couldn't help (to cry-cries-cry-crying) aloud the moment she saw the accident.

66.She deserved (win-winning-to win-won) the first prize.

67.Do you enjoy (listen-to listen-listening-listened) to music?

68.Walid began (to play-plays-played-playing) the guitar when the phone rang.

69.Walid began (playing-to play-plays-played) the guitar when he was six.

70.Would you mind (to lend-lends-lending-lent) me this CD.

### Choose the right answers

**A.** 1. We told her the sound was too loud so she.....

- a. turned down it                      b. turn it down                      c. turn down it                      d. turned it down

2. Salma decided to ..... jogging as she needed to lose weight urgently.

- a. take up                      b. go against                      c. run into                      d. hand in

3. As the weather is getting worse, they have decided to ..... the tennis match.

- a. take out                      b. put off                      c. make up                      d. hand out

4- I asked the petrol station attendant to ..... the tank with petrol.

- a. fill in                      b. fill up                      c. fall off                      d. fall away

**B.** 1. She was supposed to collect me at 6:00 but she didn't. She really.....

- a. let down me                      b. let me down                      c. put me off                      d. put off me

2. Which of the following sentences is structurally INCORRECT?

- a. Turn off the gas when the milk boils  
b. I'm cold. Turn the heating up.  
c. It is a tradition that the young look the old after.  
d. Do you mind if I switch the radio off?

3. Which of the following sentences is structurally CORRECT?

- a. I looked the number in the phone book up.  
b. Let's look the problem into.  
c. He has given up his job. d. I looked up it in the dictionary.

4. Which of the following sentences is structurally CORRECT?

- a. The contractors will blow the old hotel tomorrow up.  
b. There is nothing worse than calling a wedding off in the last moment.  
c. When my computer breaks over, I can always fix it.  
d. Maggie cared her ill grandmother for.

**C.** 1- I was shocked because I didn't expect him to turn ..... my request.

- a. up                      b. in                      c. into                      d. down

2. My internet connection is too slow. Do I need to getting a better internet connection?

- a. turn on                      b. search on                      c. look into                      d. call out

3- This photo is small; it needs .....

- a. giving up                      b. hanging up                      c. handing in                      d. blowing up

4- Nabil hurt his elbow in yesterday's tennis match and had to .....

- a. pay back                      b. plug in                      c. give in                      d. ask for

**D.** 1. Don't give ..... on your dreams. One day, you will achieve them.

- a. over                      b. up                      c. at                      d. of

2- I have invited all my friends to the party, but only a few of them showed .....

- a. on                      b. off                      c. up                      d. down

3- The phrasal verb 'grow up' meaning to become an adult is a/an ..... phrasal verb.

- a. modal                      b. passive                      c. transitive                      d. intransitive

4- When you want to stop a call for a short time and resume it shortly after, you .....

- a. hang up                      b. switch off                      c. turn off                      d. put away

**E.** 1. I hate ..... what to do.

- a. to tell                      b. to be telling                      c. being told                      d. to telling

2. My sisters are used to ..... from school every day. They don't have to walk home.

- a. being picked up                      b. picking up                      c. be picked up                      d. pick up

3. Samir appears ..... some weight. Has he been ill?

- a. having lost                      b. having been lost                      c. to have lost                      d. to have been lost

4.If I were you, I'd avoid ..... in front of the bullies.

- a. seeing                      b. to see                      c. seen                      d. being seen

F. 1. Ali didn't expect to ..... Salem's birthday party.

- a. inviting                      b. being invited                      c. to invite                      d. to be invited

2. We arranged to meet at ten o'clock last Sunday but John didn't .....on time.

- a. look up                      b. put out                      c. turn up                      d. find out

3. It was a mistake that I didn't .....the contract before signing it.

- a. get up                      b. call out                      c. come by                      d. look through

4- I considered ..... for the job, but in the end I decided against it.

- a. apply                      b. applying                      b.to apply                      d. to applying

### Test five

اولا الاستلھ الموضوعيھ التاليھ ( كل سوال بدرجھ )

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1.- To ..... is to improve and reach the same standard as other people in your class, group etc.

- a. switch ... on                      b. switch ... off                      c. look into                      d. catch up with

2. My mobile stopped responding and the camera went wrong. I need to ----- software.

- a. steal                      b. install                      c. put                      d. build

3. This coach can change his ----- according to the teams he faces. He is creative

- a. coherence                      b. competition                      c. techniques                      d. uniform

4- Double ..... on the browser to go online.

- a. click                      b. record                      c. draw                      d. switch

5- This type of birds .....to build their nests in holes in mountains to be safe.

- a. hate                      b. tend                      c. keen                      d. fond

6- "I have installed the software". "....." can be used instead of 'installed' in this sentence.

- a. sit back                      b. sit down                      c. set off                      d. set up

7- They can't hear you because your microphone is mute. The opposite of mute is.....

- a. talkactive                      b. silent                      c. awake                      d. asleep

8. I avoid (travels - to travel -travelling - of travelling) into the city during the festival.

9. I am going to look these words ( in - up - down - for ) in my dictionary

10 .I really want (going - gone - goes to go) to Hong Kong for the Chinese New Year

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

For centuries, people have tried to conquer nature. They have built tall skyscrapers and bridges over rivers. But not all these efforts are successful. Bridges fall soon, and buildings collapse, even the pyramids in Egypt have problems, and the first few fell down.

People have built skyscrapers for years. It would seem safe to assume that they know how to do it. That is what a large company thought when it built its new headquarters recently. But soon after the steel- and - glass building was finished, the windows began to fall out, crashing all over the streets. One windy night, 65 windows fell into the streets and had to be replaced by plywood الأبلكاش. That's when people started calling the building the 'plywood palace'. This continued for years while a number of different solutions were tried, and lots of excuses were made . Lawyers for the construction company even said that it is normal for windows to fall out of skyscrapers, but that everyone was being unfair to criticize their building alone. Finally, investigators found a mistake in engineering. The building's irregular shape caused it to sway too much in the wind . The problem is solved now, and the windows have stopped falling out. But the building still has one unusual feature. Every day a guard examines it with binoculars to make sure the windows aren't starting to crack again. And what about the insurance company, architects , engineers, and builders? "they're all in court, suing each other".

Answer the following questions:

11. The best title of this passage is.....

- a) unusual palace                      b) headquarters                      c) unusual skyscraper                      d) architects



12 ..... is a building tall enough to seem to touch the clouds

- a) A pyramid                      b) A headquarter                      c) A skyscraper                      d) A bridge

13. The underlined word (**this**) refers to .....

- a) building the "plywood palace"                      b) the name "plywood palace"  
c) criticizing the building  
d) the falling out of windows and replacing them by plywood ones

14. The windows of this building are made of .....

- a) glasses                      b) iron                      c) metal                      d) thin sheets of wood

15. Skyscrapers are usually built in.....

- a) deserts                      b) villages                      c) large cities                      d) ancient Egypt

16) The large buildings started to collapse due to .....

- a) examining them    b) making excuses    c) criticize the building    d) their irregular shape

17. The building got the name '**plywood palace**' because

- a) It was made of plywood                      b) the walls were made of plywood  
c) the doors were made of plywood                      d) the windows are made of plywood

18 What is strange about the "plywood palace' up till now ?

- a)It collapses every day                      b) It is still made of plywood  
c)It is examined by a guard every day                      d) it is in the court

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Coffee, tea and soft drinks usually contain caffeine. Caffeine is also found in chocolate, in medicine for colds and in drugs that keep people awake. In the United States, adults who use products with caffeine get an average of about two hundred eighty milligrams a day. This equals the caffeine in about two large cups of coffee. A report this month in the Journal of the American Dietetic Association says adults drink nearly half of the coffee they did fifty years ago. But they still get most of their caffeine from coffee. In general, the more people drink, the more severe the effects if they miss a day. Yet a recent report says people who drink as little as one cup of coffee a day can become dependent on caffeine. In fact, it says caffeine withdrawal should be listed as a mental disorder. Researchers identified several common effects, such as headaches and sleepiness. Some people have difficulty thinking. Others get angry easily or become very sad. The researchers found that half the people suffered headaches if **they** did love caffeine. Thirteen percent had a more serious problem. They were unable to work or do other normal activities. These problems generally resulted twelve to twenty-four hours after stopping caffeine. Ronald Griffiths of Johns Hopkins University in Baltimore, Maryland, led the study. He noted that caffeine is the most commonly used stimulant in the world. A stimulant produces a temporary increase in energy. The good news is that people can free themselves of caffeine dependence. Researchers say people should slowly reduce the amount of caffeine in their diet.

**19**-People in the US get most of their caffeine from-----.

- a) tea                      b) chocolate                      c) coffee                      d) soft drinks

**20**.Stopping dependence on caffeine happens -----.

- a) all of a sudden    b) fast                      c) after a year                      d) slowly

**21**-A stimulant produces a/an ----- increase in energy.

- a) impermanent    b) lasting                      c) permanent                      d) lifelong

**22**. Some researchers believe that caffeine withdrawal should be considered-----.

- a) physical illness    b) a mental disorder                      c) a physical disorder                      d) a normal activity

**23**. We understand from the passage that products with caffeine -----.

- a) are healthy                      b) are expensive                      c) are unhealthy                      d) are not easy to get

**24**. According to the passage, some People's normal activities are usually affected when they:

- a) get angry easily                      b) become very sad  
c) get over 200 mg of caffeine a day                      d) stop having caffeine

**25**. Find a word in the passage which means: substance that makes your body work faster

- a) mental                      b) stimulant                      c) coffee                      d) tea

**26**.What does the underlined word '**they**' refer to?

a) students

b) researchers

c) people

d) dietitians

ثانياً الاسئلة الموضوعية التالية ( كل سؤال بدرجتان )

27. The students were made ----- the homework again .

a) revise

b) revising

c) to revise

d) to be revised

28. I regret (to go - goes going - gone) to the cinema. It was not a very good film

29. By 2050 , we will have run ( out - away - into - in ) of petrol

30. Which sentence is correct?

a. There are two t's in the word -title.

b. There are two ts in the word -title.

c. There are two ts' in the word -title.

d. There are two tt's in the word -title.

**Choose the correct translation:**

31. The government tries to solve the problem of unemployment by providing the youth with job opportunities .

- ا- تسعى الحكومة لزيادة مشكلة البطالة وذلك بتوفير فرص عمل للشباب
- ب- تسعى الحكومة للقضاء على مشكلة البطالة وذلك بتوفير فرص عمل للشيوخ
- ج- تسعى الحكومة للقضاء على مشكلة البطالة وذلك بتوفير فرص عمل للشباب
- د- تسعى الحكومة للقضاء على مشكلة التوظيف وذلك بتوفير فرص عمل للشباب

32. Tourism is considered a main source of national income so we should attract more tourists

- ا- تعتبر السياحة مصدراً من مصادر الاقتصاد القومي ولذا علينا ان نجذب الكثير من السياح .
- ب- تعتبر السياحة مصدراً من مصادر الدخل القومي ولذا علينا ان نجذب الكثير من السباحين .
- ج- تعتبر السياحة مصدراً من مصادر الدخل القومي ولذا علينا ان نجذب القليل من السياح .
- د- تعتبر السياحة مصدراً من مصادر الدخل الاسري ولذا علينا ان نجذب مزيداً من السياح .

- من أولويات عملية تطوير التعليم في مصر خلق بيئة تعليمية جذابة تجعل الطالب محباً للمدرسة وللتعلم ومستمتعاً بالتعلم..

- a. One of the priorities of developing educational process in Egypt is to create an attractive learning environment that makes students like school and enjoy learning.
- b. One of the priorities of developing educational procession in Egypt is to create an unattractive learning environment that prepares students like school and enjoy learning.
- c. One of priorities of developing educational process in Egypt is to create an attractive learning environment that makes students live school and enjoy teaching.
- d. One the priorities of developing educational process in Egypt is to create and attractive learning universe that makes students like school and enjoy learning.

٣٤- لقد بدأت الحكومة بالفعل في نقل مقر بعض الوزارات والإدارات الحكومية الهامة إلى العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة التي تم تزويدها بأحدث الإمكانيات التكنولوجية المتطورة .

- a. The government has already started moving the headquarters of some important government monasteries and departments to the new administrative capital, which has been equipped with the latest advanced technological capabilities.
- b. The government has already started moving the headquarters of some important government ministries and department to the new administrative capital, which has been equipped with the primary advanced technological capabilities.
- c. The government has already started moving the headquarters of some important government ministries and departments to the new administrative capital, which has been equipped with the latest advanced technological abilities.
- d. The government has already started moving the headquarters of all important government ministries and departments to the new administrative capital, which has been equipped with the latest advanced technological capabilities.

ثالثاً الاسئلة المقالية التالية ( كل سؤال بدرجتان )

**The Novel**

35. If Miss Havisham had helped her brother financially, do you think that he wouldn't have plotted with her fiancé against her? Why?

36. To what extent was Miss Havisham 's brother cruel?

رابعاً الاسئلة المقالية التالية ( اربع درجات )

**37-Write six lines on the following topic:**

**"The role of our youth to develop our country"**

## Chapter 5

I visited Miss **Havisham**, wearing my new clothes. 'I have been given a fortune since I last saw you, Miss **Havisham**,' I said. 'And I am so grateful!' 'I know,' she replied, 'and you have a good life ahead of, you. But remember to follow Mr **Jaggers**' advice!' She looked pleased as I said goodbye, and I felt sure that she was my secret **benefactor**. After all, Mr **Jaggers** had told me that I was to be educated in London by Mr **Matthew Pocket**, one of Miss **Havisham**'s relatives. When I was sitting on the coach to London the next day, after a quick goodbye to **Joe**, my sister and **Biddy**, I felt as though the whole world was waiting for me. It was five long hours before I arrived at Mr **Jaggers**' office in London. His clerk, Mr **Wemmick**, explained that because Mr **Jaggers** was still at work, I should wait for him in his office. It was an unpleasant place, and I was sad that I had left the blacksmith's. When Mr **Jaggers** returned, he said that I should go to my **lodgings** at **Barnard's** Inn, where I would share rooms with Mr **Matthew Pocket**'s son. He wanted to take me to his father's house in a few days' time, so that I could meet my new teacher. 'Here is some money, **Pip**,' Mr **Jaggers** continued. 'It is a lot of money! But don't worry; I will know how much you spend, in case there are any difficulties.' This was good news! I felt happier now, and I agreed to go to my lodgings with Mr **Wemmick**. He told me that Mr **Matthew Pocket** lived in **Hammersmith**, five miles away. When we came to **Barnard's** Inn, I was disappointed. It looked dusty and gloomy. Mr **Wemmick** left me at the door, but no one answered it. I thought that no one would come and let me in, but after about half an hour, I heard footsteps. A tall, thin young man appeared. 'Mr **Pip**?' he asked. 'I am sorry! I went to buy some fruit at the market and I thought you would arrive later than this.' He invited me in. It was only when he turned to speak to me, in the light of the window, that I saw who he was – the pale young gentleman! **Herbert Pocket** was the pale young man. He was not handsome, but his face was cheerful, and I liked him at once. However, I had a strange feeling that he would never become rich. We immediately began talking. I discovered that Miss **Havisham** had once thought she might adopt **Herbert**, so she had invited him to visit her. That was on the day that I had met **Herbert**, and fought with him in the garden.

After that visit, however, **Herbert** was not invited to Miss **Havisham**'s again. 'She didn't think I was suitable,' **Herbert** told me. 'But if she had adopted me, I would probably be rich now. And if that had happened, then I might even be **Estella**'s Fiancé, too!' 'You must be disappointed!' I said. 'No, not at all,' he replied. 'I think I have had a lucky escape! **Estella** is proud and cruel. Miss **Havisham** adopted her, you know. She wants to use her – to take **revenge** on men!' I was very surprised. **Estella** was adopted! Why did Miss **Havisham** want to use her in such a strange way? When we sat down to eat, **Herbert** continued to tell me about Miss **Havisham**. First, however, he told me how to behave at the dinner table, for which I was grateful. I soon discovered from **Herbert** that Mr **Jaggers** was Miss **Havisham**'s lawyer. Mr **Jaggers** had suggested that **Herbert**'s father, Mr **Matthew Pocket**, should be my teacher in London. I was **convinced** now that Miss **Havisham** was my secret benefactor!

**Herbert** told me more about Miss **Havisham**. He explained that when she was a young woman, she and her half-brother had **inherited** a fortune from their father. It was not long, however, before her half-brother spent his share of the money and became **jealous** of her. He wanted to have her money, and he started to think about how he could get it from her. He didn't care if he had to hurt her to get it. Soon afterwards, Miss **Havisham** got engaged. During this time, she gave most of her fortune to her fiancé. This was against the advice of her cousin, **Matthew Pocket**, who warned her not to trust her future husband too much. Miss **Havisham** became very angry with **Matthew Pocket** and ordered him to leave her house. He has never been there since.

'Is your father still angry with Miss **Havisham** for ordering him to leave?' I asked **Herbert**. 'No, he's not angry at all,' replied **Herbert**. 'But when Miss **Havisham** sent him away that day, she said that he wanted to get her money himself. If he visited her now, it would look as if he still wanted her money.' On the morning of the wedding, when everything was ready and the guests were expected, there was some bad news. Miss **Havisham**'s fiancé had left her! She received the news at twenty to nine in the morning, while she was getting dressed. Ever since that time, more than twenty-five years ago, neither Miss **Havisham**, nor her house, had changed at all. Even the clocks in the house had been stopped. 'But why didn't Miss **Havisham**'s fiancé marry her?' I asked. 'He would have had all her property then.' 'Perhaps he was already married,' **Herbert** said. It seemed that the fiancé had, in fact, planned everything with Miss **Havisham**'s half-brother, hoping to take as much money from her as they could. Nobody knew if the two men were still alive, or not. The following day, I was taken to meet the **Pocket** family at their home in **Hammersmith** in West London. They lived by the river in an old house. When we arrived, we found **Herbert**'s younger brothers and sisters playing noisily in the garden. Despite the place being very ordinary, it was a happy house, and I immediately felt comfortable there. Mr **Matthew Pocket** and his wife were as cheerful as their son, and made me welcome. After they showed me my room, they introduced me to two other young men who were also staying there. We soon got to know each other very well. **Startop** was good-natured, but **Bentley Drummle** was proud and grumpy. I was learning how to live like a young gentleman and improving my education because I would be very rich one day. Mr **Jaggers** gave me more money whenever I asked, which was quite often. I noticed, however, that he never laughed, and everyone seemed scared of him. One day, while waiting in Mr **Jaggers**' office, I had a conversation with Mr **Wemmick** about Mr **Jaggers**' work. I noticed that Mr **Wemmick** was proudly wearing a ring. He told me that it was a present from people he had worked with. I was invited to Mr **Wemmick**'s house. He lived with his father some distance from the centre of London, in a strange building that looked like a small wooden castle. Mr **Wemmick** told me that all of London's **criminals** were afraid of Mr **Jaggers**, so they left him alone. I learnt that Mr **Jaggers** did not even lock his house at night, and often said, 'I want to see the man who'll dare to rob me!'



## Chapter Five

**1. If you were Pip, would you be pleased to have money or know your real benefactor? Why?**

- If I were Pip, I'd be pleased to know my real benefactor.
- Pip, mistakably, thought that Miss Havisham was his secret benefactor.
- Pip felt ashamed knowing that his secret benefactor was the convict. He decided not to take money from him.

**2. Why do you think that Pip felt sure that Mrs Havisham was his secret benefactor?**

- a- She had known about Pip's being given a fortune.
- b- She told him to follow Mr. Jaggers' advice.
- c- Mr. Jaggers was her lawyer.
- d- She misled Pip into believing that she was his secret benefactor.

**3. Should Pip have continued staying at the blacksmith's instead of going for his new life in London? Why?**

Yes, He should have continued staying at the blacksmith's since Joe was friendly with him. Pip later blamed himself for leaving Joe for the convict—feeling ashamed of his life.

- No, he had the right to dream of changing his life, having a good education and becoming a gentleman.

**4. "After a quick goodbye to Joe, my sister and Biddy, I felt as though the whole world was waiting for me." What do you think Pip meant by these words?**

- He meant that with the money he would get from his benefactor, all his expectations of changing his life, becoming a gentleman, and getting married to Estella would come true.

**5. If you were Estella, would you agree to be a tool to harm others? Why?**

Perhaps I would do the same as Estella did. Estella had to since she was brought up by Miss Havisham to break men's hearts — she was a victim to Miss Havisham.

**6. Do you think that Miss Havisham had an influential personality? Why?**

- a- Miss Havisham has a great influence on Pip. Miss Havisham has a bad effect on Pip by always urging Pip to fall in love with Estella.
- b- She has been controlling Estella's life. She brought Estella up to break men's hearts, including Pip's.

**7. Do you think that Herbert Pocket would have been happier if Miss Havisham had adopted him? Why?**

No, I don't think so. Miss Havisham wasn't on good terms with her relatives: she believed they coveted her wealth. Miss Havisham was green with hatred and taking her revenge on men.

- Yes, because it would be a good chance for him to be rich.

**9. If Miss Havisham had helped her brother financially, do you think that he wouldn't have plotted with her fiancé against her? Why?**

I don't think so. He was extravagant, spending his money carelessly.

He was also jealous of his sister. He didn't care if he had to hurt her to get her money.

- Yes, because he wouldn't have felt envious of her having taken the money he wanted from her..

**10. To what extent was Miss Havisham's brother cruel?**

- He wanted to take his sister's money. He didn't care if he had to hurt her to get it. It seemed that the fiancé had, in fact, planned everything with Miss Havisham's half-brother to take her money.

**11- What do you think of the relationship of brotherhood between Miss Havisham and her half-brother?**

- They were bad relatives. Her brother was jealous of her and wanted to take her money after wasting all his money and nearly agreed with her fiancé to deceive her to take her money.

**12- Miss Havisham was so shocked that the world around her stopped on the day of her marriage. Explain.**

- Miss Havisham loved and trusted her fiancé and refused all the warnings about him especially from Mr. Matthew Pocket, but he deceived her and took a lot of money and escaped on the day of their marriage. The shock was so severe that she couldn't overcome it. All her



life stopped on that day. She kept wearing the same clothes and all the clocks stopped at twenty to nine.

**13. Do you think Miss Havisham 's cousin, Matthew Pocket , was faithful when he advised her not to trust her fiancé ?**

- Yes, he was true. He thought that that man would deceive her and would take her money and that happened in fact.

**14- Why do you think the clocks had stopped in Miss Havisham's house?**

- Because time stopped for Miss Havisham on the day she didn't get married. She felt so shocked that all her life stopped at the moment. She couldn't overcome that problem.

**15- How was the relationship between Miss Havisham and her family ?**

- They came to congratulate her on her birthday, but she wasn't interested in them as she thought they were greedy and wanted her money. She didn't accept her cousin's advice concerning her fiancé and sent him away thinking he wanted to take her fortune.

**16-What do you think about what happened to Miss Havisham? What do you think of her reaction to what happened?**

- I think it was so bad that she was deceived by her brother and her fiancé whom she trusted. She should have been careful and listened to her cousin's advice.

- Her reaction was passive. She should have learnt from her mistake and should have begun her life again with a new person that she loved and he respected her.

# Unit Six

## Vocabulary

Let's get it done !  
 لننتج الامر  
 By: Mr El Sebael Atteya

## Key vocabulary

|                      |                |                        |                   |                     |                      |
|----------------------|----------------|------------------------|-------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| <b>assess</b>        | يقيم           | <b>decline</b>         | انخفاض - ينخفض    | <b>productivity</b> | إنتاجية              |
| <b>progress</b>      | تقدم           | <b>procrastination</b> | تأجيل - مماطلة    | <b>productive</b>   | منتج                 |
| <b>process</b>       |                | <b>distracted</b>      | شارد الذهن        | <b>vary</b>         | يتنوع                |
| <b>switch off</b>    | يكف عن التركيز | <b>strategy</b>        | سياسة - خطه       | <b>various</b>      | متنوع                |
| <b>amongst=among</b> | بين            | <b>procrastinate</b>   | يؤجل - يماطل      | <b>variety</b>      | تشكيلة               |
| <b>efficiency</b>    | كفاءة          | <b>raise</b>           | يرفع              | <b>brainstorm</b>   | يستثير الفكر         |
| <b>evidence</b>      | دليل           | <b>priority</b>        | أولوية            | <b>analyse</b>      | يحلل                 |
| <b>impact</b>        | تأثير          | <b>hopefully</b>       | علي أمل           | <b>analysis</b>     | تحليل                |
| <b>session</b>       | جلسه           | <b>period</b>          | فتره              | <b>focus on</b>     | تركيز علي            |
| <b>alarm</b>         | جرس - انذار    | <b>drawback</b>        | عيب               | <b>experience</b>   | خبره - تجربه - يعاني |
| <b>logic</b>         | منطق           | <b>mean</b>            | يعني- يقصد - بخيل | <b>overall</b>      | إجمالي - شامل        |
| <b>(do)task</b>      | مهمه           | <b>unpleasant</b>      | غير سار           | <b>naturally</b>    | طبيعيا               |

### Definitions

|                              |                                                                                        |                  |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| <b>productivity</b>          | the rate at which you produce work and the amount produced.                            | إنتاجية          |
| <b>brainstorming session</b> | a group of people think about something to create good ideas.                          | جلسه استشاره فكر |
| <b>inevitable</b>            | certain to happen and impossible to avoid                                              | حتمي             |
| <b>diary</b>                 | a book you write down your daily things                                                | يومي             |
| <b>analyse</b>               | to examine the nature or structure of something                                        | يحلل             |
| <b>assess</b>                | to judge , evaluate or decide the amount , value , importance or quality of something. | يقدر - يقيم      |
| <b>efficiency</b>            | when someone or something uses time and energy well, without wasting any of them.      | كفاءة            |
| <b>production</b>            | the amount of something that is made or grown by a country or company.                 | انتاج            |
| <b>procrastination</b>       | to delay doing something that you should do .                                          | تأجيل - مماطلة   |
| <b>result</b>                | something that happens or exists because of something that happened before             | نتيجه            |
| <b>impact = effect</b>       | The effect that an action or a person has on someone or something.                     | تأثير            |
| <b>process</b>               | a series of events or changes happening naturally or industrially.                     | عملية            |
| <b>focus</b>                 | Someone whose job is to teach people to improve at a sport, skill, or school subject.  | تركيز            |
| <b>decline</b>               | a decrease in the quality , quantity or importance of something.                       | انهيار - انخفاض  |
| <b>vary</b>                  | differ in size, amount or degree.                                                      | يتنوع            |

|                   |                                                                                                           |                    |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>coach</b>      | <b>someone whose job is to teach people to improve at a sport, skill or school subject.</b>               | <b>مدرب</b>        |
| <b>priority</b>   | <b>something regarded as more important than another.</b>                                                 | <b>اولويه</b>      |
| <b>productive</b> | <b>able to produce large amounts of goods</b>                                                             | <b>انتاجي</b>      |
| <b>overall</b>    | <b>in general rather than in particular, or including all the people or things in a particular group.</b> | <b>عام - شامل</b>  |
| <b>raise</b>      | <b>to increase the amount or level of something</b>                                                       | <b>يرفع - يربي</b> |

### **Be honest , don't look at the table**

### **Quickly – Quickly- Quickly - Test yourself**

#### **1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.**

1- To ..... is to be different from each other in size, shape, etc.

- a. assess                                      b. decline                                      c. procrastinate                                      d. vary

2- To ..... is to decrease in quantity or importance.

- a. assess                                      b. decline                                      c. procrastinate                                      d. vary

3- To ..... is to make a judgment about a person or situation after thinking carefully about it.

- a. assess                                      b. decline                                      c. procrastinate                                      d. vary

4- To ..... is to delay doing something that you ought to do, usually because you do not want to do it.

- a. assess                                      b. decline                                      c. procrastinate                                      d. vary

5- To ..... is to relax for a short time.

- a. delay                                      b. achieve                                      c. raise                                      d. switch off

6- To ..... is to increase an amount, number, or level.

- a. delay                                      b. achieve                                      c. raise                                      d. switch off

7- ..... means producing or achieving a lot.

- a. Individual                                      b. Productive                                      c. Impossible                                      d. Common

8- ..... is the quality of doing something well and effectively, without wasting time, money, or energy.

- a. Efficiency                                      b. Productivity                                      c. Procrastination                                      d. Progress

9- ..... is the act of delaying something that you should do, usually because you do not want to do it.

- a. Efficiency                                      b. Productivity                                      c. Procrastination                                      d. Progress

10- ..... is the rate at which goods are produced, and the amount produced.

- a. Efficiency                                      b. Productivity                                      c. Procrastination                                      d. Progress

### **Lesson one and two**

|                      |                      |                   |                    |                      |                            |
|----------------------|----------------------|-------------------|--------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>achieve</b>       | <b>يحقق</b>          | <b>positive</b>   | <b>ايجابي</b>      | <b>conclusion</b>    | <b>خاتمه</b>               |
| <b>aim</b>           | <b>هدف</b>           | <b>regularly</b>  | <b>بانتظام</b>     | <b>diary</b>         | <b>يوميات</b>              |
| <b>finding</b>       | <b>اكتشاف</b>        | <b>habit</b>      | <b>عاده</b>        | <b>individual</b>    | <b>فرد - شخص</b>           |
| <b>mention</b>       | <b>يذكر</b>          | <b>state</b>      | <b>يحدد - دولة</b> | <b>significantly</b> | <b>بشكل كبير</b>           |
| <b>repeat</b>        | <b>يكرر</b>          | <b>researcher</b> | <b>باحث</b>        | <b>rest</b>          | <b>باقي - راحة - يرتاح</b> |
| <b>varying</b>       | <b>متنوع - مختلف</b> | <b>avoid</b>      | <b>يتجنب</b>       | <b>Level</b>         | <b>مستوي</b>               |
| <b>manage</b>        | <b>يدير - ينجح</b>   | <b>owl</b>        | <b>بومه</b>        | <b>response</b>      | <b>رد - اجابه</b>          |
| <b>result</b>        | <b>نتيجه</b>         | <b>private</b>    | <b>خاص</b>         | <b>Worry about</b>   | <b>يقلق</b>                |
| <b>specific</b>      | <b>خاص</b>           | <b>tips</b>       | <b>نصائح</b>       | <b>delay</b>         | <b>يؤجل</b>                |
| <b>effectiveness</b> | <b>فاعليه</b>        | <b>error</b>      | <b>خطأ</b>         | <b>excuse</b>        | <b>عذر - يعذر</b>          |
| <b>fail</b>          | <b>يفشل</b>          | <b>tidy</b>       | <b>يرتب - مرتب</b> | <b>Result in</b>     | <b>ينج عن</b>              |
| <b>honest</b>        | <b>امين</b>          | <b>hand</b>       | <b>يسلم</b>        | <b>interrupt</b>     | <b>يقاطع</b>               |
| <b>data</b>          | <b>بيانات</b>        | <b>options</b>    | <b>اختيارات</b>    | <b>production</b>    | <b>انتاج</b>               |

|        |             |        |       |          |               |
|--------|-------------|--------|-------|----------|---------------|
| fan    | معجب - مشجع | expert | خبير  | stressed | متوتر         |
| sound  | صوت - يذو   | recent | حديث  | factors  | عوامل         |
| notice | يلاحظ       | report | تقرير | rest     | راحة - الباقي |

## Lesson 3 & 4 and 5

|                 |                 |               |              |                |                |
|-----------------|-----------------|---------------|--------------|----------------|----------------|
| Self-management | الاداره الذاتيه | sentence      | جمل - يعاقب  | structure      | بناء - تركيب   |
| mechanic        | ميكانيكي        | reflective    | انعكاسي -    | concentration  | تركيز          |
| summary         | ملخص            | force         | يجبر         | Increase in    | يزداد - زياده  |
| stress          | توتر            | pollution     | التلوث       | quality        | جوده - صفه     |
| electricity     | كهرباء          | energy        | الطاقة       | summary        | تلخيص          |
| revision        | مراجعة          | points        | نقاط         | progress       | تقدم           |
| drawing         | رسم             | amongst       | بين          | research       | بحث            |
| conclude        | يستنتج - يختم   | situations    | مواقف        | group          | مجموعه         |
| practice        | ممارسه - تدريب  | period        | فتره         | habits         | عادات          |
| alternatives    | بدائل           | process       | عملية        | reduce         | يقلل           |
| result in       | يؤدي الى        | importance    | اهميه        | notice         | يلاحظ          |
| common          | عام - شامل      | memory        | ذاكره        | regular        | منتظم          |
| brain           | المخ            | stressful     | متعب - مجهد  | positive       | ايجابي         |
| advantage       | ميزه            | task          | مهمه         | function       | وظيفه          |
| disadvantage    | عيب             | naturally     | طبيعيا       | divide         | يقسم           |
| Look back       | ينظر للخلف      | suppose       | يفترض        | set            | جهاز - يضع     |
| evaluate        | يقيم            | difference    | اختلاف       | anxious        | قلق            |
| evaluation      | تقييم           | Olympic coach | مدرب اوليمبي | cycling        | ركوب العجل     |
| Reach           | يصل الي         | evidence      | دليل         | cyclists       | راكبي الدراجات |
| experience      | خبره            | summarise     | يلخص         | blog           | ينشر - منشور   |
| position        | مكانه - وظيفه   | benefits      | فوائد        | reflect        | يعكس           |
| active          | نشط             | performance   | أداء         | records        | ارقام قياسيه   |
| plug            | سدادة           | absolutely    | إطلاقا       | details        | تفاصيل         |
| refresh         | ينعش            | diet          | نظام غذائي   | pillow         | مخده           |
| mark            | درجة            | waste         | مضيعه - يضيع | physically     | بدنيا          |
| grade           | درجة / رتبة     | massive       | ضخم          | mentally       | عقليا          |
| measure         | يقيس            | unrealistic   | غير واقعي    | permission     | إذن            |
| perform         | يؤدي            | unpleasant    | كريه         | inevitable     | حتمي           |
| wrist           | معصم اليد       | enthusiastic  | متحمس        | marshes        | مستنقعات       |
| affectionately  | بمحبه - بموده   | sleeve        | كم قميص      | at the request | بناء علي طلب   |
| handcuffs       | كلبشات          | scar          | ندبه         | haunt          | يطارد          |
| audience        | مشاهدون         | embarrasse    | مرتبك        | ashamed        | مكسوف          |
| leg-irons       | اصفاد           | convict       | مجرم         | remarkable     | ملحوظ          |
| boast           | يتباهى          | relief        | راحه         | affectionately | محبه           |
| anxious         | قلق             | enthusiasm    | حماس         | shiny          | مشرق           |
| wound           | جرح             | Hold on to    | يتمسك بـ     | guard          | حارس           |
| argue           | يجادل           | cough         | يكح          | life sentence  | مؤبد           |

## Expressions

|                                |                             |                     |                     |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| do ..... schoolwork ( a study) | يؤدي الواجب المدرسي (دراسه) | an expert on- in-at | خبير في             |
| assess productivity levels     | يقيم مستويات الانتاجيه      | think of            | يفكر في             |
| brainstorm ideas               | يتبادل الافكار              | on time             | في الوقت المحدد     |
| (do) brainstorming session     | جلسه تفكير                  | in time             | قبل الوقت المحدد    |
| at different times             | في اوقات مختلفه             | In different places | في اماكن مختلفه     |
| feel stressed or worried       | يشعر بانه مضغوط او قلق      | instead of          | بدلا من             |
| amount of work                 | كميه العمل                  | get distracted by   | يششت                |
| come over                      | يزور                        | raise my efficiency | يرفع كفاءه          |
| sort of = type of = kind of    | نوع من                      | vary study habits   | ينوع عادات المذاكره |

|                                                |                      |                                |                   |
|------------------------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>hand to</b>                                 | يسلم الي             | <b>instead of</b>              | بدلا من           |
| <b>report on</b>                               | تقرير علي            | <b>in a research study</b>     | دراسه بحثيه       |
| <b>an increase in</b>                          | زياده في             | <b>pros and cons</b>           | مميزات وعيوب      |
| <b>put away</b>                                | يضع في المكان الصحيح | <b>do a task</b>               | يقوم بمهمه        |
| <b>at the start of the study,</b>              | في بدايه الدراسه     | <b>on the other hand</b>       | من ناحيه اخري     |
| <b>depend on = count on = rely on</b>          | يعتمد علي            | <b>the central idea</b>        | الفكره الاساسيه   |
| <b>make study plan</b>                         | يقوم بخطه دراسه      | <b>make noise</b>              | يعمل ضوضاء        |
| <b>increase awareness</b>                      | يزيد الوعي           | <b>give evidence</b>           | يقدم دليل         |
| <b>do things</b>                               | يقوم بعمل اشياء      | <b>start looking at my</b>     | ابدا بالنظر الي   |
| <b>tend to</b>                                 | يميل الي             | <b>lead to + ing</b>           | يؤدي الي          |
| <b>do a session</b>                            | يعقد جلسه            | <b>set an alarm</b>            | يضبط منبه         |
| <b>add to</b>                                  | يضيف الي             | <b>set a world record</b>      | يسجل رقم قياسي    |
| <b>take part in= share in = participate in</b> | يشارك في             | <b>in the daily life</b>       | في الحياه اليوميه |
| <b>effects of stress on</b>                    | تأثير التوتر علي     | <b>positive effects</b>        | تأثيرات ايجابيه   |
| <b>reach ( draw) a conclusion</b>              | يصل الي استنتاج      | <b>negative effects</b>        | تأثيرات سلبيه     |
| <b>make changes ( progress)</b>                | يعمل تغييرات ( تقدم) | <b>a positive impact on</b>    | تأثير ايجابيه     |
| <b>carry on</b>                                | يستمر في             | <b>use a strategy</b>          | يستخدم استراتيجيه |
| <b>worried about</b>                           | قلق بخصوص            | <b>concentrate best</b>        | يركز افضل         |
| <b>a waste of time</b>                         | مضيعة للوقت          | <b>put ..... into practise</b> | يطبق- ينفذ        |

***Be honest , don't look at the table***

***Quickly – Quickly- Quickly - Test yourself***

**1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.**

1- We are ..... a scientific study on the application of technology in education.

a. varying                      b. doing                      c. having                      d. raising

2- I tried to ..... some conclusion but I didn't have enough evidence to depend on.

a. draw                      b. allow                      c. assess                      d. become

5- You won't feel bored if you ..... your study habits.

a. vary                      b. do                      c. have                      d. raise

6- The progress my son has ..... is quite good.

a. stated                      b. made                      c. did                      d. kept

8- Thank you for the good work you've .....

a. told                      b. become                      c. done                      d. concentrated

9- Working to a good plan and getting enough sleep will surely ..... your efficiency.

a. vary                      b. do                      c. have                      d. raise

10- "Hard word leads to success." This means hard work ..... success.

a. looks at                      b. results in                      c. tends to                      d. switches of

11- I want you to tell me what happened ..... detail.

a. to                      b. at                      c. in                      d. for

12- My biggest problem is that I am distracted ..... the unimportant details.

a. for                      b. from                      c. at                      d. by

13- That "Great Expectations" is the best novel is true ..... most readers.

a. for                      b. from                      c. at                      d. by

14- "I need some more time to examine the findings of the research." This means I want some more time to ..... the research findings.

a. look at                      b. result in                      c. tend to                      d. switch of

15- I will have to finish this job over a two-..... period.



- a. months                      b. month                      c. month's                      d. monthly
- 16- "I'd like you come over on Monday evening." This means I want you to ..... me.
- a. discover                      b. find                      c. visit                      d. invite
- 17- ..... be honest, this course has too much grammar.
- a. On                      b. At                      c. Of                      d. To
- 18- Rodayna writes ..... every word her teacher says.
- a. with                      b. down                      c. on                      d. of
- 19- My opinion might change depending ..... what will happen.
- a. on                      b. in                      c. into                      d. to
- 20- How many tasks have you ..... so far ?
- a. told                      b. reached                      c. brainstormed                      d. done
- 21- After two hours of discussion, we finally ..... a conclusion.
- a. reached                      b. did                      c. took                      d. set
- 22- The ideas we have ..... are all productive.
- a. got                      b. given                      c. brainstormed                      d. done
- 23- My best friends ..... a big difference in my life.
- a. reach                      b. make                      c. take                      d. set
- 24- You need to ..... evidence to back up what you say.
- a. get                      b. give                      c. brainstorm                      d. do
- 25- I got up late since I had forgotten to ..... the alarm.
- a. reach                      b. make                      c. take                      d. set
- 26- The employment rate معدل التوظيف has increased ..... 3%.
- a. in                      b. for                      c. by                      d. from
- 27- ..... back, I realize how hard my parents tried to bring me up.
- a. Look                      b. Looking                      c. Looked                      d. To look
- 28- "She carried on looking after her parents." The phrasal verb 'carried on' here means ...
- a. went on                      b. continued                      c. interrupted                      d. a & b
- 29- I look forward to taking ..... the final match.
- a. out                      b. after                      c. part in                      d. place
- 30- To raise your productivity, keep focused ..... the task in hand.
- a. on                      b. to                      c. with                      d. by
- 31- I don't like grilled fish ..... all.
- a. from                      b. with                      c. for                      d. at
- 32- Success goes ..... working hard.
- a. up                      b. with                      c. down                      d. out
- 33- It matters how you will put this plan .....
- a. into practice                      b. into practise                      c. away                      d. away from

### Derivatives

| Verb     |               | Noun                  |                 | Adjective  |              |
|----------|---------------|-----------------------|-----------------|------------|--------------|
| produce  | ينتج          | Production - producer | انتاج - منتج    | productive | انتاجي       |
| analyze  | يحلل          | analysis              | تحليل           | analytical | تحليلي       |
| decline  | ينهار - ينخفض | decline               | انهيار - انخفاض | declining  | هابط - منحدر |
| distract | يشتت          | distraction           | تشتت            | distracted | مشتت         |
| vary     | يتنوع         | variety               | تشكيلة          | various    | متنوع        |
| decide   | يقرر          | decision              | قرار            | decisive   | حاسم         |
| differ   | يختلف         | difference            | اختلاف          | different  | مختلف        |
| assess   | يقيم - يحكم   | assessment            | تقييم - حكم     | assessable | خاضع للتقييم |

|                  |                 |                     |              |                    |             |
|------------------|-----------------|---------------------|--------------|--------------------|-------------|
| <b>describe</b>  | يصف             | <b>description</b>  | وصف          | <b>descriptive</b> | وصفي        |
| <b>manage</b>    | يدير - يتحكم    | <b>management</b>   | اداره        | <b>manageable</b>  | سهل الاداره |
| <b>alternate</b> | يتبادل - يتناوب | <b>alternative</b>  | بدل          | <b>alternative</b> | بدل         |
| <b>add</b>       | يضيف            | <b>addition</b>     | اضافه        | <b>additional</b>  | اضافي       |
| <b>signify</b>   | يشير الي        | <b>significance</b> | معزي - دلالة | <b>significant</b> | هام         |

### Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

| Word            | Meaning          | Synonyms                          | Antonyms                                      | Meaning       |
|-----------------|------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|---------------|
| damage          | يتلف             | harm- hurt                        | benefit                                       | يفيد          |
| reduce          | يقلل             | decrease - cut down<br>decline    | increase-expand-<br>raise                     | يزيد          |
| increase        | زيادة            | Expansion raise-boost             | Decrease- decline                             | قله           |
| aim             | هدف              | goal- target                      | avoidance                                     |               |
| discussion      | مناقشه           | Argument-debate                   | Agreement-silence                             |               |
| state           | يحدد             | Declare- confirm                  | Confuse- hide                                 |               |
| brainstorm      | تفكير - عصف ذهني | insight - brainwave               |                                               |               |
| assessment      | تقييم            | evaluation                        |                                               |               |
| vary            | يتنوع            | Differ-modify                     | remain-conform                                |               |
| alarm           | انذار            | Alert-warning                     | quietness                                     |               |
| assess          | يقيم             | Evaluate-analyse-<br>judge        | ignore-neglect                                | يتجاهل        |
| concentrate     | يركز             | focus                             | distract                                      | يلهي - يشوش   |
| productive      | انتاجي - مبدع    | creative - inventive-<br>fruitful | unproductive-idle-<br>inactive- sterile       | غير منتج      |
| interrupt       | يقاطع            | Interfere- stop                   | continue                                      | يستمر         |
| efficient       | كفاء             |                                   | unskilled                                     | غير ماهر      |
| manage          | يدير             | Handle- control                   | Mismanage- fail                               |               |
| efficiency      | كفاءة            | effectiveness                     | inefficiency                                  | عدم كفاءة     |
| advantages      | مزايا            | merits / pros                     | disadvantage /<br>drawback-demerits<br>/ cons | عيوب          |
| overall         | شامل             | comprehensive                     | specific                                      | خاص           |
| procrastination | تأجيل / مماطلة   | Delay - postpone-put<br>off       | continuation                                  |               |
| progress        | تقدم             | advance-evolution                 | decline-failure                               | انخفاض - فشل  |
| divide          | يقسم             |                                   | attach - unify                                | يربط - يوحد   |
| priority        | الاولويه         | preference                        | inferiority                                   | اقلية - دونيه |

**Be honest , don't look at the table**

**Quickly – Quickly- Quickly - Test yourself**

**1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.**

### Synonyms & Antonyms

**1- "Ali comes up with productive ideas." 'Productive' is an antonym of .....**

**a. sterile                                      b.creative                      c. inventive                                      d. old-fashioned**

- 2- "Mona declined to marry Ali." 'Declined' here gives an opposite meaning to .....
- a. accepted                      b. flourished                      c. reduced                      d. turned down
- 3- "People's opinions vary according to culture and interests." The antonym of 'vary' here is .....
- a. remain                      b. disagree                      c. differ                      d. modify
4. "He is lazy and keeps procrastinating in all the time." 'Procrastinating' can be replaced by ...
- a. postponing                      b. putting off                      c. a & b                      d. putting away
5. The synonym of the word result is ( consequence – sequence – schedule – core )
6. The synonym of the word procrastinate is put ( on – at – away – off )
7. Pollution has a serious impact on the weather. "Impact" here is similar in meaning to:
- a. importance                      b. influence                      c. affect                      d. cause
8. Going to the court to obtain compensation is a long process. Process has the same meaning as ( generation -operation -preparation -situation)
- 9- A/ An (amount – number – equal - extract) means how much of something there is.
- 10- "She declined the job as the pay was little.." The synonym of 'declined' is.....
- a. accepted                      b. flourished                      c. reduced                      d. turned down
- 11- The antonym of the word realistic is ( tiny – factual – unrealistic – real )
- 12- "Ali comes up with productive ideas." The antonym of 'productive' is .....
- a. sterile                      b. creative                      c. inventive                      d. old-fashioned
- 13- "She declined his offer to buy our house , We won't sell it ." The synonym of 'declined' is ....
- a. accepted                      b. flourished                      c. agreed                      d. turned down
- 10- "The prices vary according to quality." The synonym of 'vary' here is .....
- a. agree                      b. disagree                      c. differ                      d. accept
- 11- "Parents do their best to raise their children." The verb 'raise' in this sentence is a synonym of .....
- a. increase                      b. improve                      c. lower                      d. bring up

## ***Language Notes***

**1-Operation** عملية تشغيل / عملية جراحية --process ( عملية ) سلسلة تغييرات أو أحداث ( طبيعیه – صناعیه )

- Following the earthquake, a large-scale **rescue operation** was launched.
- He's got to have **an operation on his shoulder**.
- New techniques are used to **improve the learning process**.

**2-Rise / rose / risen (I)** لا يليها مفعول

= (go up, increase يزداد , stand up يقف / ينهض , get out of bed يستيقظ )

Oil prices are **rising** all the time. يزداد

Smoke **rose** from the chimney. يتصاعد

The sun **rises** at around 6 a.m. تشرق

**- rise (n.)** ( زيادة في الأجور / ارتفاع ) **(increase / increase in wages)**

There was a sudden **rise** in temperature yesterday. ارتفاع

He got a 10% **rise** last year. زيادة في الأجر

**- Raise / raised/ raised (T)** يليها مفعول

- **Raise** your hand if you know the answer. يرفع
- The government does its best to **raise** the standard of living. يرفع مستوى المعيشة
- The concert **raised** a lot of money for cancer research. يجمع
- **Raise** your voice ارفع صوتك
- **raise** hopes/ fears/ suspicions ... يثير الخوف/الشك ...

• Raise a subject / question / point يطرح للمناقشة موضوع أو نقطة أو يثير تساؤل

- **Arise / arose / arisen** (بدون مفعول) = **begin to happen** يظهر / يحدث

• A lot of problems usually **arise** at work.

- **Arouse / aroused** (يلبثها مفعول) يوقظ (المشاعر والأحاسيس) / يثير

• Her behavior **aroused** the suspicions of the police. يثير شكوك

3 - **experience**

( خبره عمل )

**Experiences**

( تجربه حياه )

**Experiment**

( تجربه معملية )

They offered me **the job** because I had a lot **of experience**

I had a lot of interesting experiences during my journey in Africa.

In **labs**, scientists do **a lot of experiments**.

4 - **in time** في الوقت المناسب - You should be at the airport in time

- **on time** في الميعاد - The train arrives at the station on time.

5- **distract** ( يلهي - يشتت )

- **district** ( حي في مدينه )

- One of the group distracted me by asking for help.

- She lives in Sayeda Zeinab district.

6 - **differ (from)** يختلف عن

-**differ about / on / over**

يختلف بشأن

**differentiate between (right) and (wrong)**

يميز الفرق - الاختلاف

**differentiate (right) from (wrong)**

يميز الفرق - الاختلاف

- People **differ from** one another in their ability to handle stress.

-The two lawyers **differed about how to present the case**.

-It's important to **differentiate between** fact and opinion.

-Its unusual nesting habits **differentiate this bird from** others.

7- **affect**

يؤثر على

- **effect (impact)**

تأثير

- **have a/ an effect (impact) on**

- Pollution **affects** the environment badly.

We are studying **the effects** of pollution **on** the environment.

Pollution has **a bad effect (impact) on** people and the environment.

8- **Most** + ( اسم نكرة )

-Most footballers are professional.

- **Most of** +

اسم معرفة Most of the teachers are honest , patient and hard-working

9- **result of** نتيجة لـ

- **result from** ينتج عن

- **result in = lead to** يؤدي الى

11- **apply for** يتقدم للحصول علي ( وظيفة / شيء )

-**applicant** - طلب وظيفة - **application** متقدم لطلب

12- **artificial**

صناعي

-**artificial ( intelligence / limbs / lake )**

- **industrial** صناعي ( خاص بالصناعة )

- **Industrial ( sector / revolution / country )**

14. **contact** : يتصل ( لا تأخذ حرف جر ) : You can **contact me** on this number.

-connect ( to ) : يتصل : You can **connect the computer** to the internet easily .

a **contact with** : احتكاك او اتصال بـ : She needs to have a **contact with** new people .

## LISTENING

### Listen to an expert on productivity talking about how to be productive:

Productivity means managing your study or work time so that you get all your work done in the time you have, but also doing that work well.

When people ask me for tips about how to be productive, the first thing I tell them is that everyone's different so different things will help different people. Let's start with the place where you work. It's a good idea to try out different places and assess where you can concentrate the best and get the most work done. For example, going to a café to work or study might help some people to make faster progress, but it may make it harder for other people to concentrate and they'll get less work done. You need to find the best place for you. The same is true for the time of day you study. Some people are early birds and their efficiency tends to be higher in the morning. Whereas other people are 'night owls' who are most productive in the evening. Try working at different times of day and find out which time of day is best for you. Then make sure that you always work or study at that time.

Whatever type of person you are, your productivity levels will decline when you try to do several different tasks at the same time, or you quickly move from one task to another. So that's definitely something to avoid if you want to raise your productivity levels. Instead, you should complete one task and then move on to the next.

Stress and feeling worried also make us less productive. Assess how you're feeling before you sit down to work. If you are experiencing stress or feeling worried, try to relax by doing exercise or maybe writing your worries down so you stop thinking about them. This should make it easier for you to concentrate on your work rather than other things that are happening in your life and therefore increase your productivity levels.

### Listen to a question and answer session with the researcher who wrote the report

Woman 1 : Do you think you would get the same results with younger students?

Researcher (M) : Hmm, good question. We're actually going to let younger students take part in our next study. And I would expect that we'll see similar results. By which I mean: some students will become more productive the changes we make, and others won't.

Man 2 : Did you have any situations where a student really didn't want to make the changes that you asked them to make?

Researcher (M) : Well, we definitely didn't want to make anyone study in a specific way. That isn't what it's all about and it probably Fortunately isn't going to work. , all the students who took part were happy to make the changes we suggested . In fact , sometimes it was difficult to stop them from continuing with the change when we needed to move on to the next one .

Woman 2 : next one. I wanted to know if the students in the study allowed you to share their diaries with other researchers.

Researcher (M) : Oh no, we agreed to keep all of that information within our research team. We saw that as private information and we're just sharing our analysis of it.

## READING

Eman: I try hard to finish my homework on time, but I can never get it all done. After just a few minutes my productivity levels start to decline and I start looking at my phone.

Amayn: It sounds like you need to raise your efficiency so you can get more homework done.

Eman: So I need to become more productive?

Amayn: Yes, exactly. You need to do good work, but get it done faster by increasing your productivity First, assess when and where you find it easiest to work. You could try to vary the time and place where you work and see what happens at different times and in different places.

Eman: That's a good idea. I'll try doing that and hopefully I'll soon be making more progress with my homework





## A report on a recent study into productivity amongst students

In our research study, we assessed the productivity levels of sixteen to eighteen year-old students. The aim was to find out which situations led to an increase in the students' productivity levels while they are studying. We chose a group of 250 students and asked them to keep a diary over a six-month period. In these diaries they wrote down how much time they spent studying every day and what they achieved. At the start of the study, we asked all the students to make a change to their study habits. We wanted to find out what effect this change would have on the students' at the start of every month for the rest of the study to look at the effects of varying study habits. Our analysis of the students' diaries resulted in some interesting conclusions. We noticed that most students' productivity levels increased significantly when they got up earlier to study before school. This was even true for students who had said they weren't very efficient when they studied early in the morning. On the other hand, most students' productivity levels declined significantly when they regularly studied until late into the evening. Another interesting finding was that studying with other students had a very positive effect on some students' productivity levels, but a very negative effect on other students' productivity levels. In conclusion, we can state that studying in the morning seems to help most students to become more productive, but the effects of other factors, like whether or not students study alone, vary, depending on the individual.

## WB

### 1. Don't procrastinate

There is one common error which stops students from being productive: procrastination. Procrastination is when we delay doing something important. Students often look for an excuse to do other things, such as tidy their bedrooms, when they should be studying. Make a study plan and then make yourself follow it!

### 2. Don't study all night

Another bad habit that some students have is studying all night. (Sometimes this is because they have been procrastinating in all day!) Studying at night instead of sleeping does not allow the body and brain to rest. It's important to switch off to study effectively the next day.

### 3. Put the phone away

Some teachers don't allow students to keep their phone with them in class. But students shouldn't let themselves be distracted by their phones. Even better, hand it to the teacher at the beginning of the class – they will make you have it back at the end!



## Listening

### Lesson three, four and five

Listen to a brainstorming session in an English lesson. (SB. P.66)

**Zeinab :** OK, we're all here now and we have everything we need. So, we need to come up with ideas for how we can welcome new students to our school and make them feel comfortable here. Does anyone already have any ideas they want to share?

**Nabila :** I was thinking that we could put every new student together with a student who's already here. That student could show the new student and be there to help them when they need it.

**Zeinab :** That sounds like a nice idea. Would you be happy for us to add that to our possible solutions, Reem?

**Reem :** Sure, yes. I was just thinking how that would work. But I think it could work well.

**Nabila :** Well, it might lead to a new student spending a lot of time with just one other student, but at least the new student will get a lot of support.

**Reem :** Yes, exactly and that's our **priority**.

**Zeinab :** Great. So, do we all agree that this could be a **good solution**?

**Nabila :** Well, I clearly do!

**Reem :** Yes, I think it's a good idea too. Let's add it to our **options**.

-----

### **Listen to students brainstorming ideas (WB. P.40)**

**Sami :** Ok, Rami, do you want to **summarise** what we have so far?

**Rami :** OK, we have two ideas so far. One is close your bedroom door and ask your family not to **disturb** you and the other one, which Adel **mentioned**, is to leave your phone in another room. Does anyone have any other ideas they want to share?

**Sami :** How about **making a study plan**? It might lead to using some valuable study time but at least you have things **clearly organised** and know when you should take a break and what subjects you need to **concentrate** more **on**. What do you think, Adel?

**Adel :** That's a good idea. **Let's add** it to our **options**. Another way to be more **productive** when revising for exams is to revise with a friend.

**Rami :** Yes, but don't you think that might lead to you chatting about other things?

**Adel :** Perhaps. But at least it makes the revision more interesting and you can test one another too.

**Sami :** I see your point. It could be useful. Would you be happy for us to add that to our possible solutions?

**Adel :** Yes, of course. Can you **think of** other ideas?

**Rami :** I think it's important to eat healthily and practice self-care when we're stressed about studying.

**Sami :** Really? Can you expand on that?

**Rami :** Well, revising for exams can be really stressful. When we're stressed we **produce a hormone called cortisol** in our bodies. If we have too much in our bodies for a long time it can lead to heart problems, **depression** and **anxiety** which is not good for our **well-being** at all.

**Adel :** Wow! Where did you hear that?

**Rami :** My mum's a doctor. She told me about it when she made me create a study plan because she said **good organization and forward planning** is the best way to **avoid negative stress**. Organizing ourselves well should be a **priority** because it helps to reduce stress.

**Adel :** Interesting point. So, we have five solutions but we need to decide on which is the most efficient way to be more productive when revising for exams. What do you think Sami?

**Sami :** That's a tough one. I'm between 'making a study plan' and 'leaving your phone in a different room'. What about you Rami?

**Rami :** Yes, both ideas are good. But speaking from experience, I'd go for the study plan as the most effective. How about you Adel?

**Adel :** At first I thought that eating healthily was the most efficient idea but after hearing what Rami's mum said I've come round to that idea too.

**Sami :** So, do we all agree that this is **the best option**?

**Rami :** Yes, I think so.

**Adel :** Yes, I agree.

-----

### **Trying to raise my productivity levels:**

#### **Week 1**

I **tried dividing** my study time into **twenty-five minute periods** and taking breaks between them. I can understand the logic of doing this and I'm sure it **helps** some people **to**

**concentrate** better because they only have to concentrate for short periods. However, the big **drawback** for me was that I **kept looking** at the time to see when it was time to have a break. Looking back, I **suppose** I should have **set an alarm** instead so I didn't have to do that and then it might have been more helpful for me. I **decided to always do** the **task** that I found the most difficult first and, of course, this was quite hard to do at first because it isn't what you **naturally** want to do. However, I kept going with it and after a few days, I noticed how it was helping me to **manage my time better** and meant that I made a better job of the **unpleasant tasks** than I did before. This definitely had **a positive impact on** my productivity. I liked the idea of **making a study plan** because I thought it **would help me to get better organised**. It definitely helped me to feel less stressed about what I **needed to do** because I wrote down exactly what I had to do in a list and that made it seem easier to get everything done. I was surprised by what **a big difference the study plan made**. I'm definitely going **to carry on making study plans**.

~~~~~

SKILLS FOR LIFE

When you **make a change to the way you study** or in any other area of your life, you **need to evaluate** it. Has this change had any positive effects? Has this change had any negative effects? Which effects have had a greater impact? **Evaluate** the **effects to make decisions** about whether to continue with the change or to try something else.

~~~~~

### Huge benefits from small changes

The last time I blogged, I was worried about my exams. Well, you won't believe what happened! A teacher told me about **a coach** called David Brailsford. He **helped** the British Olympic cycling team **set** 7 world records in the 2012 London Olympics. But how did this coach change their **performance**? Well, he **analysed absolutely** everything and improved each thing by 1% He made lots of small changes to the cyclists' clothes, their **diet** and even their **pillows**! It had a very **positive impact on** their **productivity**. So, I thought I'd do the same to help me study more **effectively**. I looked into the following areas:

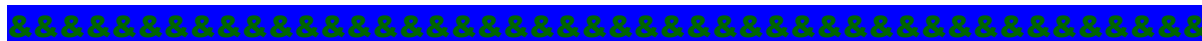
- **when I concentrate best**
- **for how long I can concentrate before I need a break**
- **where I concentrate best**
- **how I sleep best**
- **what food makes me feel my best**

At first, I thought it was a waste of time but I kept going with it. I **realized** I was more **mentally active** in the morning and after 6 pm so that's when I studied the most difficult subjects. I also **reduced the amount** I ate for dinner and bought some ear plugs to **avoid** any outside noise I now wake up feeling really refreshed and ready to go. Did it work? Well, I **was surprised by** what **a big difference** this strategy made In maths and history, my worst subjects, I **got the second highest marks** in the class and my **grades** in all my other subjects **increased by 48%** in just month! **Looking back** I **should have done** this before! Making a 1% change in different things made a **massive difference** for me and I'm sure it'll help you too! So why not to try it yourself

## Video Script

**Reflection is something that more and mre people are talking about today.** We're told that it will help us to **improve our performance- either** at school **or** in the workplace. But a lot of us aren't sure exactly what reflection is. **The simplest definition of reflection is that it's careful thought.** It **involves thinking** about what has happened to you and **analyzing your actions** and the beliefs that **led to them** in a lot of detail. When you reflect, your brain can take a break from the chaos of normal life, **organize the experiences** you have had and find some meaning

in them. Reflection is, therefore, a learning process that lets you grow and develop as a person. And the **evidence** suggests that reflection is a learning process that improves our quality of life. For example, a study of people travelling to work in the UK, found that the commuters who used their journey to work to think about their day and plan the next day were happier, more productive and less burned out than those who didn't. So why do people often **avoid reflection**? Some people find it difficult to think back to and analyse to what they've done, and others think it's better to just take action instead. **Whatever your opinion about reflection**, it might be **worth at least giving** it a very try and finding out it can make you happier and more productive.



## **Exercises**

### **LESSON ONE AND TWO**

**اولا الاسئلة الموضوعية التالية ( كل سؤال بدرجة )**

#### **I Choose the correct words :**

1. The manager used to encourage his workers' ----- levels.  
a. necessity                      b. productivity                      c. facility                      d. equality
2. People usually try to ----- their standard of living to lead a better life.  
a. raise                      b. arise                      c. rise                      d. arouse
3. She is ----- about the project; she speaks about its benefits all the time.  
a. kind                      b. worried                      c. angry                      d. enthusiastic
4. The agricultural (equality- contribution- productivity -amount ) remained low by comparison with the same period five years ago. We need to increase it.
5. The new manager of the factory wants to know the reasons for the ( increase- profits- decline-loose ) of productivity to be able to solve the problems.
6. Nowadays, employees are mostly evaluated according to their ---- regardless of the number of years they have worked.  
a. importance                      b. experience                      c. efficiency                      d. sufficiency
7. The exams questions should.....in order to cover all aspects of the assessment.  
a. decrease                      b. include                      c. raise                      d. vary
8. You aren't working hard; you need to be more ----- .  
a. talkative                      b. productive                      c. negative                      d. successive
9. I read an important report on ----- the impact of advertising on children.  
a. assessing                      b. pressing                      c. aggressing                      d. blessing
10. The recent campaign against smoking has contributed to the ( increase- decline- reduceloose )of the percentage of smokers among the young people.
11. Energy bills have increased ----- this winter all over the world.  
a. significant                      b. significance                      c. significantly                      d. signify
12. Hard work ----- in success.  
a. results                      b. happens                      c. increases                      d. expects
13. The company is making ( produce -progress- decline-advanced )in all sectors. It has achieved a lot of profits.
14. You can ----- better if you study in a quiet environment.  
a. concentrate                      b. evaluate                      c. raise                      d. get distracted
15. The coach will begin meeting with the players to **[score- help-assess - achieve ]** their performance in the last round of the tournament.
16. When you make a change to the way you work, you need to ----- its advantages and disadvantages first.  
a. concentrate                      b. fabricate                      c. evaluate                      d. regulate

17. The government should try to (raise- reduce-decline-save ) awareness of people about the dangers of coronavirus. A lot of people lost their lives.
18. We should (raise- educe-decline-save ) money by spending a day among people to persuade them help charities.
19. The ministry of education use the latest (progress- communication - set-technology ) inside classrooms , including smart boards, to help students benefit a lot.
20. How do you usually----- ideas amongst a group of friends to get more information about something?
- a. rise                      b. mind                      c. brainstorm                      d. storm
21. I tried ----- my study time into twenty-minute periods and took breaks between them.
- a. continuing                      b. cutting                      c. dividing                      d. leaving
22. A/An (operation – experiment – process - illness) is a series of events or changes that happen naturally.
23. His broken leg is the direct (result – series – process – sequence) of his own carelessness.
24. Anees Mansour wrote a book about his (experiment-experiences- experience -trials ) when he travelled to Europe. He saw a different world.
25. Youth should (score- increase -assess - achieve ) their knowledge of the world around them. They should read a lot.
26. The shop has ( vary- various- variety- amount ) sizes of this jacket. You can find your needs.
27. There are a wonderful ( vary- various- variety- amount ) of clothes . You can find your needs.
28. The prices ( vary- various- variety- amount ) according to the quality of the products.
29. ( Procrastination-Punctuation -Irrigation -Addiction ) means to delay something important.
30. The (overall-public- private-every ) result is wonderful although we have made some mistakes.
31. Students should reach their schools ( in – on – at – of ) time to prepare themselves for their lessons.
32. Some students in the faculty of engineering want to (advice- brainstorm-attend- fetch ) some online experts about some difficult points in their graduation project.
33. Although it rains heavily in this area , the agricultural (equality- contribution- production -amounts ) is affected by the lack of manpower.
34. It is a difficult ( generation -operation -preparation -situation) to generate electricity from the the waves.
35. The company hopes that its new ( product-production - productive - producer) will sell very well.
36. The coach has decided to hold two training ( sessions – meetings-conferences-pioneers ) daily to raise their fitness.
37. We are having a ( brainstorming-productive-stressful-revising ) session next week to try to find some reasonable solutions to the problems we face in the research.
38. The cost of living has increased ( slightly- expensively-significantly-bravely ). A lot of people can't afford it.
39. Students should ( progress- vary- raise-assess)the places they study at to concentrate the best and got the most work done .
40. If you are productive , you will ( score -miss -achieve -fail) your goal easily .
41. The colour of this new car is(hopeless -hopeful -horrible – ordinary ) . I like it very much.
42. Does doing more than one ( task –work-contribution- achievement )at the same time make it harder for you to concentrate ?
43. The president has called for the (set-construct - building-creation ) of a special security force to target the rebels.
44. You should ( do – give- assess- make ) a change to the way you study to be productive.
45. There are a lot of sixteen to eighteen ( years- year's- year- years' ) students who will change their studying habits.
46. We all should have (googles-aims-target-purpose ) in life and make a plane to chieve them or our life will be in vain.
47. We should keep our ( stories- diaries- dairies-novels) secret, not to be seen by anyone we don't like. They are personel.
48. The (aim - increase-decline -interests) in marriage among youth nwadays is due to the rise of its costs. This will lead to a lot of social problems.



49. The members meet twice a month to (thank- brainstorm-tell -mention ) and set business goals for each project.

50. Scientists collect blood samples for ( assess- analysis-evaluate-search ) to know the causes of the spread of coronavirus.

## Exercises

### Lesson three, four and six

اولا الاسئلة الموضوعية التالية ( كل سؤال بدرجة )

### Choose the right answers:

1. Students should ( extract- log-affect- depend ) on themselves when they study. They should ask only advice.

2-Farmers water their crops (regularly – bitterly – disorderly – formerly) to grow well.

3. There are some important ( factories- factors- tips -diaries ) that affect the production process. We should study them all.

4. The commission has met to ( discussion- brainstorm-choice-mention ) about the designs presented for the logo of the feastival to choose the best.

5. At schools , teachers should stimulate their students by giving them pre-questions to (thank- brainstorm-believe-positive ) them.

5. The Egyptian Parliament will hold a special ( hour-session-meeting-forum ) this month to discuss the economic crisis.

6. In brainstorming sessions , students should talk about the pros and (upside-advantages-merits- cons ) of the given ideas.

7. I was happy to ( share – divide – eat – feed ) the taxi fare with another passenger. This made me save some money for my other needs.

8- The coach ( shared - divided - cut – hit ) the players into two groups. They played against each other.

9-We should understand the ( logical – illogical – logic – logically ) of doing some events to know why some people do some things.

10- I decided to ( do – make – give – spend ) the most difficult task first. It will make me optimistic.

11. Teachers should check that everyone is happy with the decisions they (do- give- make-divide) in a brainstorming decisions.

15. Hard work leads ( on- to- in – on ) success. We should work hard to susseed.

16. When you make a change in your life , you need to ( evaluate -know -see -recognise ) it .

17. Some students do courses in languages to (prove- improve-help- brainstorm ) the skill of speaking.

18. We should (do- divide-make-share ) a big change in our lives if we begin to suffer from chronic diseases.

19. We should try to ( rise- arise- arouse- raise ) our productivity levels to feel satisfied and achieve our goals.

20. When we work, we should take a (break- brake- broke- park ) between the work sessions to renew our energies.

21. When students renew their energies, their ( decision-concentration-assess-productive ) become better than before. They feel happy.

22. When I searched " pollution " on the internet , I found a lot of ( founding -found -findings - foundation ). It has a lot of kinds.

23. Traders should weigh the benefits and ( drawbacks- opinions-assess-logic ) of any product they sell to be able to continue selling it or stopping .

24. There is a (advantage -drawback- opinion-merit ) of our plan to increase our productivity . We should exclude it.

25. We should keep ( do – did- doing- to do ) exercises regularly to be fit.

26. The hunters ( sit- set- puts- did ) a trap inside the ground to be able to catch the dangerous lion.

27. Disease was an (inevitable -evitable -lively -procrastinated) consequence of poor living conditions.
- 28- I don't think they have a ( fact -unrealistic -realistic -fiction ) chance of winning.
- 29-There is one common ( errands -error -earrings - brand ) which stops students from being productive. It is to procrastinate.
- 30- The good student makes a study plan and never ( does -makes -procrastinates -achieves) his homework.
- 31.Prices(differs-vary-decrease-increase ) from a shop to another .You should wander among them before buying.
- 32.Education and health should be the ( best-priorities-motions-options) to the government. They should be given a complete support.
- 33.The manager should have a /an ( partial-part-overall-private) view subject before making the necessary decision.
34. Experience is a better guide for us than a deductive ( heart-logic-rational-enhance). It is very important to do all our jobs.
35. I decided to ( do – make – give – spend ) the most difficult task first.
- 36-Time management has a positive impact ( in – of – on – about ) my productivity.
- 37-Evaluate the effects to decide ( when -whether-weather -wither) to continue with the change or try something else .
- 38-Not to muddle on. You should make a study ( plan – pan – plane – plain )
- 39- As I am a cyclist , I have bought new ear ( plugs - bags - glasses - pugs )
- 40-Remember that your concentration ( leads -objects -tends -opposes) to reduce after 30 minutes.
- 41-You need to make changes if you want to increase your -----
- a) productive      b) productivity      c) producers      d) produces
- 42-Using less electricity will improve the ----- in your class .
- a) effective      b) effectiveness      c) efficiency      d) b & c
- 43- There is one common ( errands -error -earrings - brand ) which stops students from being productive. They exchange ideas well.
44. I bought a smart TV (advance- set- scraw- set ) to watch the matches of mpany faces a sharp (advance- profit- completion-decline ) in its profits. It needs a new plan to restore what it has lost.
46. The spokesman declared that there is a wonderful ( progress -profit- contribution- decline ) has been made in the political talks between the two presidents. They are happy.
47. Our company needs fresh eyes to( avoid-assess -help-vision ) its stradgy to be able to make up for its losses
- 48- I (sit- set- puts- did ) the table for dinner and my wife got the food on it . It is a wonderful thing to co operate
49. Teachers should ( mistake-decide-assess- make ) the students' results every month and tell their parents.
50. Parents should look after their kids and (bring on-rise-raise- see ) them well to be good citizens
51. Nowadays , the (drawbacks -technology-merits-advance) of communication develops so rapidly that we can't keep up with it
52. Most of us want to ( make -create-live- assess) a society where the human values predominate.
- 53.The government set up a lot of projects to (create-do-invent-make )more jobs for youth
54. ( Inventive-Creation- Vision-Genius ) of man , including his poetry, music and painting doesn't stop. Every day we find out new sources of it.
- 55.She was (rose – aroused – arose - raised) by her grandparents after her parents had died .
- 56member that our concentration tend to ( raise- increase -decline-go up ) after 30 minutes of beginning studying. We should take breaks to refresh our selves.
57. Ageing الشيخوخة is the natural (operation – recess – process – experience) of getting old.
58. It was a long and difficult (hostess – stress – recess – process) to build the bridge, but cars can use it now.
59. Students need to make changes of their study habits if they want to increase their ...
- a) productive      b) productivity      c) producers      d) produces

60. The government should ( interest- care- focus- look after ) on job-creating program to reduce employment.
61. There are different (copies- levels-layers-lawyers ) in the English course . You should choose the one that suits you.
62. Mary Cury , the famous physicist , achieved a high ( grade- mark- level-experiment ) of distinction. She was awarded the Noble prize for chemistry and physics.
63. My father works two shifts in the factory to ( prove - improve-decrease-meet ) our income to satisfy our needs.
64. Some people listen to you carefully, but they don't have the enough experience to give you any ( respond- solution-effects- causes )
65. The ( strong- situation - length -efficiency ) of this loudspeaker is 40% only . We should buy a modern one instead of it.
66. Our street cleaners are very ( strong- situaed - smart -efficient ) . They make our toen very healthy. They make great efforts.
67. My father hopes that we have a (quality- contributed- productive -amount ) agricultural session to achieve a lot of profits.
68. There is a wonderful (page- level- report-copy ) on Zamalik's win of the tournament this year. You will enjoy it a lot.
- 69.I think it will be a good ( process- operaton- structure-space ) for poor people to live in. It's comfortable.
- 70.We should advise our children not to spend too much time ( to play- play- playing-to playing ) vido games.
- 71.He used to talk proudly about his possessions. He... about how much money he had made.  
a. complained                      b. told                      c. boasted                      d. beat
- 72.This research was done ----- the request of the science teacher.  
a. from                      b. at                      c. in                      d. for
73. We should encourage our children to read a lot and make them do it as a ( custom- habit- traditional-prize )
74. We all have ( customs- habits- meals-prizes) that we do every day . We should develop the good ones and avoid the bad ones.
- 75-His parents' divorce had a negative ( affect - effect - action - act ) on me and my sisters.
- 76.There was a/an ..... in sales and the company gained a lot of profit.  
a. decline                      b. increase                      c. deterioration                      d. suggestion
77. I took a ten- ----- break to refresh my energy.  
a. minutes                      b. minutes'                      c. minute's                      d. minute
- 78.I usually have a thirty-minute walk every day; sport has a----effect on health.  
a. negative                      b. positive                      c. terrible                      d. rare
- 79.“You are doing well,” my coach said. “I’m sure you will carry ... achieving more success!”  
a. in                      b. on                      c. of                      d. at
- 80.Children need to be taught not to talk back to their parents.This means that children ...  
A weren't allowed to discuss issues.      B shouldn't be allowed to reply rudely.  
C were asked to stop making noise.      D. weren't allowed to say anything.
81. My father smiled ----- at me when I told him I had passed my exams.  
a. affectionately                      b. foolishly                      c. foolish                      d. affectionate
82. The prisoner was given a life ----- for his crimes.  
a. insistence                      b. sentence                      c. tolerance                      d. negligence
- 83.My wife is so nervous that she can ( do- give- send -create ) a fight out of nothing. Most people avoid her.
- 84-The balloon (raised - aroused - rose - arose) gently in the air. It is very light

85. The examiner marked the candidates' sheets to .....them.

- a. estimate                      b. appreciate                      c. assess                      d. deduce

86- The marks of the test.....according to the level of the student.

- a. lead                      b. vary                      c. distract                      d. switch off

87- Wasting people's time is one ..... of using social media.

- a. drawback                      b. merit                      c. strategy                      d. task

88. Teachers should encourage students to improve their .....

- a. procrastination                      b. analysis                      c. productivity                      d. permission

89. As he needed money, he was ..... to accept such a tiring job.

- a. forced                      b. stated                      c. mentioned                      d. let

90. .... is the process of getting better at doing something, or getting closer to finishing or achieving something.

- a. Efficiency                      b. Productivity                      c. Procrastination                      d. Progress



# Grammar

## THE CAUSATIVE USE OF (HAVE & GET)

الاستخدام السببي

### 1. Obligation verbs :

**Make +** المصدر + ( مفعول ) يجعل / يجبر / يرغم

- Teachers **make** their students **check** their answers.

**Choose:**

The police made the driver ( **paid- to pay-pay- paying** ) the fine.

- The student **was made to obey** the school rules ( **to +** ) **made** في المبني للمجهول نستخدم بعد

**Force+** المصدر + **to** + ( مفعول ) يجعل / يجبر / يرغم

**-cause** المصدر + **to** + ( مفعول ) يجعل / يسبب

The police **forced** the driver ( **paid- to pay-pay- paying** ) the fine.

- The strong wind **caused the trees to fall** in the streets

### 2. Permission verbs :

**1. Let +** ( مفعول ) + المصدر

- My father lets us ( **to go - go- going- went** ) to the cinema once a month.

**2. Allow or permit +** ( مفعول ) + **to +** المصدر

- My father allows us ( **to go - go- going- went** ) to the cinema once a month.

### 3. Persuading verbs :

**Have +** المصدر بدون **to** + ( مفعول عاقل ) يجعل / يقنع

**- get +** مصدر + **to** + ( مفعول عاقل )

**- persuade / convince** مصدر + **to** + مفعول + يقنع

- The teacher **had us do** some extra work today. ( **forced** )

- Please **get Yasser to help** you. ( **persuaded** )

- I **had the electrician look at** my broken light.

- The doctor **will have the nurse call** the patients.

- The teacher **had the students write** the answers on the whiteboard.

- I **persuaded my friends to go** to the cinema

### 4. Preventing verbs :

**- Stop +** مفعول + **from + v. +ing**

- The teacher **stopped the students from making noise**

- I **stopped my sister from playing** in the street.

**- Help +** مفعول + ( **to +** المصدر او **to understand or understand** )

- Ali helped me ( **to understand or understand** ) the difficult question.

( **get / have** ) + ( مفعول غير عاقل ) + **p.p**

نستخدم هذا التعبير ( **التصريف الثالث + المفعول + ( get ) have** ) لنقول ان شخص آخر قام بالفعل.



( الجملة تعني ان شخص اخر مثل النقاش هو من دهن البيت ) I had ( got ) my house painted

- I don't cut my hair. I **have the barber cut my hair.** (Active causative)
- I don't cut my hair. I **have my hair cut.** ( الحلاق قصه ) (Passive causative)
- The students **get their essays checked.** ( المعلم هو من قام بالنصحح )
- They will be **getting the system repaired** as quickly as they can.
- He **got his washing machine fixed.** ( الغني هو من قام بالاصلاح )

- في المثال السابق: نقصد أن شخص آخر غير الفاعل هو من يقوم بالحدث كما هو مكتوب امامه

- Do you usually **get your room cleaned?** No, I clean it myself

- قارن أيضا بين الجمل الآتية المستخدمة في المبني للمجهول و الاستخدام السببي في كل الأزمنة.

- He **has his teeth checked** twice a year (His teeth are checked twice a year.) مضارع بسيط
- We always **get our clothes washed.** (Our clothes are washed for us.)
- I **had my teeth checked** yesterday (My teeth were checked yesterday.) ماضي بسيط
- Did you have your meal prepared?
- Ali **is getting his car repaired.** (Ali's car is being repaired.) مضارع مستمر
- He **was having the house painted.** ( The house was being painted) ماضي مستمر
- John **will have his house painted.** (John's house will be painted) مستقبل بسيط
- She **has had the stairs cleaned.** ( The stairs have been cleaned) مضارع تام
- She **had had the dinner cooked.** ( The dinner had been cooked) ماضي تام
- I **must have my car mended.** (My car must be mended) الفعل في المصدر
- After I had had my hair cut , I had a shower.
- While I was getting my mobile fixed , I drank some coffee .

يمكن استخدام ( by ) مثل المبني للمجهول

- I'm having my homework checked by the teacher.
- He will get his car fixed by the mechanic .

- لاحظ الفارق بين الجمل التالية من حيث المعنى.

- I **cleaned my house.** (This means I cleaned it myself). أنا من قام بتنظيف المنزل
- I **had my house cleaned.** شخص آخر قام بتنظيف المنزل  
(If I paid someone to clean it) / (A cleaner cleaned my house)
- لا يوجد فارق في الاستخدام بين (have) و (get) سوى أن (have) تستخدم بشكل رسمي أكثر.
- I don't know how to repair cars, so I'm **having mine repaired** at the garage round the corner.
- كما أن (get) أكثر استخداما و شيوعا من (have) في الجملة الأمرية.
- I really must **get my eyes tested.** I'm sure I need glasses.
- Get your hair cut! It's too long.

Choose :

1. My teacher **(insisted (persisted )** that I **should do** the homework again.  
= The teacher made me do the homework again.
2. I **persuaded Ali to** study well = I **got Ali to study** well.
3. My mother **permitted = allowed me to play** on the computer  
= My mother **let me play** on the computer
4. It's impossible **to escape from** the prison. =The keepers **stop you from escaping.**

## Exercises

## Lesson one and two

اولا الاسئلة الموضوعية التالية ( كل سؤال بدرجة )

### 1. Choose the correct words :

- 1- Parents should ..... their children to limit the amount of time they spend using mobile phone  
a) get                      b) have                      c) let                      d) make
- 2- They should also get them ..... off their mobile phones when they go to sleep.  
a) turning                      b) turn                      c) turned                      d) to turn
- 3- They ..... ten students move into a house with a mobile phone mast in the garden.  
a) had                      b) has                      c) got                      d) get
- 4- I ( got - had - have - having ) Ali to go to the sports club with me, although he didn't want to go.
- 5- Mother had Shaimaa ( tidy - to tidy - tiding - to tidying ) her room before she went out.
- 6- Before the meeting, the manager always gets the reports ( to type - type - typed / typing. )
- 7- Dina ( allowed - make - has - does ) the flat cleaned every week
- 10- The PE teacher had us ( ran - run - to run - running ) around the playground four times .
- 11- If you don't know how to use the computer , ( let - make - have - get ) your son to help you
- 12- How often do you get your teeth ( check - to check - checking - checked ) at the dentist's.
- 13- We are eating in a restaurant tonight because our parents ..... our kitchen painted.  
a) had                      b) have                      c) are having                      d) have to
- 14- I can't use my bike because I am having it ( repaired - to repair - repairing - be repaired )
- 16- We don't always ( had - have - will have - are having ) our car washed.
- 17- My parents get the plants ( water - watering - to water - watered ) at the weekend.
- 18- I ( have - will have - am having - had ) my house decorated next week.
- 19- I must have my watch ( repairing - repairs - repair - repaired ).
- 20- I'll have someone ( decorate - decorated - decorating - decorates ) my flat.
- 21- She got someone ( paint - painted - to paint - painting ) the house.
- 22- She is having the computer ( to fix - fixes - fixed - fix ).
- 23- We are going to have the carpenter ( make - to make - made - makes ) some shelves for us.
- 24- I think you should have your doctor ( looking - look - to look - looked ) at that cut on your arm. It looks serious.
- 25- We got our neighbours ( look - looking - to look - looked ) after our dog while we were away.
- 26- We need to have our computer ( checked - checking - to check - check ) out for viruses.
- 27- I had to have my digital camera ( fixing - to fix - fixes - fixed ) after I dropped it in the water.
- 28- They had it ( to do - done - doing - does ) by the same person who decorated their old house
- 29- I had my car ( servicing - to service - serviced - service ) a fortnight ago
- 30- They couldn't ( get - have - make - do ) anyone to fix their burst pipes
- 31- He ( has had - had - is having - will have ) tickets sent to his home address yesterday
- 32- She didn't have time to get to the shops and ( get her film developed - develop her film - the film is developed - developing the film ).
- 33- Does your tooth still hurt? Yes, I have to get a dentist ( to look - look - looking - looks ) at it soon.
- 34- We usually ( make - get - have - help ) the bedroom redecorated every two years.
- 35- Sarah isn't making her own wedding dress; she ( is having - has had - had had - was having ) it made by a designer in Italy.
- 36- Have you ever had anything ( to steal - stole - stolen - stealing ) from your house?
- 37- Your hair is too long. You need to have it ( cut - cuts - cutting - to cut ).
- 38- I'm going to do my food shopping online and I'm going to have the food ( delivering - delivered - t deliver - delivers ) to my house.
- 39- If you can't see properly, you should ( have - make - do - take ) your eyes tested.
- 40- Are they going to paint the kitchen themselves or are they going to have it ( painting - paint - painted - to paint )?
- 41- We always get our clothes ( washed - to wash - washing - washes ).
- 42- I ( get - had - have - will have ) my teeth checked yesterday.
- 43- Did you have your meal ( to prepare - preparing - prepared - prepares )? -No, I didn't have it prepared. I prepared it myself.

44. I am going to have my car ..... this month.  
a) to wash                      b) washes                      c) wash                      d) washed
45. I ..... a new computer programme installed in my office now.  
a) had b) am having                      c) was having                      d) had had
46. Walid had his eyes ..... last week, and now he needs to wear glasses.  
a) testing                      b) tested                      c) test                      d) to test
47. Can I borrow your bike? I can't use mine because I'm .....  
a) having it repaired                      b) having to repair it                      c) having repaired it                      d) repair it
48. My mother usually gets me ..... my bedroom at the weekend.  
a) tidies                      b) tidy                      c) to tidy                      d) tidied
49. The manager ..... a technician install a new computer program.  
a) got                      b) had                      c) have                      d) asked
50. Ali is going to the stadium this afternoon . Let's get him ..... some tickets for next week's match.  
a) buy                      b) to buy                      c) bought                      d) buying
51. We don't have time to paint the room. We ..... it decorated by professionals.  
a) are getting                      b) are letting                      c) are allowing                      d) are making
52. I ..... the shopping delivered because it was very heavy.  
a) have                      b) am having                      c) will have                      d) had
53. Robert can't answer the phone now. He ..... his hair cut.  
a) has                      b) is having                      c) will have                      d) had
54. She had her wisdom tooth ..... That is why she was in such a bad mood.  
a) remove                      b) to remove                      c) removed                      d) removing
55. He's having the furniture moved to the new house ..... some workmen today  
a) with                      b) by                      c) on                      d) to
56. Yesterday I went to the optician's to ..... my eyes tested.  
a) have                      b) make                      c) allow                      d) permit
57. A friend of mine, who's an electrician, is going to .... my DVD player next week.  
a) repair                      b) repaired                      c) repairs                      d) repairing
58. I'm going to have my DVD player ..... next week by a friend of mine, who's an electrician.  
a) repair                      b) repaired                      c) repairs                      d) repairing
59. My car broke down, so I had to get a mechanic ..... it.  
a) repair                      b) repairs                      c) to repair                      d) repaired
60. I made my son ..... the windows before he could go outside to play.  
a) washes                      b) wash                      c) to wash                      d) washed
61. My son was made ..... the windows before he could go outside to play.  
a) washes                      b) wash                      c) to wash                      d) washed
62. Ali stopped at the petrol station to .....  
a) have filled the tank                      b) have the tank filled                      c) fill the tank                      d) have to fill the tank
63. I spilled some tomato sauce on my suit coat. Now I need to get my suit .....  
a) cleaned                      b) cleans                      c) have cleaned                      d) to clean
64. I won't go! You can't ..... me!  
a) has                      b) make                      c) allow                      d) forced
- 65- Abdullah asked the painter ( **painted - paint - to paint - painting** ) his house last week.
- 66- Tarek has his photos ( **print - printed - prints - printyng** ) after he takes them.
- 67- When my cousins were in England, They had some money ( **sent - send - sends - sending** ) by my uncle.
- 68- Parents should ( **get - have - let - make** ) their children to limit the amount of time they spend using mobile phone
- 69- We don't always ( **had - have - will have - are having** ) our car washed.
- 70- They should get them ( **turning - turn - turned - to turn** ) off their mobile phones when they go to sleep.
- 71- They had ten students ( **move - to move - moved - moving** ) into a house with a mobile phone mast in the garden.
- 72- They had the mobile phone mast ( **turning - turned - turn - to turn** ) on.

- 73- Scientists believe we should ( be - do - have - got ) mobile phone masts installed in high or remote areas.
- 74- I can't ( make - cause - force - allow ) her change her mind.
- 75- Don't ( let - make - have - allow ) anyone to deceive you.
- 76- It's probably a good idea for people who live close to mobile phone masts to ( get - give - go - got ) their health checked frequently.
- 77- Adel asks someone to fix his computer. Adel ( has it fixed - has fixed it - have fixed it - have it fixed ).
- 78- Fareeda got her bad tooth pulled out ( from - by - with - on ) the dentist.
- 79- The park manager wants to ( had - have - has - got ) the plants watered every day.
- 80- I ( hadn't - didn't have - haven't - don't have ) my hair cut yesterday.
- 81- I ( has - have - got - get ) my car checked before I left the garage last week.
- 82- I ( have - will have - am having - had ) my house decorated next week.
- 83- He always ( gets - has - having - getting ) his sister to wash his clothes.
- 84- I will have my car ( mended - to mend - have mended - was mending ) tomorrow.
- 85- The teacher ( got - caused - had - allowed ) us copy the notes from the blackboard.
- 87- Wait there and I'll ( have - get - let - make ) Yasser to help you with those heavy bags.
- 90- Yesterday, we ( have had - have - have to - had to have ) our roof repaired after the storm.

### ثانياً الاسئلة الموضوعية التالية ( كل سؤال بدرجتان )

- I opened the storeroom and found that we had mice..... around the cabinets.  
a) runs                      b) ran                      c) to run                      d) running
- My husband hates housework; I can never get him..... the dishes!  
a) wash                      b) to wash                      c) to washing                      d) washes
- She had me help her . Had means ( persuaded - delivered - told - asked ).
- I get my students ( to waste - waste - not waste - not to waste ) so much time.
- I usually ( make my hair - have cut my hair - get my hair - have my hair cut ) once a month.
- You can ( printing your name - have printed your name - get your name printed - get printed your name ) on a T-shirt in that shop.
- I'm eating less than usual as I don't want to..... more weight.  
a. allow                      b. promise                      c. lose                      d. gain
- Ali got his credit card .....  
a. change                      b. to change                      c. changing                      d. changed
- Wait there and I'll.....someone to help you with those bags. "  
a. have                      b. get                      c. let                      d. make
- Leila usually..... twice a year.  
a. checks her teeth                      b. get her teeth checked                      c. has her teeth checked                      d. has checked her teeth
- Wait there and I get Yasser ....you with those bags.  
a. being helped                      b. to helping                      c. to help                      d. help
- My father. . ..... me tidy my room his morning.  
a. caused                      b. has                      c. had                      d. got

### Test unit six

### أولاً الاسئلة الموضوعية التالية ( كل سؤال بدرجته )

- She spent a considerable ( mount - count - discount - amount ) of money on clothes.
- I have been working all day , but I feel as if I ( chained - achieved - charged - doing ) nothing.
- She stayed in the job for 5 years, ( winning - gaining- beating -earning ) valuable experience.
- Starting one task and then stopping to do some thing else is called -----  
a) presentation                      b) procrastination                      c) contribution                      d) communication
- You need to be realistic about your dreams. The opposite of realistic is.....  
a) real                      b) creative                      c) really                      d) imaginary

6- None can deny that death is -----

- a) vital                      b) inevitable                      c) evitable                      d) procrastinated

7- The police do not know the ..... of the accident in the street yesterday.

- a challenge                      b reason                      c cause                      d benefit

8-He ( gets - has - having - getting ) his sister to wash his clothes

9-I will have my car (mended - to mend - have known - was knowing) tomorrow.

10-I get my daughter (read - have read -reading - to read) the exam questions carefully.

**Read the passage then answer the questions:**

My name is Sally. Last week, I had a very bad day. It was really a nightmare! I had a job . Interview . One morning but I forgot to set the alarm clock. I overslept and couldn't have a shower or breakfast. I went to the garage ing on my shoes and setting my hair at the same timcar wouldn't start, and I was only able to make it work at the third time I trific was awful and I arrived at the parking garage 5 minutes before the interview. Luckily I found a spot, but a guy in a red Mercedes tried to take it. I cut him off and managedto put my car there and - of course - he didn't like it, he complained not in a nice way and I had to tell hit I think of people like him.

was so nervous that I didn't notice the keys were still in the car and locked it. I didn't have teal with it at that moment, so I rushed to arrive for the interview on time and guess who the interviewer was: the guy I met at the parking garage! I wish I hadn't gotten up today.

**11.**Why did the writer oversleep?

- a) She forgot about the interview.                      b) She didn't have an alarm clock.  
c) The alarm clock didn't go off.                      d) She didn't set the alarm clock.

**12.**Sally managed to put her car in the parking spot as \_\_\_\_.

- a) She was late for the interview.                      b) She overslept.  
c) She blocked the man's way.                      d) She didn't have time at that moment.

**13.**The underlined word 'slammed' probably means -----.

- a) fell                      b) ran                      c) hit                      d) shut

**14.**We understand from the passage that Sally talked to the man \_\_\_\_\_.

- a)politely                      b) nicely                      c) persuasively                      d) harshly

**15.**What two things did Sally do at the same time?

- a) putting on her shoes    b) putting on her clothes    c) setting her hair                      d) both a & c

**16.** How would you feel after a day like that?

- a) relaxed                      b) convenient                      c) miserable                      d) lucky

**17.**What do you thk happened at the interview?

- a)She was accepted                      b) She was treated kindly  
c) she was rewarded                      d) She got the job

**18.**What could be the best title for this passage ?

- a) a suitable parking    b) bad behaviour                      c) a job interview                      d) a sad experience

**2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Plants have been used for treating illnesses since primitive times. Paintings in the tombs of the pharaohs show that plants were being used by the Ancient Egyptians for medicinal purposes. Today, some modern drugs are still based on natural herbs. Aspirin, for example, is based on the bark of the willow tree.

Natural remedies are attracting increasing attention all over the world. The advantage of herbal medicine is that the whole of the plant can be used: the powerful substance in the plant cures the-illness while the contents of the rest of the plant may help to prevent any harmful side effects. In this way herbal medicines may be safer than chemical ones.

Garlic is just one herb which has been used throughout the world as a cure for diseases as it is used to treat hair problems. Similarly, henna, which is known to be good for the hair, can also be used in the treatment of cancer .

If you pay a visit to a herbalist shop in Cairo, you will be struck by the different colours and smells. There are jars full of tree barks, roots, powders, oils and spices. The customer



enters the shop and explains his symptoms to the herbalist, who will take notes, study medical reports and check his reference books before writing out a prescription. However, eighty per cent of those cent of those who consult a herbalist have already been to a doctor. As a result of the worldwide interest in herbal medicines ,Egypt has set aside 50,000 acres of land in Beni Suef and Minya for the cultivation of herbs with medicinal properties. If this experiment is successful, lots of countries may import natural hers from Egypt in the near future.

**Choose the correct answer:**

19. Natural remedies are attracting attention because they.....

- a) have side effects    b) are used in Egypt    c) can treat a lot of diseasesd) are exported from Egypt

20. Garlic is on example of .....

- a) Natural remedies    b) artificial herbs    c) chemical medicines    d) modern drugs

21. .... of those who consult a herbalist have already been to a doctor.

- a) No one    b) Most    c) Very few    d) All

22. 10. The best title for the passage is

- a) Herbal medicine    b)Modern drugs    c) The herbalist    d) Egypt herbs

23. A herbalist writes out a prescription..... checking his reference books

- a) after    b) during    c) while    d) before

24. Egypt is expected to ..... natural herbs in the nearuture.

- a) import    b) buy    c) export    d) manufacture

25. How many examples of herbal medicines are there in the passage?

- a) four    b) five    c) six    d) seven

26. How may the worldwide interest in herbal medicine benefit Egypt?

- a) via exporting goods    b) through selling goods  
c) By importing goods    d) By giving goods

**ثانيا الاسئلة الموضوعيه التاليه ( كل سؤال بدرجتان)**

27. Which sentence is correct?

- a. Mona says, "I'm making a cake."    b. Mona says "I'm making a cake."  
c. Mona says; "I'm making a cake. "    d. Mona says. "I'm making a cake."

28. Which of the following sentences is complete?

- a. He is wise that honest    b. He is wise honest  
c. He is wise and honest    d. He honest wise

29-I get my students ( to waste – wasted – not waste – not to waste) so much time .-

30- Don't ( let – make – have – allow ) anyone to deceive you.

**Choose the correct answers:**

31. Citizenship means that all citizens have the same rights and duties.

- ا- المواطنة هي ان يتساوى أبناء الوطن ا حقوق و ما عليهم من واجبات.  
ب-الوطنية هي ان يتسا أبناء الوطن الواحد فيمقوق و ما عليهم من واجبات .  
ج-المواطنة هي ان يتساوى أبناء الوطن الواحد فيما لهم من حقوق و ما عليهم من ديون .  
د-المواطنة هي ان يتساوى أبناء الوطن الواحفيا لهم من حقول و ما عليهم من واجبات

32.Religions and civilizations dialogue opens the door to close the gap between western and eastern culture.

- ا- يفتح محادثة الديانات و الحضارات الباب لانهاء الفجوة بين الثقافة الشرقية و الغربية  
ب- يفتح حوار الديانات و الحضارات الباب لتوسيع الفجوة بين الثقافة الشرقية و الغربية  
ج-يفتح حوار الديانات و الحضارات الباو بين الثقافة الشرقية و الغربية -  
د- يفتح حوار الديانات و الحضارات الباب لانهاء الفجوة بين الزراعة الشرقية و الغربية  
٣٣ كلنا متحدون مسامون ومسيحيون في حب و طننا الغالى مصر

a)We are all united Muslims and Christians in hating our dear country Egypt.

b)We are all united Muslims aChristians in loving our deer country Egypt.

c)We all united Muslims and Christ in loving our dear country Egypt.

d)We are all united Muslims and Christians in loving our dear country Egypt.

٣٤ -إن تحديد النسل و تنظيم الأسرة يؤدي إلى رفع مستوى المعيشة ووضع حد لمشاكلنا الحالية

a)Birth control and family planning will lead to rise living standard and put an end to our

current problems.

b)Birth control and family plannin

c)Birth control and family planning will lead to raising living standard and put an end to our current problems.

c)Birth control and family planning will lead to raising living standard and puting an end to our current problems.

ثالثا الاستثله المقاليه التاليه ( كل سؤال بدرجتان )

## **The Novel**

35- Do you think Pip enjoyed the dinner at Mr Jaggers' house? Why?

36. Mr Jaggers was generous. Explain.

رابعا الاستثله المقاليه التاليه ( اربع درجات )

**37-Write six lines on the following topic:**

Working hard leads to success.

## Chapter 6

A few days afterwards, I was invited to dinner at Mr **Jaggers**' house with **Herbert Pocket**, **Startop** and Bentley **Drummle**. Mr **Jaggers** lived in a large, gloomy building, not far from his office. We all sat down at a big table. There was plenty for everyone to eat and drink, but Mr **Jaggers** kept everything at his side, and served us himself.

When he saw **Drummle**, he immediately asked me who he was.

'That is **Bentley Drummle**,' I replied. 'So, **Bentley Drummle** is his name, is it?'

he said. Mr **Jaggers** thought about this information for a moment before saying, 'I like the look of him!' Mr **Jaggers** spent a lot of time looking at **Drummle**. He talked to **Drummle** for a long time, and I heard **Drummle** **boasting** that he was much stronger than **Startop** and me. We were both annoyed, and **Startop** and I found ourselves talking boastfully as well. Our conversation became a **competition** to show who had the best skills. Mr **Jaggers** seemed to enjoy our talk as a form of **entertainment**. But I didn't enjoy it at all. I don't know why I said some of the things I did, but being among these people seemed to make me **behave** that way.

Just then, a woman of about forty entered the room. She was tall and thin, with pale eyes and long hair, and she gave Mr **Jaggers** an **anxious** look as she put more food on the table. She seemed to be worried that Mr **Jaggers** would say something bad about the food. He introduced her as **Molly**, his **housekeeper**.

'Now, if you gentlemen want to see some real strength, show them your wrists, **Molly**!' Mr **Jaggers** continued. She pulled up her **sleeves** and showed them to us. One of her wrists had terrible scars on it; it must have been cut badly in the past.

'I have never met a man or a woman with stronger hands than **Molly**,' Mr **Jaggers** said.

'They are **remarkable**! Don't you just think so?' We all took turns to look at her arms.

Then, Mr **Jaggers** thought that **Molly** was getting too much attention, so he told her to leave the room again. 'At half-past nine, gentlemen,' said Mr **Jaggers**, 'we need to finish. Please make good use of your time here.' Until that time, **Drummle** continued to boast about things he had done, which Mr **Jaggers** seemed to encourage. However, when **Drummle** left the house with **Startop**, **Drummle** realised that he no longer had an **enthusiastic** audience for his boasting, and the two started to **argue**.

Before leaving, I told Mr **Jaggers** that I did not like **Drummle** at all. He advised me to keep away from him and then he said good night.

Fortunately, however, **Drummle** finished his education with Mr **Matthew Pocket** soon afterwards and returned home, to my great relief. A few weeks later, a letter arrived from **Biddy**.

She wrote:

*Dear Mr **Pip**,*

*I am writing to you at the request of Mr **Joe Gargery** to let you know that he is going to be in London and would be very glad to see you. He will arrive at nine o'clock tomorrow morning and hopes that this will be a good time for you. I am sure that you will be happy to see him because you always had a good heart. Your poor sister is much the same as when you left. We talk about you every day and think about what you are saying and*

doing.

Yours **sincerely,**

**Biddy**

I wished that I could pay **Joe** not to come. He was my friend, but I was ashamed of him now. He wanted to visit me at **Barnard's** Inn, where I still had lodgings with **Herbert**. It was lucky, I thought, that he was not visiting me at my tutor's home in **Hammersmith**. I didn't want to introduce him to everyone there. Early one morning, **Joe** arrived at my **lodgings**. He would not sit down. He looked very uncomfortable and he remained standing. He held on to his hat nervously. He seemed anxious not to do or say the wrong thing, but I was **annoyed**. If only he would not call me 'Sir' so often!

We ate breakfast with **Herbert**, who tried to help **Joe** to feel comfortable. But **Joe** coughed too much, sat too far away from the table, and dropped food everywhere. It was only when **Herbert** left for work, and we were alone, that I found out why he had come. 'Miss **Havisham** wishes to see you, Sir,' **Joe** said. 'And she wants you to know that **Estella** has come home. I hoped that **Joe** could not see how I felt.

'**Pip**, my dear friend,' he said, **affectionately**. 'I wish you well!'

Then he left. A few minutes later, I was sorry that I had been so unfriendly to **Joe**. I hurried outside, hoping to call him back, but it was too late. I could not see him anywhere. I decided to go home the following day.

Although I thought of staying with **Joe**, I told myself that a room would not be ready for me at the blacksmith's. I told myself that it would be better for **Joe** if I stayed at a hotel instead, so I found one near Miss **Havisham's** house. As I was waiting to leave London on the coach, I saw two convicts standing nearby. They wore **leg-irons** and **handcuffs**; their guard had a gun. I recognised one of the convicts immediately. It was the man who had given me a shiny new coin at the village inn a long time ago. I hoped that he would not recognise me. After all, I was older now, and dressed like a gentleman! When the coach arrived, the two convicts and their guard climbed up, sitting just behind me. I tried not to look at them, but I could not avoid their conversation.

'When I first went to prison,' I heard the first convict saying. 'I was only inside for a few months. When I was told that I could leave, another convict, **Magwitch**, asked me to help him. He wanted me to find a boy who had helped him, years before, when he had escaped and was hiding on the marshes. **Magwitch** didn't know me then, but he gave me a shiny new coin to give to that boy, if I ever found him. And I did!'

'So the convict I gave the food and file to, all those years ago, is called **Magwitch**!' I thought. 'Huh!' said the second convict. '**Magwitch** trusted you then, did he?'

'Yes, he did,' the first convict replied. 'But he didn't know me very well.'

'**Magwitch** got **a life sentence** for that escape, you know!' the guard said.

Memories came back to haunt me, and I was scared. I got off the coach as soon as I could, and walked the rest of the way. It was late when I arrived at the hotel. I was feeling very tired, but I didn't sleep very well that night.

## Chapter Six

1. Do you like Mr Jaggers' character? Why?

- Yes, he was generous as he Pip invited Herbert Pocket, Startop and Bentley Drummle to dinner. He kept the secrets of his clients (Molly and Magwitch)

2. Is it natural to boast about your own skills in front of others? Why?

- No, one should be modest متواضع and not boast one's skills in front of others

- Yes, sometimes one has to boast one's skills when they see others do.

3. Do you think that Mr Jaggers is someone that Pip can trust? Why?

- Yes, as he was an experienced lawyer who was very keen to keep the secrets of his clients.

4. If you were Pip, would you be ashamed of your friend Joe? Why?

- Yes, because the Pockets, Startop and Bentley Drummle would know that my brother-in-law was just a blacksmith.

- No, because he was the only one that treated me well when I was young and did his best to protect me from my sister. I would feel indebted to him all my life.

5. Why do you think that Mrs Havisham wanted Pip to know that Estella had returned home?

- She wanted Pip to get attracted to Estella so that she would break his heart.

6. What might have happened if one of the convicts had recognised Pip in London?

- Now that Pip was a gentleman, he would have felt more ashamed of himself if people had known he was related to criminals.

**Or** Pip might have got into trouble with the police for helping an escaped convict.

7. Why do you think Pip hoped that Joe could not see how he felt when he knew that Estella had come home?

- Pip was deep in love with Estella, so he didn't want Joe to know that he wanted to return to his hometown just to see his lover "Estella".

8. Do you think that Pip was right not to like Drummle? Why?

- Yes, because Drummle used to boast too much. He loved Estella and married her to be said that he married a beautiful woman.

9. Why do you think Mrs Havisham was right to try to adopt some children?

- She might have wanted to adopt children as she suffered from loneliness.

10- What do you think of Mr Jaggers? Or do you think Mr Jaggers is a good person? Why?

- He appeared to be a bad person as his servant was scared of him. He encouraged his guests to boast and that made them in conflict and he enjoyed that. He was conceited as he thought that criminals couldn't rob his house but in the end this changed.

Or He was experienced as a lawyer and kept the secrets of his clients as Molly and Magwitch.

11- Do you think Pip enjoyed the dinner at Mr Jaggers' house? Why?

- No. He doesn't like the way Drummle behaves, or the way he himself behaves in Drummle's company.

12. Mr Jaggers was generous. Explain.

- Mr Jaggers invited Pip, Herbert Pocket, Startop and Bentley Drummle to dinner at his house. There was plenty for everyone to eat and drink, and Mr Jaggers served them himself.

13- To what extent did the relationship between Pip and Joe change after being rich and going to London? Or how has the relationship between Pip and Joe changed?

- In the village Pip loved Joe so much and considered him his friend. At the same time Joe loved him a lot and wished his wife hit him not Pip. After going to London Pip became another person he wished that he didn't see Joe and when he met him he treated him badly.

14- Why do you think Pip did not sleep well after meeting the two convicts?

- Maybe he was thinking of Magwitch and the life sentence he got.

15- Why do you think Joe called Pip 'Sir'?

- Because Joe now views Pip as a gentleman and feels uncomfortable with him. He feels that there is great difference between them. Maybe he thought that Pip felt ashamed of him.



**16-Do you think that Pip wants to live a different life because he wants to be like the rich people he has met or does he really believe he'll only be happy if he changes his life?**

**- I think that his visit to Miss Havisham and meeting Estella made him see a different life and different people. He was ashamed of himself and his poverty. He wanted to be rich like them and to live as they lived. He changed his opinion and didn't want to be a blacksmith. He wanted to be admired by the pretty girl Estella.**

# The basic skills

## What is an essay?

- An essay is a group of paragraphs written about a single topic **موضوع محدد** and a central main idea.
- It must have at least three paragraphs, but a five-paragraph essay is a common length for academic writing. **كتابه اكاڊميه**
- Essays can be formal as well as informal. Formal essays are generally academic in nature and tackle serious topics. Informal essays are more personal and often have humorous elements. **عاصر فكاھيه**
- It is flexible **مرن** because you can use a narrative style or structured paragraphs.

## - What is the structure of the essay ? **تركيب وبناء المقال**

- An essay's structure should consist of a beginning (or introduction **مقدمه**), a middle (or body), and an end (or conclusion **الخاتمه**).

## The Introduction **المقدمه**

- This is the first paragraph of an essay. - It explains the topic with general ideas. **افكار عامه**
- It is usually five to ten / six to eight sentences.
- It catches the reader's interest. **يجذب انتباه القاري**
- It gives the general topic of the essay.
- It gives background information **معلومات اساسيه** about the topic.
- It states **يحدد** the main point (the thesis statement **الجملة الرئيسيه**) of the essay.
- The introduction paragraph includes a thesis statement **الجملة الرئيسيه** and hook **الجملة الجاذبه** / the topic, thesis, and main ideas..
- The thesis statement should be restated **يعيد صياغه** in the conclusion. **المقدمه**
- To make an introductory paragraph interesting for the reader, you can include interesting facts **حقائق شيقه** or statistics **احصائيات**, a personal story or example and an interesting quotation. **اقتباس مثير**

## - Any of the following will make an introduction weak: **ضعيف**

1. It doesn't give enough information about the topic or gives too much information about it.
2. It talks about too many different topics.
3. It does not state a clear thesis. **لا تذكر فكره رئيسيه واضحه**

## - A thesis statement **الجملة الرئيسيه**

- It is a sentence that states what will be explained in the essay.
  - You share the thesis (claim) for the first time in an essay at the end of the introduction.
  - It should be put in the introduction and the conclusion. **الخاتمه**
  - It is the most general sentence in an essay. - It should have one sentence.
  - It can be compared to a topic sentence, which gives the main idea of a paragraph.
  - It is a road map **خريطه الطريق** for the whole essay. It shows what you have to say and the points you will use to support your ideas.
1. The paragraphs in the main body of an essay should always explain the thesis statement..
  2. Each paragraph in the main body should discuss one part of the thesis.

## A hook **الجملة الجاذبه للقاري**

- A hook is an opening a sentence that captures (grab) the reader's attention **انتباه القاري**. It is the first component **مكون** of an essay introduction.

## The main body **جسم الموضوع (الاساس)**

1. These the paragraphs explain and support the thesis statement and come between the introduction and the conclusion.
2. There must be one or more paragraphs in the main body of an essay.
3. Body paragraphs are the middle paragraphs in the essay.
4. The body paragraphs are used to develop your topic and prove your thoughts **الافكار**
7. An essay usually has at least three body paragraphs, and these will be the arguments, evidence **دليل**, or topics that support your thesis.

8. Each body paragraph will begin with a topic sentence which introduces its topic. All of the information in that paragraph will be clearly and logically related to that topic sentence (thesis) **مطابقاً مرتبطاً**

## The Conclusion

## الخاتمة

1. This is the last paragraph of an essay.
2. It summarizes (restates **يعيد صياغته**) the thesis and the supporting ideas of the essay
3. The conclusion is the final paragraph in an essay. It has three purposes::
  - It signals **تشير الى** the end of the essay.
  - It reminds the reader of your main points. You can do this in two ways:
  - Summarise your subtopics **نقاط فرعية**. - Paraphrase your thesis.

## The Types of the essay:

### 1. Narrative Essay (Telling a story) **المقال القصصي – الروائي**

- The writer tells a story about a real-life experience.
- A narrative essay isn't strictly divided **لا تقسم** into introduction, body, and conclusion

### 2. Descriptive Essay (Painting a picture) **المقال الوصفي (رسم صورة)**

1. A descriptive essay paints a picture with words. .
2. A writer might describe a person, place, object, or even memory

### 3. Expository Essay (Just the facts) **مقال سرد الحقائق**

1. The expository essay is an informative piece of writing that presents a balanced analysis **تحليل متوازن** of a topic.
2. The writer explains a topic, with facts, statistics **احصائيات**, and examples

### 4. Persuasive Essay (Convince me) **المقال الإقناعي**

1. The goal of the persuasive essay is to convince **يقنع** the reader to accept the writer's point of view **وجهة نظر** or recommendation. **توصية**

### 5. Textual analysis essay **مقال التحليل النصي**

- In a textual analysis essay, you don't just present information on a topic.

### 6. Rhetorical analysis essay **التحليل البلاغي**

- A rhetorical analysis looks at a persuasive text **ص مقتع** (e.g. a speech, an essay, a political cartoon). The introduction of a rhetorical analysis presents the text, your thesis statement **الجملة الرئيسية**; the body comprises **يتكون من** the analysis **التحليل** itself; and the conclusion

### 7. Literary analysis essay **مقال التحليل الأدبي**

- A literary analysis essay presents a close reading of a work of literature **الأدب** —e.g. a poem or novel—to explore **يكتشف** it

### 8. Critical analysis essay **المقال النقدي**

- It is a literature-based essay , the writer makes an argument **نقاش** about what the author is trying to say.

### 9. Argumentative essays **التحليل النقدي**

- An argumentative essay presents an extended, evidence **دليل**-based **argument مبني**. Your aim is to convince **يقنع** the reader of your thesis using evidence

### 10. Compare and contrast essay **المقارنه والتباين**

- A compare and contrast essay places two things side-by-side and points out the similarities **التشابه** and differences between them-

### 11. Cause and effect essay **السبب والنتيجة**

- It aims to show the relationship **العلاقة** between things—in particular, how something was influenced by something else.

### 12. Definition Essay **التعريف**

- It defines different things, ideas, and perceptions.

### 13. Research Essay **مقال بحثي**

- It revolves a research question that answer **س** some specific question through a research of the relevant literature. **مختص بالأدب**

## **The Five steps of the Writing Process**

### **1. Previewing** الكتاب المسبقه (Think and Decide) ):

- Decide on a topic to write about. - Consider who will read your work. - Brainstorm الأفكار ideas about the subject.

### **2. Research (If needed) ):**

### **3. Drafting (Write) ):** مسوده

### **4. Revising (Make it better):** اعادة Read what you wrote

### **5. Editing and Proofreading (Make it correct) )**

### **What should a good essay avoid?**

- A good essay should avoid slang اللغة العاميه, brevity الاختصار, dignified التفخيم style and personal touch.

## **FIVE QUALITIES( characteristics ) OF GOOD WRITING**

### **FOCUS** التركيز

An essay should have a single clear central idea. Each paragraph should have a clear topic sentence..

### **DEVELOPMENT** تطوير الفكره

Each paragraph should support or expand the central idea of the paper. The idea of each paragraph should be explained and illustrated through examples, details, and descriptions.

### **UNITY** الوحده (فكره واحده)

Every paragraph in an essay should be related to the main idea. Each paragraph should stick to its main point.

### **COHERENCE** الترابط

An essay should be organized logically, flow smoothly, and "stick" together. In other words, everything in the writing should make sense to a reader..

### **CORRECTNESS** دقه اللغة

An essay should be written in generally correct standard English, with complete sentences, and be relatively error-free.

## **Signaling words / Transition words** كلمات الروابط

### **1. Time/order:** الوقت- الترتيب

- at first, eventually, finally, first, firstly, in the end, in the first place, lastly, later, next, second, secondly, to begin with.

### **2. Contrast/opposite ideas:** التناقض

- but, despite, in spite of, even so, however, in contrast, in spite of this, nevertheless, on the contrary, on the other hand, still, whereas, yet

### **3. Comparison/similar ideas:** المقارنه والتشابه

- In comparison, in the same way, similarly

### **4. Condition:** الشرط

- in that case, then, if

### **5. Cause and effect:** السبب والنتيجه

- accordingly, as a result, because, consequently, for this reason, hence, in consequence, in order to, owing to this, since, so, therefore, thus.

### **6. Addition:** الاضافه

- apart from this, as well as, besides, furthermore, in addition, moreover, nor, not only ... but also, too, what is more.

### **7. Generalization:** التعميم

- as a rule, for the most part, generally, in general, normally, on the whole, in most cases,

### **8. Examples:** الامثله

- for example, for instance, such as, thus, as follows

### **9. Stating the obvious:** تحديد السابق

- after all, as one might expect, clearly, it goes without saying, naturally, obviously, of course

### **10. Attitude:** الرأي

- admittedly, certainly, fortunately, luckily, oddly enough, undoubtedly, unfortunately

### **11. Summary/conclusion:** تلخيص - النهايه

- finally, in brief, in conclusion, in short, overall, so, then, to conclude, to sum up

**12. Explanation/equivalence:** التفسير

- in other words, namely, that is to say, this means, to be more precise, to put it another way

**13. Support:** الدعم

- actually, as a matter of fact, in fact, indeed

**14. Emphasis:** التأكيد

- chiefly, especially, in detail, in particular

### **Paragraph Writing**

- The paragraph is a (series) of sentences about a single (specific) topic . A good paragraph consists of 5-7 sentences. - A paragraph starts on a new line. Sometimes, paragraphs are indented بادئته or numbered.

- The "perfect paragraph" will start with a topic sentence. Ans three supporting sentences , end with a concluding sentence..

### **The Three Parts of a Paragraph**

#### **1. The Topic Sentence**

- The topic sentence is the first sentence in a paragraph. It is introductory,.

#### **2. The Supporting Sentences :**

- This is where the detailed sentences go to support the main idea in the topic sentence.) .

#### **3. The concluding Sentence**

- The concluding sentence should be very similar to the topic sentence. It is the last sentence of the paragraph.

### **Major Types of Paragraphs**

#### **1. Descriptive Paragraph**

- A descriptive paragraph is one that is describing a person, place, thing, animal, theme or idea to the reader.

#### **Sample Descriptive paragraph**

Watson and the Shark is a painting by John Singleton Copley. In the foreground مقدمة of the painting, one naked عاري man is being attacked by a huge gray shark in the cold and choppy seawater. One small overloaded ثقل rowboat is near the naked man and the frightening shark. There are nine horrified men in this rowboat. They are trying to rescue the naked man. One young man takes a long spear and wants to kill the shark. Some people are reaching for his hand, and some are throwing a rope for him to catch. In the background of the painting, under the dark and cloudy sky, there are many ships stopping in the stormy harbor. The whole painting makes people feel tension and fear.

#### **2. Narrative Paragraph**

- It helps tell the story and keeps the story moving.

#### **Sample Narrative Paragraph**

This past weekend I had the time of my life. First, Friday night, I had my best friend over and we made a delicious, mouth-watering pizza. After we ate, we had a friendly video game competition. On Saturday, my dad took us out on the boat. The weather was perfect and the water was warm. It was a great day to go for a swim. Later that night, we went to the movies. We saw an action packed thriller and ate a lot of popcorn. Finally, on Sunday, we rode our bikes all over town. By the end of the day, my legs were very tired. I only hope that next weekend can be as fun as this one.

#### **3. Persuasive Paragraph**

- In it the writer is giving his own opinion on a certain subject or topic

#### **Sample Persuasive Paragraph:**

The best vacation is a trip to the beach. There is a lot to do at the beach. You can go swimming, build a sandcastle, or maybe even go surfing. The beach is very relaxing. Many people enjoy listening to the sound of the ocean and lying in the sun. When you plan your next vacation, be sure to remember that the beach is your best choice.

#### **4. Explanatory Paragraph**

- An explanatory paragraph offers the reader information on a certain subject.



## Sample Explanatory Paragraph

Pat Mora's poem, —Echoes,|| vividly describes the meaning and mood of the poem by using sensory images. At the beginning of the poem it was talking about white wine and cool dresses which give you a feel of upper class elegance. Yet when it went from the white wine to the white uniform it changed the class of the hostess and the maid. When it mentioned that the maid's smile wavered when the speaker started to talk to her, it showed the level of amazement that the maid felt. However, the end, when it talks about hearing the cruel comment of —just drop the cups and plates / on the grass.....

## Exercise on Essay (paper) Writing

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 .An essay is.....

- a. a series of sentences about one main topic.    b. a series of paragraphs about one main idea, or point.  
C. the sentence that expresses the main point, or idea, of a paragraph  
d. an excellent way to get a lot of information down on paper.

2 .How many paragraphs should you have in your essay?

- a. Two paragraphs are enough for being called an essay.  
b. At least four paragraphs must be there.    C. At least five paragraphs are required for an essay.  
d. It doesn't really matter how many paragraphs are there

3 .What is the first paragraph of an essay called?

- a. Conclusion    b. Body Paragraphs    c. Introduction    d. Exposition

4 .What is the last paragraph of an essay called?

- a. Introduction    b. Thesis Statement    c. Body Paragraphs    d. Conclusion

5 .What are the middle paragraphs of an essay called?

- a. Body Paragraphs    b. Conclusions    c. Introductions    d. Topic Sentences

6 .How do you separate paragraphs?

- a. A space    b. An indent    c. You don't separate paragraphs.  
d. There is only supposed to be one paragraph.

7 .The introductory paragraph has three parts. Which of the following is NOT part of the introductory paragraph?

- a. thesis    b. direct quote    c. background    d. hook

8 .What is the main idea of an essay called?

- a. citation    b. topic sentence    C. introduction    d. thesis

9 .What are the parts of a paragraph?

- a. topic sentence, background sentences, thesis    b. hook, background sentences, thesis  
c. topic sentence, supporting sentences, closing sentence  
d. hook, background sentences, closing sentence

10 .To. is to rewrite another writer's words and ideas into your own words.

- a. paraphrase    b. summarise    c. include    d. conclude

11 .When you think that the words of the other writer are too difficult, you.....them.

- a. paraphrase    b. summarise    c. include    d. conclude

12 .How would you plan to link the paragraphs to each other in an essay writing?

- a. I write a lot of ideas in each paragraph.  
b. By making sure that each paragraph links to the introduction.  
c. By stating different key points in each paragraph  
d. By making sure that each paragraph links to the conclusion.

13 .What is the most effective way of trying to use the linking words in essay writing?

- a. Overusing transition words and expressions that are simple  
b. Using transition words and expressions between each sentence.  
c. Leaning only a few linking words and phrases to use.  
d. Leaning a lot of transition words and phrases to use.

14 .Which one of these points do you include in an introduction?

- a. Introduce topic areas in one or two sentences.  
b. Final results.    c. Evidence.    d. Moral

15 .Which one of these points is included in the body of an essay?

- a. Final results.    b. Summary of the topic    c. Thesis statement  
d. A topic sentence in each paragraph that states the main idea

16 .What does a conclusion include?

- a. Summarizing your major points
- b. Describing the topic
- c. The positive and the negative points
- d. The descriptive points

**17. What do you need to include in a conclusion?**

- a. Introduce new details
- b. New ideas
- c. The thesis statement
- d. Restating the thesis statement

**18. The first sentence of your introductory paragraph is called the**

- a. concrete detail
- b. thesis
- c. conclusion
- d. attention grabber (hook)

**19. You should include..... throughout your essay**

- a. transition words
- b. paragraphs
- c. theses
- d. closings

**20. The first sentence of the conclusion paragraph should.....**

- a. include a quote
- b. grab your readers attention
- c. restate your thesis
- d. summarize your body paragraphs

**21. Your attention grabber (hook) should**

- a. state your thesis
- b. make your reader become involved in the essay
- c. summarize what you will be writing about
- d. warn your reader from the essay

**22. Thesis statements represent the main idea of the.....**

- a. first paragraph
- b. body
- c. conclusion
- d. essay

**23. What term is used to describe a "how-to" essay?**

- a. Persuasive
- b. Descriptive
- c. Expository
- d. Narrative

**24. A useful technique for persuasive writing is.....**

- a. element of surprise
- b. poor writing
- c. creativity
- d. emotional appeals

**25. A..... is some sort of a story.**

- a. Descriptive
- b. Expository
- c. Narrative
- d. persuasive

**26..... writing explains things.**

- a. descriptive
- b. expository
- c. Narrative
- d. persuasive

**27..... writing is intended to influence others**

- a. descriptive
- b. expository
- c. Narrative
- d. persuasive

**28. The purpose of a..... essay is to use vivid details to give the reader**

a mental image of a person, place, thing, event, or idea.

- a. descriptive
- b. expository
- c. Narrative
- d. persuasive

**29. Which of these is not a characteristic of a good essay?**

- a. Formal style
- b. Brevity
- c. Personal touch
- d. Fakeness

**30. Which of these should be avoided in a good essay?**

- a. Formal words
- b. Slang
- c. Unity
- d. Brevity

**31. Which of these is not a type of essay?**

- a. Personal essay
- b. Narrative essay
- c. Descriptive essay
- d. Argumentative essay

**32. Which of these essays tells a story?**

- a. Argumentative essays
- b. Descriptive essays
- c. Narrative essays
- d. Reflective essays

**33..... must be avoided in a summary.**

- a. Facts
- b. Ideas
- c. Repetitions
- d. Verbs

**34. It is recommended that you write the..... paragraph last.**

- a. introduction
- b. thesis
- c. body
- d. conclusion

**35. What is the first thing you should do when needing to write an essay**

- a. A promise.
- b. Choose a topic.
- c. A decision.
- d. No mistakes.

**36. You should first write the..... of your essay.**

- a. moral
- b. sentence
- c. body
- d. conclusion

**37. An essay is.....**

- a. a type of writing that has too many paragraphs
- b. a song with a story
- c. a poem that has many stanzas
- d. a type of writing that requires research

**38. The introductory paragraph of an essay requires.....**

- a. The topic, thesis, and main
- b. The supporting details
- c. The reason for the essay, the topic, and thesis
- d. a and b

**39. After you write the main idea of paragraphs,.....**

- a. include the thesis to remind the reader.
- b. make sure the supporting details are shown through the main idea
- c. use opinion to show why your thesis is right.
- d. include supporting details with examples and specific details.

**40. The conclusion of an essay should.....**

- a. include last minute ideas and thoughts for the future.

- b. have a restatement of the thesis and thoughts for the future
- c. be a recap of the whole essay
- d. be only two sentences.

### **Exercise Paragraph Writing**

**1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**1. What is the first sentence of a paragraph called?**

- a. The introduction sentence
- b. The topic sentence
- c. The closing sentence
- d. The supporting sentence

**2. What is a paragraph?**

- a. A series of sentences that talk about various subjects.
- b. Made up of only one sentence.
- c. A series of sentences that talk about a specific subject.
- d. A series of paragraphs about one main idea or point

**3. When do you use supporting details or supporting sentences?**

- a. Never use these in paragraphs because they are for essays only.
- b. Before the first sentence at the introduction.
- c. After the topic sentence and before the closing sentence.
- d. After the last sentence because it helps you summarize the paragraph.

**4. How many sentences does a paragraph nearly have?**

- a. 5-7
- b. 6-8
- c. 3-4
- d. 9-10

**5. How many topics should a paragraph cover?**

- a. One
- b. Two
- c. Three
- d. Five

**6. What is smooth and logical flow of sentences in a paragraph called?**

- a. Unity
- b. Emphasis
- c. Coherence
- d. Incoherence

**7. Which of the following would be the best topic for an argument paragraph?**

- a. Green is my favorite color.
- b. War can lead to many deaths.
- c. The new law was a wise decision.
- d. Lions eat meat.

**8. Which paragraph tells a story?**

- a. Descriptive paragraph.
- b. Persuasive paragraph.
- c. Expository paragraph.
- d. Narrative paragraph.

**9. How should the topic sentence of a paragraph be?**

- a. As broad and general as possible.
- b. Always about science.
- c. Broad enough to explicate the topic.
- d. Something the writer is interested in.

**10. How many sentences should be there to form a paragraph?**

- a. Two sentences are enough for being called a paragraph.
- b. At least three sentences must be there.
- c. At least five sentences are required for a paragraph.
- d. It doesn't really matter how many sentences are there.

**11. Which is an example of cause-and-effect sentence?**

- a. Sama used to play video games for hours, that's why her eyesight has become weaker.
- b. Sama played video games and the Internet slowed down.
- c. Sama stopped playing video games when she started school.
- d. Sama bought a new game after Rody did.

**12. A transition is .....**

- a. signal words that help organize a paragraph, using time order or listing order.
- b. a series of sentences about one main idea, or point.
- c. the sentences that express the main point, or idea, of a paragraph.
- d. reasons, examples, and other details that support the main point of the paragraph.

**13. A topic sentence is.....**

- a. reasons, examples, and other details that support the main point of the paragraph.
- b. a sentence with signal words that increase effectiveness of organization.
- c. a way to conclude the paragraph so the reader knows what the paragraph was about.
- d. the sentence that expresses the main point, or idea, of a paragraph

**14. A supporting detail sentence is.....**

- a. a series of paragraphs about one main idea, or point.
- b. signal words that help organize a paragraph, using time order or listing order.
- c. reasons, examples, and other details that support the main point of the paragraph.
- d. a way to conclude the paragraph so the reader knows what the paragraph was about.

**15 .Choose the best topic sentence:**

.....On the contrary of some species of dogs, they do not need a lot of exercise every day. Crowds and loud noises do not make them nervous. They do not mind being alone for hours. Above all this, they are known to be patient and loving with children. If you are a city dweller, I recommend this breed of dog.

- a. Bulldogs are a good choice of dog for people who live in cities.
- b. Every family should have a dog.
- c. Not all dogs are happy living in the city.
- d. All species of dogs are pretty much alike - they're all the same.

**16 .Read the following paragraph, then choose the correct topic sentence.**

Malaysians spend more than \$50 million a year to buy imported fruits. Much of this money can be kept in the country if Malaysians consume more local fruits of which there are more than twenty varieties. Except for durians, mangoes and rambutans, Malaysians generally like imported fruits.

- a. Malaysians spend more than \$50 million a year to buy imported fruits.
- b. Much of this money can be kept in the country if Malaysians consume more local fruits of which there are more than twenty varieties.
- c. Except for durians, mangoes and rambutans, Malaysians generally like imported fruits.
- d. None of the above

**17.Choose the best topic sentence:**

..... He always takes the time to listen to the details of my complaints. When I was in the hospital, he came to visit me . He always makes sure I get the medication I need. Several of my friends now go to see him, and they like him as much as I do!

- a. I love my father.
- b. Seeing a doctor has become very expensive.
- c. I am very happy with my doctor.
- d. It is hard to find a good doctor.

**18 .Choose the supporting sentence(s) for this topic sentence:**

I have to look for another job.

- a. I am lucky that I still have a job.
- b. The commute is very long
- c. As we now have another child, my salary isn't enough for our family
- d. b & c

**19 .Read the following paragraph, then choose the correct topic sentence.**

The way a bird flies often shows what it is doing. When it is flying to warmer places for winter, it flies straight. When it is catching insects, it moves about in many directions.

- a. The way a bird flies often shows what it is doing.
- b. When it is flying to warmer places for winter, it flies straight.
- c. When it is catching insects, it moves about in many directions.
- d. None of the above.

**20 .Choose the best topic sentence:**

.....Most people who earn the minimum salary are trying to support families with it. No one working full-time and earning the minimum salary makes enough money to pay for their necessities. If we raise the minimum salary, families will have more money to spend, and therefore other businesses will make more money. For so many reasons, it is the best thing to do.

- a. This economy is especially hard for small business owners.
- b .It is due time to raise the minimum salary.
- c. We must worry about jobs, not salaries.
- d Parents in Cairo have lot of expenses.

**21 .Choose the supporting sentence(s) for this topic sentence:**

Parents should not allow young children to cross this busy road on their own.

- a. Cars are always speeding down that avenue.
- b. Last year, two children were injured while crossing that street.
- c. There are many good restaurants on that street.
- d. a & b

**22 .Read the following paragraph, then choose the correct topic sentence.**

Heavy rain stops many of our activities. Games, sports, picnics and other outdoor activities are interrupted by rain. Heavy rain also prevents fishermen from going out to sea.

- a. Games, sports, picnics and other outdoor activities are interrupted by rain.
- b. Heavy rain also prevents fishermen from going out to sea.
- c. Heavy rain stops many of our activities.
- d. None of the above.

**23 .Choose the supporting sentence(s) for this topic sentence**

Most students need to learn good ways to study.

- a. Sometimes cheating homework in a group can be helpful.
- b. Studying instead of sleeping does n 't help learning or test scores
- C. Making friends is important to happiness and success.





a. Comedy                      b. Communication                      c. Command                      d. Commercial

**4. What is used to separate the two parts of an email address?**

a. @                      b. \*                      c. : //                      d. #

**5. The..... the part of an e-mail message that contains the address of the sender and recipient.**

a. body                      b. header                      c. footer                      d. closing

**6. You can send a / an ..... with an e-mail.**

a. attachment                      b. SMS                      c. letter                      d. envelope

**7. The first part of your email address before the '@' is called your.....**

a. username                      b. password                      c. domain name                      d. address

**8. The second part of your email address after the '@' is called your**

a. username                      b. password                      c. domain name                      d. address

**9. To sign into your account, you will need your username and your.....**

a. title                      b. password                      c. domain name                      d. address

**10. An inbox is where you can find..... mail.**

a. trash                      b. deleted                      c. sent                      d. received

**11. In an email message, the.....- line is where you type the email address of the recipient.**

a. to                      b. from                      c. subject                      d. into

**12. An attachment can be.....**

a. digital photos                      b. documents .                      b. jewellery                      d. a &b

**13. You should never.....**

a. write impolite things to the person you are emailing  
b. attach unnecessary files to your email message  
c. ask for or give out personal information                      d. all of the above

**14. A good rule to follow is to.....**

a. reread your message before you send it                      b. write things that make sense                      c. use a spellcheck  
d. all of the above

**15. You should check your inbox.....**

a. every single minute of the day                      b. when you are told to  
c. often                      d. when the mailbox is full

**16. Before you send an email.....**

a. make sure you have the correct email address  
b. reread the email and correct any errors  
c. make sure your message will not make anyone feel bad                      d. all of the above

**17. Your closing of an email when you open with: (Dear Sirs/ Dear Sir or Madam; /To whom it may concern) should be.....2**

a. Take care                      b. Bye.                      c. Yours faithfully.                      d. Hi

**18. In an informal email you could write.....**

a. Yes, I've got your message.                      b. I have received your email about..  
c. No abbreviations                      d. all the above

**19. If you don't know the person's name in a formal email, you could write.....**

a. Yo !                      b. Dear Sir                      c. Dear Madam                      d. Dear Sir / Madam

**20. If you close your email with 'Yours sincerely' .You could have opened with.....?**

a. Dear Mr,                      b. Dear Mum,                      c. Dear Rania                      d. Hi Guys,

**21. To give options, which linking word should you use in this sentence:**

" I like watching TV..... listening to music in my spare time."

a. and                      b. or else                      c. besides that                      d. as well

**22. When you know the person well and have an informal business relationship use to close an email.**

a. Yours sincerely                      b. Yours faithfully.                      c. Best wishes                      d. Bye.

## **The parts of speech**

**1. Noun:** الاسم

-A noun is a word that identifies تعرف a person (man, girl, engineer, friend), a thing (horse, wall, flower, country), or an idea, quality, or state (anger, courage, life, luckiness)

**2. Verb:** فعل

-A verb describes تصف what a person or thing does or what happens. - For example, verbs describe an action حدث (jump, stop, explore), an event (snow, happen , (a situation موقف (be, seem, have) or a change (evolve, shrink, widen.)

### 3. Adjective: صفة

-An adjective is a word that describes a noun, giving extra information about it - .For example: an exciting adventure / a green apple / a tidy room.

### 4. Adverb: ظرف حال

-An adverb is a word used to give information about a verb, adjective, or other adverb - .  
Ex: She nearly lost everything.

### 5. Pronoun: ضمير

-Pronouns الضمائر are used in place of a noun that is known or has already been mentioned. This is often done in order to avoid يتجنب repeating the noun. ذكر

-Ex: \* Mona left early because she was tired.

\* Ahmed brought the avocados with him.

### 6. Preposition: حرف جر

-A preposition is a word such as after, in, to, on, and with.

-Prepositions are usually used in front of nouns اسم or pronouns ضمير and they show the relationship العلاقة between the noun or pronoun and other words in a sentence.

-They describe يصف, for example, the position مكان of something, the time when something happens, or the way in which something is done.

### 7. Conjunction: اداء ربط

-A conjunction (a connective) اداء ربط is a word such as and, because, but, for, if, or, and when.

-Conjunctions are used to connect phrases, عبارات clauses, and sentences.

### 8. Determiner: اداء التحديد

-It is a word that introduces اسم a noun, such as a/an, the, every, this, those, or many.

-Ex: a dog, the dog, this dog, those dogs, every dog, many dogs.

### 9. Exclamation (Interjection): لفظ تعجب

-An exclamation (an interjection) is a word or phrase عبارة that expresses strong emotion عبارة, such

as surprise, pleasure, or anger . - Ex: ouch / god / oh / alas.

### (Transitive verb

١- الفعل إذا كان متعدياً يحتاج الى مفعول)

- David repaired his car.

- They sent Ali a postcard.

- He bought his family a house.

- I met her at school

(المفعول ضمير)

٢- قد يحتاج الفعل المتعدي مفعولين

### ٣- الفعل لا يحتاج مفعول لازم وله تكمله عاديه بصفه او حال

- They went to school.

- Sara seems tired.

٤- يمكن ان يكون الفعل متعدي او لازم

- He ran the new machinery. Transitive verb

- He ran around the track. Intransitive Verb

- She flew her own kite. Transitive verb

- She flew to London last week. Intransitive Verb

- I want to drive your new car. Transitive verb

- I want to drive to Cairo Intransitive Verb

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. " Luckily, they didn't get hurt." The word "luckily" is a/an.....

a. conjunction      b. adverb      c. pronoun      d. noun

2. Which word in the following sentence is an adverb "She played well but lost the game"?

a. game      b. wel      c. she      d. but

3. Adverbs describe.....

a. names      b. nouns      c. verbs      d. pronoun

4. . " Rarely does she visit us." "Rarely" is a/an.....

a. preposition      b. conjunction      c. adverb      d. adjective

5. "She fell off the horse." "Off" is a/an.....

a. adverb      b. preposition      c. adjective      d. pronoun

6. "She studied hard and got good marks." "And" is a/an .....  
 a. preposition      b. conjunction      c. adverb      d. pronoun
7. "He is an artist." "An" is a/an .....  
 a. article      b. conjunction      c. noun      d. preposition
8. "She nearly lost everything." The word "nearly" is a/an.....  
 a. verb      b. preposition      c. adverb      d. adjective
9. Pronouns are used in place of a ..... that is known or has already been mentioned.  
 a. noun      b. adverb      c. verb      d. adjective
10. "Ouch" is a/an.....  
 a. verb      b. interjection      c. adverb      d. adjective

## \* علامات ترقيم تضاف للكتابة الانجليزية.

### ١- النقطة Full stop

وتسمى في الانجليزية البريطانية full stop وفي الامريكية period وفي الرياضيات point وفي عناوين الانترنت dot.  
 1- تستخدم لانهاء الجملة الانجليزية.

1- I travelled to Europe last year      2. Don't make noise .

2- تستخدم بعد المختصرات وبينها مثل Mr., Mrs., Dec.15th, No., Tues., p.m  
 Dr. Ahmed - Mrs. Samy - Dr. Ali - Ramses St. - Sept. (September) - Mon.  
 3- استخدام ثلاث نقاط متتابعة في مكان ما من الجملة يحل محل كلمات / اجزاء محذوفة إختصارا.

### ٢- علامة التعجب Exclamation Mark (!)

تستخدم علامة التعجب في نهاية عبارات وتعبيرات التعجب والاندعاش لإعطاء إهتمام اكثر.

What a nice day !      Wow!

### ٣- علامة الاستفهام Question mark (?)

- تستخدم مع الاسئلة وتوضع في نهاية الجملة وتبدأ الكلمة التي بعدها بحرف كبير.

Who is that person?      Where is he from?  
 - لا تستخدم علامة الاستفهام اذا اصبح السؤال جملة اسمية، اي ذكر داخل الجملة. وكذلك في الاسئلة غير المباشرة.

Ahmed, can you pass the salt .  
 Please, tell me what your father's name is.  
 She asked: "What are you doing?" = She asked what he was doing .

### ٤- النقطتان Colon ( : )

- تستخدم بعد جملة للإشارة الى ان ما بعدها قائمة من الاشياء/المكونات  
 لاحظ ان تعدد العناصر بعدها جعل

They asked for: rice, butter, bananas, beans ... etc

She wanted: rice and milk

The school year is not as easy after the secondary school: it has more research activities.

08:30 p.m.

- تستخدم للفصل بين الساعات والدقائق في الساعة الرقمية.

- تستخدم مع التحية الافتتاحية في الانجليزية الأمريكية

Dear Ahmed,;

Dear Ahmad,

اما الانجليزية البريطانية فيكتفى بالفاصلة comma بعد الاسم.

### ٥- الفاصلة / الفارزة المنقوطة Semicolon ( ; )

تستخدم لفصل العبارات المتعلقة او المعطوفة co-ordinate clauses التي لا تحتوي على اداة ربط بينهما.

Speech is silver and silence is golden. = Speech is silver; silence is golden

### ٦- الفاصلة / الفارزة السفلى comma ( , )

هي وقفة قصيرة في النص او فاصلة بين الجمل، وهي اكثر علامات الترقيم استخداما في الانجليزية؛ وفيما يلي اهم استخداماتها:

- الفاصلة التسلسلية Serial commas وتوضع بين الاسماء او الاشياء التي تسردها جملة واحدة سلسلة واحدة وراء الاخرى على ان توضع بعد الشيء قبل الاخير كلمة and.

I need rice, vegetables, onion and garlic.

- توضع بعد التعبيرات او الظروف المتشابهة كوقفة قصيرة بينها.

Unfortunately, there is no thing we can do to help.

- توضع لفصل جملة / شبه جملة اعتراضية تشرح او تصف او تضيف بيانا للكلام السابق.

We were, believe it or not, in time.

Dear Ahmed,

- تستخدم في افتتاحية الرسالة وعند خاتمتها.

Yours as ever

e.g., etc., i.e., viz..

- تستخدم بعد الاختصارات المأخوذة عن اللاتينية.

The house, which stood on a hill, overlooked the sea.

- تستخدم مع جمل الوصل

- توضع بعد فعل القول في الكلام المباشر "...." . She said , "

- توضع بعد كلمات مثل ..

Please, well, yes, no Did you do that? Yes, I did. No, I didn't

- توضع بعد الاسم الذي يُخاطَب بكلام مباشر إذا جاء في أول الكلام أو قبله إذا جاء الاسم في آخر الكلام.

Ahmed, are you going to join us tonight?

Are you supposed to be here for lunch, Ahmed?

- توضع قبل السؤال المذيل.

Ali is here, isn't he?

إذا وردت في أول الجملة وقبلها إذا جاءت في نهاية الجملة. please- بعد كلمة

Please, may I have a cup?

May I take one, please?

## V- الفارزة العليا ( ' ) Apostrophe

- تستخدم للدلالة على الأحرف المحذوفة اختصارا.

He's .. = He is / he has..

I'd .. = I had / I would..

الملكية كما هو الحال s تضاف بعدها s- تستخدم مع المضاف اليه حيث تضاف الفاصلة العليا الى نهاية الاسم المالك الذي لا ينتهي ب girls' cat. كما في المثال هنا. s إذا انتهى الاسم ب s او بدون Ahmed's car هنا..  
- تستخدم مع الأرقام للإشارة الى أحداث مرتبطة بها او بدونها

In the 1990's.. 1990s

- ومع إختصارات الحروف الكبيرة او بدونها للدلالة على الانتماء..

MEP's/ MEPs

عضو البرلمان الاوربي

## Hyphen (-) الواصلة

- تستخدم لفصل اجزاء الكلمات المركبة mother- in- law..

- في القواميس بين قواطع نطق الكلمات ski- ing

co- operative

لا تتداخل night- time بعض الكلمات حتى لا تتداخل

- لكسر الكلمات الطويلة التي لم تكتمل مع نهاية السطر اثناء الكتابة وفق الشروط التالية:

. إذا كانت الكلمة الطويلة مكونة من واصلة وكلمة اخرى oil- burning

. بعد البادئات وقبل اللاحقات

pro- duce , kind- ness..

. بين اصوات العلة التي تنتمي لمقاطع صوتية مختلفة

flu- ent, li- aison..

- مع ملاحظة ان الكلمات الانجليزية لا تقطع في الحالات التالية:

. إذا كانت الكلمة مقطعا صوتيا واحدا ..looked, through

. لا تكسر / تقطع كلمة انجليزية من اربعة احرف فأقل any, upon ..

. لا تكسر كلمة عند حرفين متحركين متتابعين wooden ليس wo-oden

. لا تكسر اسماء الاعلام

Ahmed , rice, orange..

- تستخدم الواصلة كذلك مع الاسماء المركبة بين الكلمتين التي تشكلان الاسم المركب problem- solving

- وتستخدم مع الافعال المركبة من كلمتين ..

No one had cross-referenced the forms before children ice-skated on the sidewalk .

## 9- علامتا الاقتباس Quotation marks ("...")

هما علامتان لحصر الكلام المباشر بغرض الاستشهاد حيث تأتي النقطة وغيرها من ادوات الترقيم قبل علامتي الاقتباس.

"I am going to London tomorrow", said Mr. Ali, "to sign copies of my new book, English Grammar"

## 10- القاطع الايمن (/) Slash

القاطع الايمن/ الامامي هو خط مائل ناحية اليمين يستخدم كما يلي:

Mr / Mrs/ Miss..

- يستخدم فواصل في كتابة التاريخ ولكنه غير محبب

١٩٩٠ / ٥ / ١١

- إشارة قسمة في الرياضيات والجبر كما في المثال ٣/٢

### Back slash

### (١) القاطع الخلفي ( الأسر )

ويستخدم مع مسارات الكمبيوتر ولغات البرمجة ومواقع الإنترنت.

### ١٢- الأقواس Parentheses

عادة ما تحصر الأقواس كلمات على صلة بالجملة الأساسية ولكنها غير ضرورية. وكذلك تستخدم لعمل إضافات أو تعبيرات غير ضرورية للجملة، ولكنها تعمل على زيادة تأكيد بعض المعاني في الجمل التي تضاف إليها.

We visited several European countries ( England, France, Spain ... etc.) on our trip last year.

- تكتب الأرقام داخل الجملة داخل أقواس.

Grades will be based on (1) participation, (2) in -class writing, and (3) exams.

### Capital letters

١- كتب الحرف ( I ) بمعنى أنا حرف كبير في أي مكان في الجملة

-I play football every week

-Omar and I are friends.

٢- أول حرف في الجملة و أول حرف في السؤال

-Most people like ice cream.

- Where do you come from?

٣- أول حرف في اسمي الأشخاص والمدن والدول والعواصم واسماء البحار والبحيرات

و المحيطات والأهار والقارات الأماكن الشهيرة ( الاعلام ) والجسيات واللغات وأيام الأسبوع واختصاراتها وشهور السنة

My friend Ahmed is a doctor

. Her name is Sama.

-The capital of Egypt is Cairo. - I want to visit Luxor and Aswan.

-The Red Sea is in the east of Egypt. - I visited Lake Nasser in Aswan.

-The Pacific Ocean is the largest ocean in the world.

-We enjoyed the trip on the River Nile. - I know that France is in Europe.

-We visited the Cairo lower last week. The Sphinx is in Giza.

-He is Egyptian.

- She is British.

-I speak English and French well. The language of Spain is Spanish.

We do not go to school on Fridays. ( Fri., ) - I was born in March.

-TV - OK - CD الاختصارات

٥- الألقاب قبل أسماء الأشخاص و أول حرف في الجملة أو السؤال داخل علامات التنصيص

-I read a lot about Queen Elizabeth. They say that Dr Ali is clever.

-I think Mr Ashraf is very busy today.

Ola said, "My mother is a doctor." - My father is a teacher . He works hard.

-What a lovely dress! It's great on you.

What makes you so angry ? Has anybody annoyed you?

### Exercise On Punctuation

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Punctuation is a system of symbols that we use in ..... language

a. written b. spoken c. heard d. said

2. What are the symbols used in punctuation called?

a. punctuals b. punctuality c. punctuation marks d. punctuations

3. Which of the following are examples of punctuation marks?

a. commas and full stops b. dollar and pound signs

c. plus and minus signs d. rhymes and rhythm

4. Everybody at the school, including the teachers and .....are happy when summer holiday starts.

a. students b. students; c. students· d. students:

5. Choose the statement with the correct punctuation.

a. I met a clever Egyptian woman. b. I met a clever, Egyptian woman.

c. I met a clever Egyptian, woman. d. I met a clever, Egyptian, woman.

6. This is utterly ..... incredible.....



- a. .                      b. :                      c. ;                      d. !

**7. Quotation marks are put ..... the words being quoted.**

- a. between      b. before                      c. after                      d. b & c

**8. Which of these is used to separate short clauses of a compound sentence? (جمله مركبة)**

- a. Colon                      b. Full stop                      c. Semicolon                      d. Comma

**9. Which description best suits the full-stop?**

- a. A dot at the end of a sentence which leads to the next sentence.  
b. A dot at the end of a sentence indicating that the sentence is complete  
c. A curve in a sentence indicating when the sentence should finish  
d. A dot in a sentence.

**10. When should you use an apostrophe?**

- a. For a contraction (where letters are missing).  
b. When an independent clause is attached to a dependent clause.  
c. To indicate possession (where a noun owns something).                      d. a & c

**11. What is the function of a colon (:)?**

- a. To indicate a series of options.  
b. To remove water from digested food in the intestine  
c. To use when commas get boring  
d. To indicate that a new sentence has begun.

**12. Which of these is not a punctuation mark?**

- a. Full stop = the period      b. Hashtag      c. Comma      d. Colon (النقطتان)

**13. Which of the following can be used to express strong feelings in written English?**

- a. a quotation mark                      b. an exclamation mark (point)  
c. a question mark                      d. a period

**14. Watch out for your broken arm .....**

- a. ,                      b. !                      c. ?                      d. ;

**15. The ..... is found in the Middle East.**

- a. red sea                      b. Red sea                      c. red Sea                      d. Red Sea

**16. Stand up now .....**

- a. ?                      b. .                      c. :                      d. ;

**17. Choose the statement with the correct punctuation.**

- a. My uncle Who lives in Assuit is a doctor.  
b. My uncle, who lives in Assuit is a doctor  
c. My uncle who lives in Assuit, is a doctor;  
d. My uncle, who lives in Assuit, is a doctor.

**18. When will you return to our city .....**

- a. ?                      b. ,                      c. ;                      d. !

**19. "Full stops" are also called .....**

- a. dates                      b. periods                      c. endings                      d. points

**20. Which example would not have an exclamation mark at the end**

- a. Let me out of this box      b. I'm going to get some juice, want some  
c. Punctuation is my best friend      d. There is no such thing as English

**21. She asked what time the department meeting would start**

- a. .                      b. ,                      c. ;                      d. ?

**22. The full stop is used at the end of a/ an .....**

- a. statement                      b. question                      c. exclamation                      d. inquiry

**23. Wow ..... You really obtained a gold medal in the Olympics.**

- a. ?                      b. .                      c. ;                      d. !

**24. Who do you think will win the race .....**

- a. ?                      b. .                      c. ;                      d. !

**25. Mr Mohammed lives in Aswan ..... his brothers live in Assuit.**

- a. ,                      b. " "                      c. ;                      d. .

**26. What's the punctuation mark indicating a question called?**

- a. a question tag      b. a question word      c. a question mark      d. a question sign

**27. What is missing from the following sentence?**

The day which happens to be Tuesday is hot and windy.

a. An exclamation mark                      b. A semi-colon (;)

c. Commas: one after "happens" and one after "hot"

d. Commas: one after "day" and one after "Tuesday"

**28. Which of these is used to convey proportions?**

a. Comma      b. Semicolon (;)      c. Colon (:)      d. Hyphen (-)

**29. Which sentence would mean that Omar is being invited to eat?**

a. Let's eat Omar!    b. Let's eat: Omar!    c. "Let's eat, Omar"?    d. Let's eat, Omar!

**30. Which of the following sentences has the correct punctuation?**

a. Omar, and Ali who have always been friends, no longer talk to each other.

b. Omar and Ali who have always been friends no longer talk to each other.

c. Omar and Ali, who have always been friends, no longer talk to each other.

d. Omar and Ali, who have always been friends, no longer, talk to each other.

**31. I offered the children bananas..... Beaches..... pears and plums.**

**"What punctuation marks do we need in the spaces?"**

a. ,                      b. ;                      c. -                      d. :

**32. The ..... is used after a word used to address a person.**

a. colon                      b. semi-colon                      c. apostrophe                      d. comma

**33. He was a man without a plan..... a rebel without a cause**

a. .                      b. !                      c. ;                      d. ,

**34. You must leave a space every comma in a sentence.**

a. before                      b. after                      c. around                      d. between

**35. Miss Lamees ..... class is the best class at school!**

a. s'                      b. 's                      c. '                      d. b & c

**36. To....., she agreed to marry a man of her father's age.**

a. everybody's surprise                      b. everybodys surprise

c. everybodys' surprise                      d. everybody's surprise

**37. Mr Ashraf is a self..... made man.**

a. ,                      b. ;                      c. -                      d. :

**38. Which of these is used between sentences which are grammatically independent?**

a. apostrophe                      b. Colon                      c. Comma                      d. Hyphen

**39. ....I haven't seen Esraa today,.....said Tom.**

a. 'apostrophes                      b. " " speech marks                      c. , , commas                      d. () brackets

**40. In Allen Poe's ..... Poe described a man with a guilty conscience.**

a. short story, The Tell-Tale Heart                      b. short story, "The Tell-Tale Heart,"

c. short story. "the Tell-Tale Heart."                      d. short story The Tell-Tale Heart.

**41. Malak said that the Earth was flat but I said it was round.**

a. Full-stop                      b. Colon                      c. Comma                      d. Semi-colon

**42. I told the students to bring the following items ..... a pen, a pencil**

**a ruler and an exercise book.**

a. ,                      b. ;                      c. /                      d. :

**43. Advertising is considered an important part for big business.....**

**To customers sometimes.**

a. but-a trick                      b. but, a trick;                      c. but a trick                      d. but, "a trick".

**44. Which of these is used to separate a series of loosely related clauses?**

a. Semi-colon                      b. Colon                      c. Comma                      d. Full stop

**45. Mansour..... the carpenter.....made this cupboard.**

a. ,                      b. " "                      c. { }                      d. ( )

**46. Which CANNOT come at the end of a sentence?**

a. A period                      b. A colon                      c. An question mark                      d. An exclamation mark

**47. I found Karim..... s jacket on the chair.**

a. -                      b. ,                      c. '                      d. "

**48. The class just finished reading ..... a novel by Charles Dickens**

**about the suffering of children at work.**

a. "Hard Times ,"                      b. Hard Times:                      c. Hard Times                      d. "Hard Time" ,

**49. Which sentence has the correct ending punctuation mark?**

a. When you arrive home, call me?                      b. When you arrive home., call me.

c. When you arrive home, call me!                      d. When you arrive home, call me:

**50. Which of the following sentences has the correct punctuation?**

- a. This is what I ate for breakfast; an egg and a cheese sandwich.
- b. This is what I ate for breakfast: egg and a cheese sandwich.
- c. This is what I ate for breakfast an egg and a cheese sandwich.
- d. This is what I ate for breakfast, egg and a cheese sandwich.

**51. Which of the following sentences has the correct punctuation'**

- a. He knocked several times: no one came to the door.
- b. He knocked several times no one came to the door.
- c. He knocked several times, no one came to the door.
- d. He knocked several times; no one came to the door.

## **General Questions**

**- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**1. What is the first paragraph in the essay called?**

- a. Conclusion      b. Body paragraph      c. Introduction      d. Exposition

**2. When do you use formal language?**

- a. When you write an academic essay.      b. When you talk to a friend.
- c. When you write a text message.      d. When you write a story.

**3. Which sentence is correct?**

- a. Some students enter other professions such arts administration.
- b. Some students enters other professions such as arts administration.
- c. Some students enter another professions such as arts administration.
- d. Some students enter other professions such as arts administration.

**4. What are the five steps of writing?**

- a. Draft, rough and draft, edit, revise, turn in.
- b. brainstorm, write, submit, re-do, correct.
- c. check spelling, grammar, sentences, title and paragraph.
- d. pre-write, draft, revise, edit, publish.

**5. What is the last paragraph in the essay called?**

- a. conclusion      b. body paragraph      c. introduction      d. exposition

**6. What are the middle paragraphs in the essay called?**

- a. conclusion      b. body paragraphs      c. introduction      d. topic sentence

**7. "Global warming is definitely the single greatest environmental challenge that the planet earth is facing at present.)**

**What is the most appropriate supporting sentence for this?**

- a. Human beings are addicted to burning fossil fuels.
- b. It is essential to understand the gravity of the situation.
- c. Due to this rise in temperature, the oceans are rising and the coral reefs are dying.
- d. Hurricane is enough to prove this point.

**8. A paragraph consists of .....**

- a. essays      b. sentences      c. emails      d. letters

**9. A transition is a word or phrase that links ideas together, which is an example of a transition?**

- a. in other words      b. blue      c. fact      d. last

**10. A thesis statement is .....**

- a. A sentence that states what will be explained in the essay.
- b. A sentence that catches the readers' attention.
- c. A sentence which introduces the conclusion.      d. A sentence which concludes the essay.

**11. How many sentences a thesis statement should have?**

- a. Four      b. Three      c. Two      d. One

**12. What is a hook?**

- a. An opening a sentence that captures the reader's attention.
- b. The last sentence of a paragraph.
- c. A tool used to catch a thought.      d. A boring sentence.

**13. Choose the best evidence after this sentence (Sports have positive effects on health.)**

- a. Most people practice sports in their free time.
  - b. Some schools make their students practice sports.
  - c. The effects of sports on health are numerous.
  - d. Doing sports makes people mentally well and physically fit.
- 14. By which sentence can we conclude an essay about (Road Accidents)?**
- a. We need to prevent road accidents to decrease the death rate.
  - b. That incident made me realize how precious our lives are.
  - c. Once I was on my way back home from shopping when I witnessed a road accident.
  - d. Road accidents have become very common nowadays.
- 15. Choose the best topic sentence for an essay about (Smoking is deadly).**
- a. Smokers lead a life of suffering.
  - b. Non-smokers are healthy people.
  - c. If you don't smoke, you can help your society.
  - d. Smoking expensive cigarettes costs people a lot of money.
- 16. In an essay about "Pollution", which of the following would be the best concluding sentence?**
- a. Pollution is caused by several factors, one of which is garbage disposal.
  - b. Pollution is spreading mainly because of human activity.
  - c. It is essential that we address this dangerous issue immediately.
  - d. It is a threat to all forms of life on earth.
- 17. What is the context سياق الكلام ?**
- a. The introduction paragraph.
  - b. Background information about the essay topic.
  - c. A hook that grabs the reader's attention.
  - d. An informational essay.
- 18. What is the primary purpose of a quotation in an essay?**
- a. To analyze specific data.
  - b. To present another's viewpoint.
  - c. To explain a complicated issue.
  - d. To lay out a descriptive narrative.
- 19. Some people seem to think that sports and ..... are unimportant things.**
- a. games'
  - b. game's
  - c. games
  - d. games,
- 20. The introduction paragraph includes .....**
- a. a thesis statement and hook
  - b. short description
  - c. in depth detail
  - d. None
- 21. Where should the thesis statement be restated?**
- a. In the introduction
  - b. In the conclusion.
  - c. In the body paragraphs.
  - d. After conclusion.
- 22. Which of these is not a type of essay?**
- a. A narrative essay
  - b. A descriptive essay
  - c. An argumentative essay
  - d. A personal essay
- 23. Which of these essays tells a story?**
- a. Narrative essays
  - b. Descriptive essays
  - c. Reflective essays
  - d. Argumentative essays
- 24. A full stop is a dot at the end of a sentence to .....**
- a. refer to a previous sentence
  - b. make the sentence complete
  - c. lead to the coming sentence
  - d. explain the next sentence
- 25. Which sentence is correct?**
- a. Most people disapprove of such violent tactics.
  - b. most people disapprove of such violent tactics.
  - c. Most people disapprove of such violent tactics,
  - d. most people disapprove of such violent tactics,
- 26. Which of the following could be a concluding sentence in an essay about (Co-education)?**
- a. Co-education refers to education for both boys as well as girls.
  - b. Students also develop mutual respect and self-esteem in these schools.
  - c. Co-education is an excellent system that helps students in almost all spheres of life.
  - d. Another disadvantage often noticed in co-educational institutions is sexual harassment caused by students.

**27. We use the system of punctuation in ..... language.**

- a. spoken                      b. formal                      c. informal                      d. written

**28. The symbols used for punctuation are called punctuation .....**

- a. questions                      b. signs                      c. marks                      d. grades

**29. Which sentence is correct?**

- a. i adore chocolate.                      b. me adore chocolate.  
c. I adore chocolate.                      d. Me adore chocolate.

**30. Which sentence is correct?**

- a. This service deals with 100' of queries a month.  
b. This service deals with 100's of queries a month.  
c. This service deals with 100s' of queries a month.  
d. This service deals with 100's of queries, a month.

**31. Which sentence is correct?**

- a. While I was going to school it rained.      b. While I was going to school. It rained.  
c. While I was going to school, it rained,      d. While I was going to school, it rained.

**32. Which sentence is correct?**

- a. January 25 2011 was the day on which the glorious revolution started.  
b. January 25 2011, was the day on which the glorious revolution started.  
c. January 25 2011. was the day on which the glorious revolution started.  
d. January 25, 2011, was the day on which the glorious revolution started.

**33. Which sentence is correct?**

- a. - What is the time? - It's 3:40.                      b. - What is the time? - It's 3.40.  
c. - What is the time? - It's 3;40.                      d. - What is the time? - It's 3-40.

**34. The ..... is in London.**

- a. river Thames      b. River Thames      c. river thames      d. River thames

**35. He loves tennis ..... his sister loves football.**

- a. ,                      b. ;                      c. .                      d. !

**36. Which of the following sentences has the correct punctuation?**

- a. I love football my brother loves tennis.      b. I love football, my brother loves tennis.  
c. I love football; my brother loves tennis.      d. I love football: my brother loves tennis.

**37. Which sentence is correct?**

- a. She said, "I won't come."                      b. She said;" I won't come."  
c. She said: "I won't come."                      d. She said "I won't come"

**38. Paragraph ..... is achieved when sentences are ordered in a logical manner.**

- a. coherence                      b. competition                      c. transition                      d. union

**39. Choose the best topic sentence:**

..... I usually go skiing every weekend in the winter even though it is expensive. I love the feeling of flying down a mountain. The views are beautiful from the top of a mountain and along the trails. Even the danger of falling and getting hurt can't keep me away from the slopes on a winter day.

- a. Skiing is dangerous                      b. Skiing is expensive  
c. Skiing is my favourite sport                      d. Skiing is international

**40. What is an essay?**

- a. A series of paragraphs about one main idea.  
b. A series of sentences about one main idea.  
c. A series of sentences expressing opinions.  
d. A series of ideas written in only six sentences.

**41. She asked me where the train station was .....**

- a. ?                      b. .                      c. !                      d. ,

**42. Which sentence is correct?**

- a. My brother speaks English and German well.  
b. My brother speaks english and German well.  
c. My brother speaks English and german well.  
d. My brother speaks English and German, well.



**43. Which sentence is correct?**

- a. She is a booster of the local girls' club.
- b. She is a booster of the local girls', club.
- c. She is a booster of the local girls: club.
- d. She is a booster of the local girls, club.

**44. Which sentence is correct?**

- a. Ali says, "I'm reading a novel now." b. Ali says "I'm reading a novel now".
- c. Ali says; "I'm reading a novel now". d. Ali says. "I'm reading a novel now."

**45. Which sentence is correct?**

- a. I don't eat much yet I am a size 16. b. I don't eat much, yet I am a size 16.
- c. I don't eat much. yet I am a size 16. d. I don't eat much yet I am a size 16,

**46. Which of the following could be used as a topic sentence in an essay about (overpopulation)?**

- a. It has many causes which range from a decline in the death rate to early marriages and more.
- b. The ill-effects of overpopulation are quite severe.
- c. There are many solutions which we may take up to prevent overpopulation.
- d. Overpopulation refers to an undesirable condition in which the number of existing human being exceeds the actual carrying capacity of the earth.

**47. Which sentence is correct?**

- a. When father came home. we were playing.
- b. When father came home; we were playing.
- c. When father came home. We were playing.
- d. When father came home, we were playing.

**48. Which sentence is correct?**

- a. I think she is dishonest, not stupid. b. I think she is dishonest. not stupid.
- c. I think she is dishonest: not stupid. d. I think she is dishonest' not stupid.

**49. Which sentence is correct?**

- a. Messi who is the best player in the world, is loved by millions of people.
- b. Messi, who is the best player in the world, is loved by millions of people.
- c. Messi who is the best player in the world is loved by millions of people.
- d. Messi. who is the best player in the world, is loved by millions of people.

**50. Which sentence is correct?**

- a. Don't do that again. b. Don,t do that again.
- c. Don't do that again? d. Don't do that again,

**51. My father loves scuba ..... diving.**

- a. - b. , c. ; d. :

**52. Which sentence is correct?**

- a. :I hate horror movies", said Mona. b. "I hate horror movies; said Mona.
- c. "I hate horror movies", said Mona. d. I hate horror movies, said Mona.

**53. Which sentence is correct?**

- c. Wait 30 to 60 minutes however long it takes.
- c. Wait 30 to 60 minutes or however long it takes.
- c. Wait 30 to 60 minutes or however long does it take.
- c. Wait 30 to 60 minutes however long does it take.

**54. To indicate a question, we use a question .....**

- a. mark b. word c. tag d. sign

**55. Which sentence mustn't be ended with a period?**

- a. What happened hadn't been expected b. What a fantastic view
- c. I want to know why she is late d. Why she is still single is unknown

**56. Which is correct?**

- a. Looking out of the window, I saw them in the garden.
- b. Looking out of the window. I saw them in the garden.
- c. Looking out of the window; I saw them in the garden.
- d. Looking out of the window! I saw them in the garden.

**57. A/An ..... paragraph tells a story.**

- a. narrative b. expository c. descriptive d. argumentative

**58. What is a topic sentence?**

- a. A sentence that expresses the main idea.
- b. A sentence that concludes a paragraph.
- c. An example that gives more details.
- d. A sentence that expresses opinion.

**59. The middle paragraphs of an essay are called .....**

- a. topic paragraphs
- b. body paragraphs
- c. introductions
- d. conclusions

**60. Which word in the following sentence is an adjective "I had my old computer replaced."**

- a. computer
- b. had
- c. old
- d. replaced

**61. We use "Hi" in a/an ..... email.**

- a. formal
- b. informal
- c. spoken
- d. written

**62. Adverbs describe .....**

- a. names
- b. nouns
- c. verbs
- d. prepositions

**63. I looked for Ola ..... s book everywhere.**

- a. "
- b. '
- c. ,
- d. ;

**64. I don't want to go there, ..... I have no time to do so.**

- a. however
- b. more
- c. moreover
- d. as well

**65. Which sentence is correct?**

- a. Everyone depends on technology in facilitating his life.
- b. Everyone depends on technology in facilitating her life.
- c. Everyone depends on technology in facilitating their life.
- d. Everyone depend on technology in facilitating their life.

**66. A writer convinces readers to think as he does in a/an .....text.**

- a. persuasive
- b. email
- c. argumentative
- d. descriptive

**67. Which of the following sentences is complete?**

- a. He is wise that honest
- b. He is wise honest
- c. He is wise that is honest
- d. He honest wise that

**68. Which sentence is correct?**

- a. He is taller then me.
- b. He is taller than I am.
- a. He is taller than me am.
- b. He is taller then I am.

**69. Don't trust her. She is ..... intelligent ..... conscientious.**

- a. neither/nor
- b. both/and
- c. either/or
- d. not/but

**70. Which would be the best topic sentence for this set of sentences?**

- a. Fast food can be bad for your health.
- b. Cheeseburgers have over 300 calories.
- c. Most fast food has too much fat or sugar.
- d. Fast food is often made with grease.

**71. Select the supporting detail that doesn't fit. Topic Sentence: "Reading class is really interesting."**

- a. We learn interesting facts from the things we read.
- b. Our teacher gives us new ways to look at things.
- c. It's my least favorite class.
- d. Sometimes we do dramatic readings of the text that are super engaging.

**72. The older he grew, the more forgetful he became.**

- a. He grew older when he became more forgetful.
- b. He became more forgetful and older.
- c. As he grew older, he became more and more forgetful.
- d. He grew older and more and more forgetful.

**73. Select the best topic sentence for the paragraph.**

..... . When you bake cookies, you first have to make sure you have all the ingredients. Then you have to mix them together. Finally, you have to put them in the oven.

- a. Baking cookies is really easy to do.
- b. My grandma has the best cookies recipe.
- c. There are a few steps you must follow when making cookies.
- d. Cookies are easier to make than cake.

**74. .... are a collection of one's thoughts.**

- a. Narrative essays                      b. Expository essays
- c. Reflective essays                    d. Argumentative essays

**75. Which of these explains a subject?**

- a. Narrative essays                      b. Expository essays
- c. Reflective essays                    d. Argumentative essays

**76. Which of the following is an example of argumentative essays?**

- a. A football match                    b. Pleasures of book reading
- c. Global warming                      d. Is fashion really important?

**77. An example of expository essay is .....**

- a. Free education for all                b. A football match
- c. Pleasures of book reading          d. Global warming

**78. Which of these is not a characteristic of a good essay?**

- a. Brevity    b. Dignified style    c. Fakeness    d. Personal touch

**79. Which of these should be avoided in a good essay?**

- a. Slang            b. Dignified words            c. Brevity            d. Unity

**80. In which of these essays, the writer arrives at a conclusion by logical reasoning?**

- a. Narrative essays                      b. Descriptive essays
- c. Reflective essays                      d. Argumentative essays

**81. Which kind of essay uses the five senses (touch, smell, taste, sound, sight) to enhance the imagery of the setting?**

- a. Narrative essays                      b. Descriptive essays
- c. Expository essays                      d. Argumentative essays

**82. An essay is .....**

- a. a song with a story                    b. a poem that has many stanzas
- c. a type of writing that has organized paragraphs
- d. a type of writing that requires research

**83. The introductory paragraph of an essay requires .....**

- a. The topic, thesis, and main ideas
- b. The topic, thesis, and supporting details
- c. The reason for the essay, the topic, and thesis            d. a and b

**84. Essays are .....**

- a. easier to write because you can put your opinion
- b. harder to write because they require a lot of research
- c. flexible because you can use a narrative style or structured paragraphs                      d. a and c

**85. When writing the main idea paragraphs, .....**

- a. include the thesis to remind the reader
- b. include supporting details with examples and specific details
- c. make sure the supporting details are not shown through the main idea
- d. use opinion to show why your thesis is right

**86. The conclusion of an essay should .....**

- a. include last minute ideas and thoughts for the future
- b. have a restatement of the thesis and thoughts for the future
- c. be a recap of the whole essay                      d. be only two sentences

**87. What is the first component of an essay introduction?**

- a. Background    b. Thesis    c. Hook    d. Topic Sentence

**88. Where should you share the thesis (claim) for the first time in an essay?**

- a. At the beginning of the essay            b. At the end of the introduction
- c. In your first body paragraph            d. In your conclusion

**89. What is the purpose of topic sentences (located in body paragraphs)?**

- a. to tell what the essay is about                      b. to tell what the paragraph is about
- c. to ask important questions of the reader                      d. to make the author sound smart

**90. Which of the following is necessary and expected in each body paragraph of an academic essay?**

- a. rephrased thesis                      b. a concluding sentence

## SOUVENIR

**108. The first sentence in an essay MUST .....**

- a. get readers interested                      b. state your point of view
- c. provide background                        d. all of these

**109. A topic sentence (the first sentence in a paragraph) should ...**

- a. state a fact                                      b. provide interesting detail
- c. predict what the paragraph is about      d. support the details

**110. Suppose you were writing an essay about your job last summer.**

**118. Suppose you were writing a paragraph about why you liked your job last summer. Which sentence would appear first in your paragraph?**

- a. I made so much money that I was able to pay off my car loan.
- b. The pay was much better than I expected.
- c. In addition to my salary, I often received tips from grateful parents.
- d. My boss encouraged me to work extra hours evenings and weekends.

**119. Suppose you were writing a paragraph about making a lot of money at your job last summer. Which sentence should appear last in your paragraph?**

- a. I made so much money that I was able to pay off my car loan.
- b. The pay was much better than I expected.
- c. In addition to my salary, I often received tips from grateful parents.
- d. My boss encouraged me to work extra hours evenings and weekends.

**120. We use periods at the end of .....**

- a. questions    b. statements    c. exclamations    d. questionnaires

**121. Which sentence is correct?**

- a. The film has won favour with all young and old.
- b. The film has won favour with each young and old.
- a. The film has won favour with both young and old.
- a. The film has won favour with young and both old.

**122. Which sentence is correct?**

- a. My friends and I love water sports.    b. I and my friends love water sports.
- c. My friends and I love water sports:    d. I and my friends love water sports:

**123. Which sentence is correct?**

- a. my sister is a doctor. She loves her job.
- b. My sister is a doctor, She loves her job.
- c. My sister is a doctor. She loves her job.
- d. My sister is a doctor. She loves her job,

**124. Wow ..... You are amazing.**

- a. !                                      b. ,                                      c. :                                      d. ?

**125. Which sentence is correct?**

- a. She's famous. isn't she?                      b. She's famous? isn't she?
- c. She's famous, isn't she?                      d. She's famous isn't she?

**126. Which sentence is correct?**

- a. I love the following fruits. mangoes, bananas, figs and watermelons.
- b. I love the following fruits, mangoes, bananas, figs and watermelons.
- c. I love the following fruits; mangoes, bananas, figs and watermelons.
- d. I love the following fruits: mangoes, bananas, figs and watermelons.

**127. Where will you spend your next summer holiday .....**

- a. ?                                      b. !                                      c. .                                      d. :

**128. She said YES ..... but I said NO.**

- a. Colon                                      b. Comma                                      c. Period                                      d. Semicolon

**129. Which request is correctly punctuated?**

- a. Could you lend me some money, please?
- b. Could you, lend me some money please?
- c. Could you lend me some money please,?
- d. Could you lend me some money. Please?

**130. Select the supporting detail that doesn't fit. Topic Sentence: My dog is afraid of everything.**



- a. She hides under blankets when you turn the microwave on.
- b. She sleeps all day long.
- c. She runs away when you vacuum.
- d. She jumps every time the doorbell rings.

131. A paragraph is a series of sentences that explain .....

- a. three subjects
- b. a specific subject
- c. several subjects
- d. five subjects

132. A hook should .....

- a. make the reader certain
- b. grab the reader's attention
- c. give the reader a warning
- d. give the reader a summary

133. Which of the following sentences is right?

- a. When you find one like that, give him a copy of the book,
- b. When you find one like that, give him a copy of the book?
- c. When you find one like that, give him a copy of the book:
- d. When you find one like that, give him a copy of the book.

134. Which of the following transition words presents a similarity between the subjects?

- a. Yet
- b. Therefore
- c. So
- d. Moreover

135. A ..... is the main idea of a text.

- a. summary
- b. topic
- c. plot
- d. theme

136. "He took my car and gave me his." "His" is a/an .....

- a. possessive adjective
- b. noun
- c. possessive pronoun
- d. adverb

137. Which of the following is perfectly punctuated?

- a. I read Black Beauty, Ali read Journey to the Centre of the Earth.
- b. I read Black Beauty; Ali read Journey to the Centre of the Earth.
- c. I read Black Beauty: Ali read Journey to the Centre of the Earth.
- d. I read Black Beauty Ali read Journey to the Centre of the Earth.

138. Which would be the best topic sentence for this set of sentences?

- a. Its surface temperature is 191-c.
- b. It has eleven moons.
- c. Saturn is a fascinating planet.
- d. It has a large ring.

139. Select the supporting detail that doesn't fit. Topic Sentence: Doing your homework has many benefits.

- a. Doing your homework helps you remember the material better.
- b. Those who complete their homework often do better on the test.
- c. When you have done your homework, it makes it easier to participate in class.
- d. Homework takes up your precious after-school time.

140. The function of a colon is to .....

- a. indicate the beginning of a new sentence
- b. indicate that commas are not useful
- c. indicate a series of options
- d. indicate that a list has just ended.

141. Choose the sentence that would be the best topic sentence for the paragraph. We love to play the same sports. We love to play video games and watch movies. We both can hardly wait for pizza every Friday night. It's great to have a brother who is just like me.

- a. My big brother and I are best friends.
- b. My big brother and I are four years apart.
- c. My big brother is the oldest of my four brothers.
- d. My big brother is a firefighter.

142. When we paraphrase, .....

- a. we copy someone's words exactly. We do not change any words in his/her sentences.
- b. we change the meaning of someone's words to a new meaning.
- c. we change someone's words and/or sentence structure into our own words, but we keep his/her meaning.
- d. we create our own new story.

**الحمد لله انهيتم الترم الاول**  
**واخر دعوانا ان الحمد لله رب العالمين**